THE ART OF WAR.

In Four Parts.

THE

ART

OF

WAR

1139 a 4 Gal 9 d Ha

THE ART OF WAR.

In Four Parts.

CONTAINING,

I. The Duties of Officers of Horſe.
II. Of Officers of Foot.
III. Of a Soldier in General, with variety of Examples of ſuch as have been Diſgrac'd for being Ignorant of them.
IV. The Rules and Practice of War by all Great Generals; the Order of Marching, Incamping, Fighting, Attacking and Defending Strong Places, and the Method of Surprizing Garriſons, or Armies, and of Beating up of Quarters.

Written in *French* by Four Able Officers of long Service and Experience, and Tranſlated into *Engliſh* by an *Engliſh* Officer.

Illuſtrated with ſeveral Copper Cuts.

LONDON: Printed, and Sold by *J. Morphew*, near *Stationers-Hall.* 1707.

FH
MVSEVM
BRITANNICVM

THE PREFACE.

IT *would be altogether needless to go about to extol the usefulness of this Work, at a time when all* Europe *is involv'd in bloody Wars. The Continuance of them has made Thousands aspire to some little Knowledge in Geography, who would scarce ever have look'd into a Map. The Marches of Armies, the Over-running of Provinces, and the Sieges of Towns, have rais'd a Curiosity to be inform'd of their Distances and Situation. If these, which are but the Consequences of War, do so far prompt us to desire Information, that we may be in some Sort capable of comprehending them, how much more ought we to endeavour to gain some little Insight into that which produces those great Events we daily hearken after, and which*

is the Art of War? *The Soldier perhaps will say, Service and Experience are the beſt Inſtructions; the Gentleman who reſolves to live in Peace at Home will urge, he deſigns not to follow that Profeſſion. It muſt be granted the Firſt, that Service exceeds all Information; but at the ſame time we have daily ſo many new unexperienc'd Soldiers, that were it only to inform them of the Duties of the State of Life they apply themſelves to, this could not but be thought a moſt uſeful Undertaking. Then for thoſe who have already ſeen ſome Campaigns, it will not only facilitate their Buſineſs, but much improve their Knowledge, acquainting them with many Matters of Moment, which perhaps have not yet occurr'd to them in the Courſe of their Service, and may prove very Advantageous whenſoever they ſhall happen. War is one of thoſe Arts in which a Man can never be perfect, but muſt ſtill be learning, as we ſee it daily verify'd in the greateſt Generals, who are not always without their Faults, and who frequently call Councils to receive the Opinions of Officers much Inferiour to themſelves in Poſt and Service. Books give us thoſe Inſtructions in Private, which we are not*

 willing

willing ſometimes to take from other Men, for fear of being thought ignorant, and tho' we were diſpos'd to hearken to them, we have not at all times thoſe at Hand, who are either capable or willing to inſtruct. Would Soldiers at their leiſure times apply themſelves to a little Reading, no doubt is to be made, but it would the better capacitate them for Officers, and Officers would be the better fitted for higher Poſts.

But to anſwer thoſe Gentlemen, who becauſe they are not Soldiers, think it not worth their while to read the Rules and Manners of War. Is not every Man Ambitious? And is it not very Commendable in Diſcourſe to talk pertinently and properly to the Subject in Hand? And what greater Subject of Diſcourſe at preſent than the Martial Exploits perform'd abroad? How then can he talk aptly and judiciouſly of Military Affairs, who has neither ſeen nor read them! Every Man is not to be a General, but it would be very graceful to hear every Gentleman diſcourſe like a General; nor is it only Converſation that is improv'd by this Reading, the Judgment and Underſtanding are inform'd by it; ſo that when we hear of

Sieges,

Sieges, of Marches, of Surprizes, of Guards, of Parties, &c. we conceive juſt Notions of the Things: Becauſe, by the inſight we have into the Nature and Conduct of thoſe Affairs, they repreſent themſelves to us in the Deſcription, as if we had been preſent at them. On the contrary, thoſe who are fond of, or ſatisfy'd with their Ignorance, when they hear the Language of the Army, either anſwer abſurdly, or ſtand gazing, without knowing what to ſay, as if they were ſpoken to in a ſtrange and unknown Tongue. In ſhort, the Subject recommends it ſelf to all knowing Men, and its Brevity is an Encouragement to undertake the Peruſal of it. What remains is only to ſpeak a Word as to the Performance, and the Capacity of the Perſons who were the Authors.

Where we muſt obſerve, that as it is divided into Four Parts, every Part is by a ſeveral Hand, which makes the whole the more perfect, every one having contented himſelf to write that Part he was the greateſt Maſter of. The Firſt containing the Duties of the Horſe, from the Private Troopers to the Colonels, is the Work of the Sieur de Birac, *a Gentleman of many*

Years

ears Service in the Horſe, and who ap-
ply'd himſelf more than the Generality of
Soldiers do, to look into the Conduct
and Behaviour of others, for his own In-
formation. Yet is he no ways conceited of
his Knowledge, but modeſtly ſubmits him-
ſelf to the Cenſure of elder Officers, and
makes an Excuſe for the want of Polite-
neſs there may be in his Language, as be-
ing a Perſon whoſe Profeſſion is rather to
Act well, than Diſcourſe like an Orator.
It is his Modeſty that mov'd him to this
Condeſcenſion, for neither have his Rules
and Inſtructions ever been cenſur'd by any
Able Commander, nor is there any thing in
his Stile but what becomes a Gentleman,
and the Subject he treats of.

In the Second Part we have the Duties
of the Foot, from the Sergeant to the Colo-
nel, by Monſieur de Lamont, *Town-Ma-*
jor of Toulon, *a Poſt of great Truſt, and*
which requires much Experience to recom-
mend a Man to it. This Experience he
gain'd in Three and Twenty Campaigns he
ſerv'd in the Army, and during that time
in many of the moſt conſiderable and leſſer
Sieges, and in ſeveral Pitch'd Battles.
Thus did he riſe to that Degree of Know-
ledge in Military Affairs, but particular-

ly

ly relating to the Foot Service, which this small Treatise sufficiently testifies. All his Instructions to Officers are so Regular and so Just, that they in a Manner make a Soldier of one that never saw a Camp, and lead him that desires to follow that Course of Life so fully into the Mystery of it, that a young Officer has nothing to learn when he comes into the Field, but only how to put in Practice that Theory he has already conceiv'd of all the Operations belonging to the several Posts.

The Third Part is call'd, The Duties of a Soldier in General, as being neither confin'd to Horse nor Foot, but regarding them both, and directing what is fit to be done by them upon all Occasions. The Author of it has not given us his Name, yet his Pen is a sufficient Testimony of his great Ability; and if you may believe him, before he would adventure to Print it, his little Book had the Approbation of the Prince of Conde, a Person of extraordinary Capacity, and one of the greatest Generals of his Time. He does not only endeavour to make a Man a good Soldier, but plainly demonstrates that he cannot be accounted such who is not at the same time a good Man. A true Christian Notion,

and

nd which if duly enforc'd and reduc'd to ractice, would certainly make all Armies eſs odious to their own Country, and more ormidable againſt their Enemies. His In-ructions are ſuch as regard all Officers, eing of that Nature as none can well know ow to behave himſelf without them, nor an any err that is well acquainted with hem. And for the more Perſpicuity, and he better Entertainment of the Reader, hey are pleaſantly interſpers'd with vari-ty of very remarkable Examples ſuita-le to the Subject he handles.

We come now to the Fourth and Laſt art, being the Rules and Practice of War, or the Duties of Generals, for Fight-ng, Beſieging, Marching, &c. This was ompos'd by the Chevalier de la Valiere, Perſon fitly qualify'd to give ſuch Pre-epts, as having himſelf run through all he Degrees in an Army, till he arriv'd t the higheſt Poſts, in which he ever hew'd no leſs Conduct than Courage and Bravery. Tho' he was but 26 Years of Age when he was kill'd, yet was he alrea-y ſo much valu'd Abroad as well as at Home, that the great Maſter of Malta ourted him to take upon him the Command f the Forces of that Order againſt the Turks,

Turks, *and at the same time the* Venetians *offer'd him to make his own Terms provided he would come into their Service. This Great Man has here given us in Miniature, yet to the Life what is most requisite to be known concerning all Guards, Incamping, Marching, Fighting, Besieging, Surprizing of Enemies, and all other Particulars that belong to a General, illustrating this Treatise with several Cuts which render it the more easie to all Capacities.*

What has been perform'd in the Translation, is left to the Judgment of the Reader.

THE

THE DUTIES OF OFFICERS OF HORSE.

CHAP. I.

How to Raiſe a Troop of Horſe.

IT is impoſſible for a Captain to have a good Troop, or to do Service with it, unleſs he has ſuch Subaltern Officers as are well Skill'd in their Profeſſion, and the Duties of their Poſts; becauſe they are the Principal Members he is to make uſe of in Order to act effectually, and to move that Body he is the Head of to Advantage. If therefore, when he receives his Commiſſion the Choice of his Subalterns is left to himſelf, he is to endeavour, if poſſible, to make

ſure of ſuch Perſons as are fit and proper to fill thoſe Places, eſpecially for thoſe of Lieutenant and Quarter-maſter, which are of the greateſt Conſequence, as ſhall be hereafter obſerv'd.

For a Lieutenant, he is carefully to look out for a diſcreet Man, and one, as near as may be, of long Experience, who has learnt the Myſtery of the Cavalry, with much Care and Application, in ſeveral Campaigns; for as much as in his Abſence the Lieutenant is to have all the Care and Management of the Troop, and to perform the ſame Service and Duty the Captain ought to do.

Chap. II. *Of the Duty and Employment of the Lieutenant.*

THE Lieutenant is to be careful to know all the Men in his Troop by Name, to Regulate their Behaviour, ſeverely Chaſtizing looſe Livers, Blaſphemers, Mutineers, and Drunkards, and not conniving at any Vice that is Infamous, or may give Scandal; at Firſt to rebuke ſuch as ſhall not do their Duty as nicely as they ought, and to puniſh them with Rigour if they continue negligent: By theſe Means he will be both Belov'd and Fear'd by the Troopers, and is to make himſelf reſpected by his own Carriage, which muſt be ſuch as becomes an Honeſt Man and a Good Chriſtian, Diſcreet and Prudent in his Words, Temperate in Eating and Drinking, and in ſhort a true Man of Honour; which Example of his will certainly make his Troopers good Men.

He is frequently to look to their Horſes and Arms, and to charge them to take Care of them, Severely and

and in Publick to Reprimand thoſe that neglect either, and to puniſh them with Rigour if they do not mend by fair Means.

When they March upon Action the Lieutenant is to be in the Rear of the Troop or Squadron, to keep the Men cloſe together, and ſee that none ſtays behind, and to make them follow their File-leaders, ſuffering none to quit his Rank, or ſtray from his Standard, without Leave, and a lawful Occaſion.

When they are to Fight and Charge an Enemy, the Lieutenant is in like manner to keep in the Rear of the Squadron, with his Sword in his Hand, to compel the Troopers to perform their Duty, and oblige the laſt Rank to follow the other Two Cloſe, and in good Order; as alſo to Kill the Firſt that ſhall offer to run away, or face about, that this Example may be a Terror to others, and oblige them to do their Duty.

But in the Captain's Abſence, whether in Fight, or upon any other Occaſion, the Lieutenant is to March at the Head of the Squadron in the Captain's Poſt, placing the Quarter-maſter in his own in the Rear, and in the Quarter-maſter's Poſt on the Flank the Eldeſt Corporal, that no Officer's Place may be Vacant, and no Diſorder may happen for want of a Commander.

When the Captain is commanded with his Company upon the Camp, or the Quarter-guard, as ſoon as he comes to the Poſt, the Lieutenant having drawn up the Troop, ſhall continue at the Head of it on Horſeback, whilſt the Captain is receiving his Orders, and goes with the Quarter-maſter to place the Vedettes, *viz.* Centres on Horſebach, to view their Poſts, and inſtruct them how they are to behave themſelves, and, till the Captain returns

to give the other neceſſary Orders for the Security of his Guard. Theſe are for the moſt Part the Qualifications and the Duties of a good Lieutenant.

Chap. III. *Of the Cornet.*

IT were convenient the Captain ſhould chuſe for his Cornet a Man as well Qualified in Probity and Ability, as we have deſcribed the Lieutenant, becauſe he is ſometimes to mount his Guard, and perform the other Parts of his Duty, in his Abſence; but this Poſt is generally given to ſome young Gentleman, who has ſerved but One Campaign, and even by Favour to One that was never in the Army.

The Duties of a Cornet, as Cornet, are very few, and conſiſt only in carrying the Standard upon a Review, or other Publick Appearance, to ſalute his Prince, and in his Abſence the General of the Army, and his Poſt is on the Left of the Captain, and an Horſe's Length behind him: He is alſo to bear it on the Day of Battel. But this Poſt being more Honourable than Difficult, and my Deſign being, as near as may be, only to treat of what is Eſſential in the Service, I ſhall not ſpeak of the other Formalities a Cornet is to obſerve, either in Saluting, or in Fight to defend his Standard.

I ſhall only add, that the Cornet is to bear his Captain extraordinary Reſpect, and be very ſubmiſſive to him, and make this appear by his Diligence and frequent Viſits: He is alſo to behave himſelf ſubmiſſively and reſpectfully towards his Lieutenant, which will gain him the Love and Eſteem of his Supe-

Superiors. He is in like manner to be Friendly and Courteous with the Quarter-maſter, and live in Amity with him: He muſt be obliging to the Corporals, and Careſs them: To conclude, the Cornet muſt behave himſelf ſo as to gain the Love and Eſteem of the Troopers, and always to Interpoſe to Compoſe their Differences, that they may live Lovingly together; but if he meets with any Difficulties, which cannot be ſurmounted without the Captain's or the Lieutenant's Authority, he muſt acquaint them with the whole Matter without Partiality, and not prepoſſeſs them either Way, but lay before them what each Party has to ſay for himſelf, that they may do Juſtice, and by their Authority allay all Grudges, to prevent the evil Conſequences of Quarrels in a Troop, if not timely remedy'd by the Officers. If the Cornet obſerves theſe Rules, he will be generally Belov'd and Reſpected by all Men.

Chap. IV. *Of the Quarter-maſter.*

IT is abſolutely requiſite that the Captain make Choice for a Quarter-maſter of a Man of good Parts, Active and Experienc'd, as alſo Prudent and Well-affected; becauſe on him depends the Oeconomy of the Subſiſtence and Service of the Troop; and therefore he muſt be Watchful, Abſtemious in Eating and Drinking, and, in a Word, free from all Vice.

The Quarter-maſter muſt needs Write and Read, and, if poſſible, ſhould know the Four Firſt Rules in Arithmetick; for it belongs to him to keep a

Copy of the Muſter-roll of all the Troopers, with their Names, Sirnames, and the Places where they were Born, and to account with them for their Pay, or for any Share of Booty taken from the Enemy: And whereas it belongs to him to go every Day to receive Orders, he is to be careful to ſet them down in Writing, with the Word, for the better remembring of them, to carry them to his Officers.

The Quarter-maſter is to be Induſtrious in finding out the Tempers of the Troopers, and every One's Particular Talent, that he may know which of them are fit to be Commanded as Occaſion ſhall require, with regard to the Condition of their Horſes, and ſo judge which are propereſt for the Service.

It particularly belongs to him to be careful often to view the Troopers Horſes, and to compel them to keep them well Fed, Dreſs'd, Shod, Accoutred, and in good Caſe, and to Puniſh thoſe ſeverely who neglect it. He muſt frequently view their Arms, and ſee they be kept clean and fixt, and be refitted when any Thing is out of Order.

Above all, he is to maintain Peace and Friendſhip among the Troopers, to make them live Decently and Orderly together, Puniſhing ſuch as are Turbulent and Unquiet, as alſo all Blaſphemers, Drunkards, and in ſhort, all who give an ill Example; and if his Reprimands have no good Effect, he muſt complain to the Captain, that he may take Order therein, either by Impriſoning, or Diſmounting, or Caſhiering them ſhamefully, as Unworthy to wear a Sword, or ride in a Troop. On the other Hand, he ſhould ſhew Kindneſs to ſuch as deſerve well, and do them all the good Offices he can, either by himſelf, or to their Officers, or even in their Quarters,

ters, as long as they ſhall not abuſe his Kindneſs, and do endeavour to behave themſelves ſtill better.

Upon Marches the Quarter-maſter is to receive Orders every Day from his Captain for taking up Quarters, and go before in ſuch Time, that when the Captain comes in with his Troop, the Quarters may be ready, and the Troop be not oblig'd to continue long on Horſeback in the Streets, which Fatigues and Spoils the Horſes, eſpecially after a long March, whether in the Heat of Summer, or in bad Weather, and when the Days are ſhort, and they come in late. For this Reaſon the Quarter-maſter when he goes to provide Quarters, may, with the Captain's Leave, take a Trooper or Two along with him, of thoſe he ſhall think fit to aſſiſt him in diſpatching the Buſineſs of Quarters; and as ſoon as he comes to the Place, and ſhows his Orders to the Magiſtrates, he muſt acquaint them with the Captain's, and the other Officers Retinue, that they may Quarter them conveniently; and the Quarter-maſter ſhall go himſelf to view the Officers Quarters, that they may have no Cauſe to complain of his Neglect.

When the Quarters are ſettled, and he hears the Troop is near, he ſhall Mount and go meet it, to conduct the Captain and the Troop to his Lodging, in Caſe they have given him the Billets; but if the Magiſtrates will ſee the Effective Men before they deliver the Billets, he ſhall lead the Captain and the Troop to the Town-Hall, and when the Men have been ſeen, and the Billets deliver'd, he ſhall wait on the Captain to his Quarters, where drawing up the Troop in One ſingle Rank, he ſhall give out the Billets, cauſing them to be orderly drawn out of his Hat, and at the ſame Time ſhall adviſe the Troopers to be Civil to their Landlords, and to

take Care there be no Complaints againſt them. If the Troop is to make any long Stay in the Place, he muſt not fail, as he delivers out the Billets, to write down the Troopers and their Landlords Names, keeping an exact Liſt of them, that he may the next Day go ſee their Horſes, whether any of them be hurt, and whether any of the Landlords Complain, that the neceſſary Orders may be taken accordingly.

When the Trumpet ſounds to Horſe in Order to March, the Quarter-maſter is to be the Firſt on Horſe-back, to haſten the Troopers, and repair to the Captain's Quarters. He muſt Reprimand thoſe that come late; and if he obſerves any One uſes ſo to do, either through lazineſs, or to ſtay behind deſignedly, or to ſteal ſomething from his Landlord, he ſhall puniſh him ſeverely, for an Example to the reſt.

When he is come into Quarters, he muſt not only do all that has been ſaid above, but muſt Viſit all the Troopers Quarters, and ſee what Conveniencies they and their Landlords have, and give the Captain an Account of all, that he may diſpoſe of Part of the Billets for the better Quartering of thoſe he has ſome Reſpect for, or who are in moſt Need, and the reſt to be drawn by Lot.

In Marching upon Service the Quarter-maſter is to be upon the Flanks of the Troop or Squadron, and muſt every now and then ride from the Front to the Rear, and from the Rear to the Front, to View the Ranks, that they keep their due Diſtances, and hinder the Troopers ſlipping aſide without Leave.

In Fight he is to be upon the Flanks of the Squadron, with his Sword drawn in his Hand, to make them cloſe their Ranks, and keep their Diſtances,

ſtances, to prevent their falling into Diſorder, and to Kill the Firſt that ſhall offer to Fly, ſo to ſtrike a Terror into the reſt, and compel them to do their Duty.

Chap. V. *Of the Corporals.*

THE Captain muſt chuſe for his Corporals Three Perſons fit for that Employ, Men of Experience, and Old Troopers; and they ought to be as Experienc'd and well Qualified as the Quarter-maſter, becauſe in his Abſence the Eldeſt of them that is in Place muſt act for him. Beſides, it is requiſite they ſhould Read and Write, and that they keep a Liſt every one of his Brigade, or Squadron, that the Troopers may do Duty in their Turns, and he may eaſe the Quarter-maſter's Memory, who has Buſineſs enough otherwiſe. The Troop being thus divided into Brigades or Squadrons, the Service will be the better perform'd; for by this Means, upon all Occaſions, Detachments will be orderly made without Confuſion, either by a Corporal and his Squadron at a Time, or by a Number drawn out of each Squadron with a Corporal at their Head; and thus the Diſtribution of Quarters will be made with leſs Confuſion, eſpecially if the Troop is to be divided, for the better Quartering of it in diſtant Houſes, dividing the Houſes or Cantons by Squadrons.

This is what I have thought neceſſary to be ſaid in Relation to the Captain's Choice of good Subaltern Officers, and their Duty and Principal Functions of their Poſts, for the Inſtruction of ſuch as

are yet to learn; in the next Place we will see what Method he is to use to make good Troopers.

Chap. VI. *Of the Method for making of good Troopers, and for the well Mounting, Arming and Equipping of them.*

IT being the Part of the Cavalry to go seek and insult their Enemies, and not to wait for their coming; therefore the Captain is to make Choice of Troopers that are Bold and Resolute, of a Strong and Healthy Constitution, Spare and Raw-bon'd, of a Fiery Aspect, of a Daring and Sprightly Temper, Ambitious of Honour, and Fearing nothing but Shame and Disgrace. For the better Chusing of them he ought to have some Skill in Physiognomy, because almost all Men have certain Characters imprinted on their Countenances, by which their Disposition and Inclinations may be known. In this Choice, Regard, if possible, is to be had to Three Things; *viz.* the Place they were Born in, their Education, and their Age. It were therefore convenient to chuse Troopers that are Born in the Country, or on the Mountains, or in Barren Places, that have been us'd, as near as can be, to Ride, to Hunt, and enur'd to all Sorts of Fatigues; because generally the People of great Towns are more Tender, Bred up in Ease and Softness, and more Undisciplinable, looking upon the Hardships of War as Unsupportable, and being more backward to expose themselves to Danger. As for their Age they must be taken from Eighteen to Thirty-five Years, that they may be Active, Submissive, and Pliable, because Men above that Age have generally some Incorrigible Faults, and do not so well conform

form to Diſcipline, unleſs any have always ſerv'd in the Horſe withou quitting it. The Young Men muſt alſo ſhew they are willing to apply themſelves to the Profeſſion, and be eager to improve, that they may be Advanc'd to Commands, and in O.der to it pay the due Deference to their Officers, becauſe the Chief and moſt Commendable Diſpoſition in a Man that Devotes himſelf to Arms is to be Willing, to Fear, and to Obey.

When the Captain has thus carefully Sought out, and made Choice of good Men, he muſt Mount and Arm them well, and give them good Boots and Coats, and ſee them well furniſh'd with Cloaks, they being a moſt neceſſary Moveab'e in War. The well Mounting of them muſt be underſtood according to what the Place will afford where the Troop is Rais'd. For this End he muſt Buy up the beſt Horſes he can find, of what Country ſoever they be, provided they be fit for the Purpoſe; that is, neither too Old, nor too Young; too Big, nor too Little, but of a Middle Size; and he muſt take Care their Legs be Sound, and no Way Infirm, and that they be well Condition'd and Hardy; and it were not amiſs if they had Long Tails, eſpecially if they are to ſerve in hot Countries, where the Flies fret ſuch as are Dock'd, and are rhe Death of many of them. This is what a Captain is to obſerve in General for Mounting of his Troop.

For the well Arming of them he is to give them good Piſtols, good Carbines, and good Swords. Broad-cutting Swords are counted the beſt for many Uſes, and many prefer them even for Fight. The Boots and Coats are ſo well known that I need not ſay any more of them.

To come to other Particulars, the Captain is to know all rhe Troopers by their Names, that he may

may call upon any of them to give them his Orders; and leſt the Men ſhould take an Averſion to their Captain, if he neglected to know them by Name, which they would look upon as a great Contempt and Slight in him, and therefore they would be diſcontented, aud never do their Duty well; whereas if the Captain knows, and ſeems to have a Value for them, they will Love him, and be Zealous in his Service.

Chap. VII. *The Manner of Training a Troop, and keeping it always well Diſciplin'd.*

IT is not enough to chuſe Good Men, and ſuch as are capable of making good Soldiers, unleſs they are made good Troopers, and when made ſo, continually kept up to it. Nature makes few Men Brave, and fit for all Things, it is Education and Diſcipline that makes them ſuch. Every Man knows how neceſſary this Diſcipline is in War, for by it Armies are Preſerv'd and Flouriſh, and great Generals have ſucceeded in their moſt Glorious Actions. The principal Point of this Diſcipline is Obedience, which makes the Soldier fear his Officer more than he does the Enemy. There are Two Ends this Diſcipline aims at, to make the Troopers Brave and Reſolute, and to make them Honeſt; thus it conſiſts of Two Parts, Valour, and Behaviour or Manners.

Towards making of them Brave theſe following Things are Uſeful and Neceſſary, *viz.* That they know how to uſe their Horſe and Arms, that they march orderly in their Ranks, receive their Orders, and be ready in executing them; for which Rea-

lon

ſon the Captain, as was ſaid before, muſt carefully charge his Troopers to keep their Arms clean and fixt, cauſing the leaſt Defect in them to be rectify'd; for it would be a great Shame, and of evil Conſequence, if Troopers could not uſe their Arms through Careleſneſs of keeping them in good Order, being oblig'd to take as much Care of them and of their Horſes, as of themſelves. Nor muſt they follow the Example of thoſe, who coming off ſome great Fatigues, as ſoon as they alight tie their Horſes to a Stake, and there leave them, either to go look out in Houſes for Meat or Drink for themſelves, or elſe fall aſleep, and never think of Feeding their Horſes, which is a great Fault, and never committed by a Brave and Worthy Trooper.

Beſides this Care the Troopers are to take of their Horſes and Arms, they muſt know how to uſe them dexterouſly, which cannot be unleſs they know how to keep their Ranks, and underſtand the Word of Command: Therefore the Captain muſt begin to Exerciſe them in the Place where they were rais'd, and make the Troop Mount every other Day, and lead it out to ſome convenient Spot of Ground, to Exerciſe the Troopers in Marching in Rank, and uſe them to keep Silence, and obſerve their Diſtance in Marching, always placing Troopers that have ſerv'd on the Right and Left of the Firſt Rank, that they may direct the reſt, and the whole Squadron March at once, and without Confuſion, according to Command.

The Firſt time the Captain leads his Troop out, when he is come upon the Place of Exerciſe he may make the Squadron March gently, and as they March File off by Four and Four, and when they have all March'd by Fours, then make them ſtill March, Filing off by Twos, then to Double and March again

again by Fours, and at last still Marching to Form the Squadron again. Another Day he may Teach them to March upon a Trot, and in close Order, and in that Manner to File off by Fours and Two's, and then again to Form the Squadron all upon a Trot. Another Day he may Teach them to Wheel to the Right, and to the Left, and About, with some Firings, to Enure the Horses to Fire. The Captain, as has been said, must take Care to Place Troopers that have Serv'd on the Right and Left of the first Rank, that they may Guide and give due Motion to the Squadron, according to the Word of Command, and that the Ranks keep their close Order in a strait Line, without the least bending, whether the Squadron moves Right forwards, or Wheels to the Right, or the Left, or About. The Captain thus Exercising his Troop every other Day in the Place where it is Rais'd, as also on the Road when he sets out from his Quarters, and comes into them, if his Marches be but small, will with a little Application and Discipline make his Troopers dexterous and ready, and put his Troop into a Condition to do him Honour upon Service.

The Second Part of Discip'ine relates to Manners, and therefore the Captain must not permit his Troopers to be Debauch'd, either in Drunkenness, Gluttony, or other Unlawful Voluptuousness, which will breed Quarrels and Contention among his Men, and might prove the utter Ruin of his Troop; besides, these Vices would make the Troopers Cowardly and Brutal; for nothing sooner overturns Man's Body and Vigour than Wine and Debauchery; and a Soldier is a lost Man as soon as he gives way to such Inclinations; because he is no longer fit for any thing, Experience having demonstrated that a Martial Man degenerates and loses

loſes all his Mettle and Courage as ſoon as ever he addicts himſelf to Pleaſure and Debauchery.

The Captain muſt in like Manner take Care that his Troopers be not great Talkers, and do not Boaſt too much of their Bravery; for true Valour makes no uſe of the Tongue, but of the Hands; it does not Talk, but Act; and it is generally obſerved, that the Braveſt Men, upon Action where Honour is concern'd, are the Calmeſt and the Quieteſt upon all other Occaſions. It is therefore Requiſite that Troopers be Serious and Modeſt in their Converſation with their Comrades, but more eſpecially when they are with their Officers. The Troopers muſt alſo forbear all Pilfering on their March, and in order to it the Captain muſt keep them under ſuch ſtrict Diſcipline that they be always ready for the Service, not permitting them to Scoure the Country, or to commit any Extortion. In a Word, he muſt forbid them leaving their Standard without Orders; becauſe if once they are us'd to ſuch Liberty, it is almoſt impoſſible to Redreſs that Diſorder, or to be ſure of them, which may prove of Fatal Conſequence. Therefore the Captain is always to keep his Troopers in Awe; for beſides that he is to be anſwerable for their Actions, it muſt needs redound to his Dishonour, if he cannot govern thoſe that are under his Command, which muſt loſe him in the Eſteem of the Generals, who will never Truſt him with any conſiderable Enterprize.

The Beſt Way a Captain can take to Encourage his Men always to do their Duty, is to obſerve thoſe that Signalize themſelves on every Occaſion, that he may afterwards Careſs and Commend them before the others, beſtowing ſome Reward on them, and allowing them ſome Priviledge above their Comrades. This will Encourage them always to do their

Duty,

Duty, and Excite the others to follow their Example, and every one will ſtrive to gain his Captain's Eſteem and Favour, becauſe among Men of Arms Honour is the moſt powerful Incentive to oblige them to perform their Duty, and to Advance in their Captain's Affection and good Opinion.

Laſtly, that nothing may be omitted, the Captain is carefully to look out for an able Surgeon for his own and the Troop's Service.

Chap. VIII. *What a Captain is to do when his Commiſſion is for a Troop already Rais'd, which only wanted a Captain.*

IF the Captain be put at the Head of a Troop already Rais'd, he ſhall Courteouſly Salute his Subalterns, expreſſing how great a Satisfaction it is to him to have Perſons of their Worth in his Troop; and having ſhow'd his Commiſſion, ſhall aſſure them of his Friendſhip, and that he will Endeavour to make Amends for the Loſs they have had in their Former Captain. Then ſhall he View the Troop, and having narrowly obſerv'd the Number of Men and Horſes, their Arms, Boots and Cloaths, and taken a Note of all that is wanting, ſhall return to his Quarters, deſiring the other Officers to repair to him as they Diſmount, where he ſhall ſignifie to them how much he deſires to deſerve the good Opinion his Soveraign had of him, when he put him at the Head of them, and therefore he will uſe his utmoſt Endeavours to have a good Troop. He muſt deſire them to this Purpoſe to join in their Endeavours with his, and to give him ſuch Advice as they ſhall think fit for that Purpoſe, ſince they are equally concern'd with him in Point of

Ho-

Honour and Intereſt. In ſhort, he muſt Conſult with the Lieutenant and Quarter-maſter about filling up the Troop, and rendring it fit for Service, and for Remounting and Filling up the Deficiencies. He may make uſe of the Methods before Preſcribed in the Chapter for chuſing and making of good Troopers.

Chap. IX. *The Qualities and Duties of a Captain, with ſome Advice concerning his Retinue and Family.*

HAving ſaid enough of the Care and Precaution a Captain is to uſe to get good Subaltern Officers, to make good Troopers, and to keep his Troop always well Diſciplin'd, it is now Time we ſhould ſee what Qualities are requiſite in a good Captain, without whom the Troop, tho' it were made up of the Beſt Men in the World, is like a Body without a Soul, or a Ship without a Pilot.

Now in regard the Cavalry ought not to conſiſt of any but Men of Honour, therefore the Officers who Command it are oblig'd ſometimes by good Words, ſometimes by ſevere Reprimands, and above all by their own Example, to cultivate Good Manners, and to inſtil Noble Thoughts into their Troopers; for which End the Captain muſt have a Great and Generous Soul, be an Upright Man, live like a Chriſtian, and be temperate in Eating and Drinking, hating all Manner of Vice, and valuing his Honour above all things in this World, and even above his Life. He muſt be an Abſolute Maſter of his Buſineſs, having learnt it by long Service, and been in all Sorts of Actions; for a Man muſt have ſeen much, and learnt long to obey, to make

make a good Commander in War: He muſt be ready and expert in diſcovering the Enemies Deſigns, and making his Advantage of them: He muſt be Diſcreet and Prudent, to know how to behave himſelf as well in Proſperity as Adverſity, being always Active and Cautious, as if the Enemy were at the Gate, and ready to fall upon him; becauſe too much Security in War is often the Occaſion of Surprizing and Defeating Enemies. He is to be ready and diligent in Executing the Orders he receives from his Generals, and to be exactly at the Hour appointed upon the Place aſſign'd, with his Troop, or the Party he is to Command. He muſt never find Fault with the Orders, or make any Objections againſt them, whatever the Hour or the Weather may be, or whatever Danger or Difficulty there be in the Execution; yet may he reſerve the Right of Complaining when he comes back, if any Wrong is done him, and it be only a Guard of Fatigue put upon him out of his Turn, when it was not his Duty to March; for he muſt take heed that his Troop does not undergo the Fatigue which belong'd to others, without abſolute Neceſſity, and where there is no Honour to be gain'd. But it being a Maxim in War that the Service muſt not be delay'd, therefore the Captain muſt without Heſitating follow the Orders he has receiv'd, and his Head is anſwerable for any Miſcarriage that may happen through delaying the Execution after he has received his Orders; and tho' no Ill could come of his Backwardneſs in Marching, yet it might be look'd upon in him as Sloth, or want of Courage, or a Contempt of the Orders; which might Ruin him and his Reputation. He ought therefore, if poſſible, to be the Firſt on Horſeback; thoſe Captains being very much to blame, who uſe to make the Parties commanded

manded wait a long Time on Horſeback whilſt they Dreſs themſelves, or come from their Quarters, never conſidering that the greater Command a Soldier has, the more exact and careful he ought to be in performing the Service; for a Captain muſt not make that Poſt the Extent of His Ambition, but ever be eager to advance himſelf by his Merit; to which End he is to make it his Study Night and Day, and be Active to do the Enemy Harm, ever laying hold of all Opportunities that ſhall offer, and Diſappointing their Deſigns by being ſtill upon his Guard, which muſt be the Way to Raiſe and make him Great in the Army.

On the other Hand, the Captain muſt be an utter Stranger to Avarice, as the moſt pernicious Vice in a Man of Worth; for beſides that the Covetouſneſs of gathering Wealth would Prevail upon him to commit Extortions in all Places, and to Cheat the Troopers of their Pay, there is no Doubt but ſuch Practices would Diſguſt his Men, and put them upon Deſerting, or at leaſt upon Pilfering in all Places like him, to make Amends for the Want of their Pay, without Apprehending any Puniſhment from their Captain; becauſe he could not in Reaſon Chaſtiſe them if he Detain'd their Pay, and were Guilty of the ſame Crimes; whereas if the Captain behaves himſelf as he ought, the Troopers will take Example by him, and knowing his Life to be Blameleſs, will always Obey, Fear and Reſpect him.

He muſt alſo forbear Gaming as much as may be, becauſe it is the ill Fate of Gaming that a Man is apt to forget himſelf, and is eaſily Ruin'd before he thinks where he is; and many Captains after loſing their Money, Horſes and Equipage, have not been able to forbear Playing away the Pay of their Troop,

or

or the Money allow'd them for Remounting their Men, which has been their utter Ruin, with the Loſs of their Honour and their Commiſſion.

Chap. X. *Of the Captain's Equipage.*

SEveral Captains, who in this ſhew their Want of Judgment, take no Care to have good Trumpeters, but are ſatisfy'd with Indifferent ones, to whom they allow but ſmall Pay. Thoſe who cannot help it are Excuſeable, but the Rich are much to be Diſcommended, for not conſidering what a Credit a good Trumpeter is at the Head of a Troop of Horſe, and how Advantageous; for generally they have ſome other good Qualities, and being Experienc'd in War, if they have Judgment when they are ſent to the Enemies Camp, or any of their Garriſons, they may at their Return give an Account how the Enemy is Poſted, of their Guards, of the Avenues to their Camp, of the Nature of their Intrenchments, of the Ditches and Outworks, and obſerve many other Things which a good Captain may make his Advantage of; whereas on the contrary, a bad Trumpeter is generally a Novice in War, and incapable of obſerving thoſe things, or relating them as they are; beſides, it is to be fear'd that if he has not Senſe, he may ſuffer himſelf to be Outwitted by his Enemy, who finding out his blind Side, may make him Drink, and by that Means cauſe him to Diſcover all that is done in his Camp, or in his Quarters, and perhaps he may Diſcover things of Moment. For this Reaſon a Captain muſt ſpare no Coſt to get a good Trumpeter, who will be Exact and Nice in Sounding to Saddle

Saddle and to Horſe preciſely at the time Appointed, and to Perform all other Services enjoin'd him.

Next, the Captain is to Delight in and take Care to have good Horſes, and a ſufficient Number of them; for beſides the Honour it is to him to be well Mounted, ſeveral Occaſions may offer, in which he may make uſe of many of his own Horſes, and Mount ſeveral of his Servants, which may prove very Advantagious to him, as ſhall be ſaid in its Place.

He muſt be Curious in keeping good Arms, and a ſufficient Number of Piſtols and Carabines, for himſelf and all his Servants, and be ſure to keep them Clean, and well Fix'd, not only for his own Sake and Security, but to give a good Example to his Subalterns and Troopers. He ought alſo to have a Smith always in his Retinue, as well to Shooe his own as his Troopers Horſes. I will not ſpeak of the reſt of his Equipage, becauſe every Man muſt Regulate it prudently according to his Ability.

I cannot but add, that beſides all we have already ſaid the Captain is oblig'd to, it is requiſite he be ſo obliging to his Subalterns, and particularly his Lieutenant, whom he ought to look upon as his Second Self, that they may all out of Gratitude and Affection be Unanimous in his Service, and in ſeeking the Advantage of the Troop, that the Service may be the better perform'd.

Theſe are the main Qualifications belonging to a good Captain of Horſe, the Chief things relating to his Equipage, and moſt of the Precautions he is to uſe for having of good Subaltern Officers, whoſe Duty and Employment have moſtly been deſcrib'd, as alſo what he is to do to make good Troopers,

to Diſcipline his Troop, and keep it always in that Condition.

Now I will ſpeak of the moſt Important Duties of his Place, whether he be in the Field with the Army, or in Garriſon in ſome Frontier Town. The Duties of moſt Conſequence in the Field are the Camp or Quarter-guard, going out upon Parties to get Intelligence of the Enemy, laying of Ambuſhes, and beating up of Quarters. We ſhall ſpeak of each of theſe Duties apart and in order, according to the Maxims of the moſt Experienc'd Partizans of all Sides in the Late Wars, and then will Diſcourſe of the Duties of a Captain in Winter-Quarters on the Frontiers, as alſo what he is to dò if left in Garriſon during the Campaign, for ſecuring of Convoys, and ſuch Perſons as go to and from the Army, and for keeping in Awe the Enemies Garriſons in the Neighbouring Frontier Places.

Chap. XI. *Of the Camp, or Quarter Guard.*

ONE of the Main things for the Security of the Camp or Quarters, is the good Poſting of Corps de garde and Vedettes; and it is generally a Major-General who Chuſes thoſe Poſts, or elſe the Quarter-maſter General of the Horſe, and Points them out to the Captains, who are to Mount the Guard.

When the Captain is come to the Poſt where the Guard is to be kept, he muſt there make his Troop or Detach'd Body halt, and go himſelf to Viſit the Poſts of the Vedettes, taking the Quarter-maſter with him, and the neceſſary Vedettes, for the Quarter-maſter to View the Poſts, that he may Relieve

lieve and Viſit them in the Night. The Captain is to be inform'd of ſeveral Particulars by the Captain Reliev'd, taking Orders from him how to Behave himſelf, there being often ſome Precautions to be Obſerv'd, which tho' they may ſeem to be of little Moment, are often of Conſequence; and ſometimes very ſlight Omiſſions in unexpected Accidents are the Cauſe of great Diſaſters. Therefore that there may be nothing to fear, nothing muſt be neglected, but the Captain, as has been ſaid, muſt take a very exact Information of all Points, and whilſt he goes to Poſt the Vedettes, the Lieutenant is to continue a Horſeback at the Head of the Squadron drawn up, till the Captain and Quarter-maſter return. When the Captain Poſts the Vedettes, he is himſelf to Inſtruct them how to Behave themſelves; as that they be always upon their Guard, that they never quit their Poſt, that they do not alight, that they always keep their Carabine or Piſtol Cock'd in their Hand, that they ſuffer no Perſon whatſoever to come near them, whether they come from towards the Guard, or any other Way; and in a Word, not to ſuffer any Perſon to paſs without ſtopping them, and giving Notice to the Corps de Garde. The Captain muſt Place Two Vedettes in one and the ſame Poſt, eſpecially upon an Important Guard, to the End that one of them may go with ſpeed to give Notice to the Corps de Garde when they have Stopt any Body, or ſeen or heard any People, and the other ſtill ſtand faſt in his Poſt. To this Purpoſe the Captain is to Order the Vedettes, that in Caſe they ſee or hear any People making towards them, one of them retire Twenty or Thirty Paces from the other towards the Corps de Garde, to the End that if the Vedette left at the Poſt does not ſtop thoſe People,

or

or ſhall be driven off by them, the other may have time to come full Speed to give Notice to the Guard, Firing his Carabine or his Piſtol by the Way to give the Alarm. Nor is this all the Captain is to Charge the Vedettes with, but to Obſerve whether they Diſcover any Fire in the Night, or any Smoke or Duſt by Day, or whether they Hear any Barking of Dogs more than Ordinary, or any Shot, or the Sound of Drums or Trumpets, and give immediate Notice of it to the Guard, that the Captain may preſently ſend out Diſcoverers that may get Information of what the Vedettes have ſeen or heard, either near or far off.

He is alſo to Poſt a ſmall Guard of Ten or Twelve Troopers, more or leſs, according to the Number of Men he has, between the Vedettes and the Main Guard, anſwerable to the great Diſtance the Vedettes are Poſted at, as they often are, to Secure the Avenues where ſeveral Roads croſs one another, or a Ford, or Bridge, or Defile, or the Top of a Hill, or the Deſcent, where generally Vedettes are Poſted; and this ſmall Guard is to be Commanded by the Quarter-maſter, who is to Relieve the Vedettes every Two Hours, and to Viſit them from Time to Time. The Quarter-maſter ſhall alſo go, if need be, with all his Men, or part of them, to ſee ſuch Perſons as the Vedettes have ſtopp'd, cauſing only One of them to Advance, who has the Word, which he ſhall give Cloſe in his Ear, holding the Point of his Naked Sword againſt his Breaſt who comes up to give the Word, that he may know whether they are Friends or Enemies, and either Charge, or let them Paſs.

As ſoon as the Quarter-maſter is call'd upon, or receives any Advice from the Vedettes, he muſt not fail immediately to ſend a Trooper to the Captain

tain, with an Account that the Vedettes have made ſome Perſons Stand, and that he is going to View them; that the Captain may have time to make his Men Mount, and be out of Danger of Suprize; becauſe the Captain by Reaſon of the long Fatigue of the Night, is to cauſe the firſt or laſt Rank of the Squardron to Diſmount, that the Men and Horſes may Reſt, and the Horſes Feed for Two Hours, after which thoſe who have Reſted ſhall Mount again, and fall into their Order, and the next Rank ſhall take Two Hours Reſt, and ſo the Third in their Turns; but thoſe that are a Horſeback in their Ranks muſt be kept always Waking.

Beſides all theſe Precautions, for the greater Security of the Guard, and to prevent Surprizes, the Captain muſt ſend out Diſcoverers far and near to Scour the Country on all Sides, and on the Roads the Enemy can come; this he muſt not omit, becauſe all the Camp or Quarter relies on his Guard. Therefore he muſt above all things never be too Secure, becauſe it is poſſible that the Enemy comingvery Strong andUnexpected, may Drive away the Vedettes, Surprize and Cut off the little Advanc'd Guard, ſuddenly Force the Captain and his Guard, and with him Enter the Camp or Quarters; eſpecially if it ſhould ſo happen that the Avenues were not Entrench'd, or Barricado'd and Guarded by ſome good Body of Foot. And if the Enemy ſhould meet with no other Oppoſition but the Vedettes, the little Advanc'd, and the Main Guard, they might make themſelves Maſters of the Quarters, or of the Camp they have Surpriz'd, or found Aſleep, for want of having the Alarm time enough, and conſequently not be able to be ſoon enough under Arms to make Head againſt the Enemy.

The Manner of ſending out theſe Scouts, or Diſcoverers, is thus, the Captain is to Detach the beſt Mounted and the moſt Judicious Troopers he has in his Guard to Scour the Country, giving them a Word or Sign by which they may know one another, if they happen to meet; and he muſt Order them to Divide themſelves by One and One, or Two and Two, according to the ſeveral Roads they ſhall Meet with on the Right and Left, always Marching very Silent, and Halting from Time to Time to Liſten whether they Hear any People, and to Advance a League, more or leſs, as ſhall be Expedient for the Security of the Guard, every Way the Enemy may come; and ſhall Direct them, in Caſe they Hear or Find any Enemies, to Endeavour without being Diſcover'd to Learn their Number, and then return full Speed to give the Captain Advice, that he may have time to Acquaint the General, to make his Men Mount, and to be in a Readineſs on his Guard. The Captain ſhall alſo Direct his Scouts or Diſcoverers, if they ſhould be far off when they Diſcover the Enemy, and cannot Return in a long Time to the Corps de Garde, or that the Enemy March ſo Faſt that they muſt be there as ſoon as they, or preſently after, then to ſtrike out of the Way the Enemies take, and with all Speed to ſet Fire to ſome Houſe or Place where it may be ſeen by the Vedettes and Corps de Garde, to Amuſe the Enemy; for they will not fail to Halt to inquire into that Fire; and if they cannot find any thing at Hand to ſet Fire to, they muſt make haſte to ſome other Place, where the Fire and the Report of their Fire-arms may be Seen and Heard by the Vedettes, or the Corps de Garde, eſpecially by Night, when the leaſt Fire is Seen, and the Shot is Heard at a great Diſtance, that the

the Vedettes Seeing or Hearing their Shot, may give Advice to the Captain that the Enemy is at Hand. Thus the Captain will have time to be in a Readineſs, to acquaint the General, and to give the Alarm to the Quarter or Army, till he has more certain Tidings. In the mean while he ſhall Cauſe the Quarter-maſter with his little Guard to Advance to the Poſt of the Vedettes, or further, if it be thought Requiſite, to Obſerve the Enemy, and to make Head againſt, and Amuſe them in ſome Defilee, ſo to gain Time, that all Men may Mount, or be under Arms, in the Camp or Quarter. But the Captain muſt continue a Horſeback with the Reſt of his Guard, never ſtirring from his Poſt upon any Account, without poſitive Orders from the General, and is to ſtay there till he is Attack'd by the Enemy, againſt whom he is to make Head, to Check and Repulſe their Fury, if poſſible, with the Hazard of his Life, and Loſs of all his Men.

If the Captain ſhould happen to Command all the Horſe in a Quarter, then is he Exempted from Mounting the Guard in Perſon, tho' it be his own Troop's turn to Mount, becauſe many Inconveniences might enſue if the Captain ſhould be upon the Guard when any Orders come from the Generals; and he who was to ſee them Executed ſhould be out of the Quarters; for the Captain who is upon Guard cannot quit his Poſt. Beſides, the Enemy might Attack the Quarters in another Place, from that where the Horſe-Guard is kept; and if then the Captain who Commanded the Horſe were on the Guard, he could not give the neceſſary Orders upon ſuch Alarm, nor in Caſe of any other Accident that might Intervene; but bating this one Caſe, he is without any Excuſe or Pretence

to Mount the Guard as often as his Standard is upon that Duty.

If the Captain having the Command of all the Cavalry in Quarters has Advice of the Enemies March, and that his Quarters are in Danger of being Attack'd, he is to cauſe all the Horſe to Mount, and March out, and to draw them up without the Quarters, or ſome Advantageous Ground; but always with the Approbation of the General Officers who Command in the Quarters, in which Caſe all the Troopers muſt have Orders to carry Provender with them for their Horſes to Feed upon the Bivac. But if this Alarm ſhould happen in Rainy or very Stormy Weather, ſo that the Horſe could not be Abroad without Suffering very much, and the Neceſſity was not ſo great as to Expoſe them ſo much, then the Captain, with the Approbation of the General, after Sounding to Saddle, ſhall go about all the Quarters, or ſend to ſuch Places where he cannot go, to Order the Horſe to keep together in as few Houſes or Places under Shelter as may be, that they may all join with more Eaſe, and March out againſt the Enemy, if there be occaſion; and in the mean while he ſhall be going the Rounds, or ſend other Officers to keep the Men Waking, and Ready. He ſhall alſo frequently ſend out to the Corps de Garde, without the Quarters, to get ſtill freſh Intelligence of what happens. Theſe are the Precautions always to be us'd in Quarters to prevent Surprize.

Chap. XII. *Of going Out upon Parties to get Intelligence.*

ALL the Duties of a Captain of Horſe are of Moment, becauſe every one of them is Beneficial and Advantageous to an Army; but this is one of the Chiefeſt and moſt Abſolutely Neceſſary, *viz.* to get Intelligence of the Enemy, in Order to know where their Army is, whether it lyes Encamp'd in one Body, or Canton'd in ſeveral Quarters, to learn the Names, Number, and Diſtance of them from one another; or if the Enemies Army Marches, to know in what Manner, whether in one Body, or Divided, and towards what Place; and in Fine, to Learn all Particulars, the Knowledge whereof may be of great Advantage to a General, either in Order to be upon his Guard in his Camp; or to Secure his Convoys and Forage; or to Secure any Advantageous Poſt, and Enter the Enemies Country; or to Surprize any Place; or to Attack the Enemy upon their March in ſome Defi'ee, and Surprize them in ſome Diſadvantageous Poſt; or for to Cut off the Convoys or their Foragers; or to Conclude, to Expect them in good Order, in Caſe they March Day and Night, to Surprize him in his Camp or Quarters. Now it being the Part of a General never to be ſtill, or to ſuffer a Day to paſs over without knowing where the Enemies Army is, and what it does, for this Reaſon he every Day ſends out ſeveral Parties upon Diſcovery, to get certain Intelligence, that he may take his Meaſures accordingly, and conſider of the Methods he is to follow, and Advantages he is to make.

When a Captain of Horſe is Commanded out to get Intelligence of the Enemy, he is to have the General's Order in Writing with him, that he may punctually Obey it, and may not be Blam'd whatever happens, for doing either more or leſs than he was oblig'd; and to the End, if he had the Misfortune to be Taken by the Enemy, he may ſhow them his Order, if they require it, that he may not be ill Treated by them, which might happen, if he had not the General's Order to ſhow; it being a Maxim in War, that if the Commander of a Party is Taken, and cannot Produce his General's Order to Authorize him to go Abroad upon Service, he may be taken for a Robber, and not as a Priſoner of War. When the Captain has his Order in Writing, he muſt take great Care to get good Guides, to avoid the Inconveniency of Miſtaking his Way, which would make him loſe his Time and Opportunity. He will alſo have need of Guides to make his Retreat through By-ways, if he be put to it, being Purſu'd by an Enemy Stronger than himſelf, or in Caſe they have Broke ſome Bridge, or otherwiſe obſtructed his Way back; or elſe to avoid ſome Defilee, where he ſuſpected, or was inform'd the Enemy lay in wait for him. For the more Surety of having good and truſty Guides, it would be Convenient the Captain had ſeveral Men in his Troop that were perfectly acquainted with the Country he Serves in; and to this Purpoſe he ought every Day to ſend ſome out in all Parties that go Abroad, ordering them to take particular Notice of the Roads, the Towns, Hamblets, Fords, Bridges, Woods, Ditches, and of all Things in the Country they go through, ſo as to remember, and make uſe of it upon Occaſion; thus the Captain will have Guides he can rely upon. But if the

Cap-

Captain, when he is Commanded upon a Party, has never a Trooper with him that knows the Ways, eſpecially when he has far to go, and through bad Ways, and if the General Officer cannot Furniſh him with any, he ſhall take up Peaſants on the Road to Serve him as Guides, not ſuffering them to Talk to one another till he has Examin'd them ſeverally, to ſee whether they agree in what they ſay; and if he finds they do, he ſhall make them March Eight or Ten Paces before him, between Two Troopers, or on their Horſes behind them, and the Troopers ſhall be Directed to take Care the Guides do not make their Eſcape, becauſe they may go and give the Enemy Intelligence. The Captain muſt alſo take Care, when he is to go far, and to ſtay long Abroad, to be inform'd of ſome Place to Refreſh his Men and Horſes in due Seaſon. Therefore he muſt give Notice to all the Commanded Men, that they carry Oats, or ſome other Grain in their Havreſacks, to Feed their Horſes, as alſo ſomething to Eat themſelves, when it ſhall be Requiſite; and the Captain ſhall Appoint the Time and Place for this Purpoſe, as in ſome deep Valley, or cover'd Way, cauſing the Place to be firſt nicely Examin'd, to ſee whether no Enemy be in it, and before he Unbridles he ſhall Poſt advanc'd Sentinels under Covert, and if Occaſion be, flat on their Bellies, and ſome he ſhall Cauſe to get upon Trees to ſee People at a Diſtance. Here is no Aſſigning of the Time or Hour, becauſe it is at the Captain's Diſcretion to chuſe the proper Time, which is generally in open Day, when there is any Danger of being Diſcover'd, or Seen at a Diſtance, being to paſs over ſome open Plain, where there is no Covert in the Day. The Captain ought to be Acquainted with all theſe Rules to March Secure.

Beſides, he is to Detach Scouts Two or Three Hundred Paces before him, to View the Defilees, Woods, Copſes, Hollow Dales, Bridges, Waters, Ruin'd Houſes, Hamblets and Villages, and all other Places, where any Party, of the Enemies, or Ambuſh may lye; and this not only ſtraight forwards, but on the Right and Left. But he muſt be very Cautious to put a Man at the Head of theſe Scouts that is fit for the Buſineſs; becauſe the leaſt Overſight in him that Commands theſe Diſcoverers may be the Ruin of the Captain and all his Men. Therefore he muſt make Choice of a Man for this Poſt that he knows to be Judicious, Vigilant and Bold, with ſuch Troopers as are Truſty, Brave, well Arm'd and Mounted, and not likely to form Chimera's in their Brains, or take Rows of Wheat-ſheaves, or Cows, or other Cattel, for Squadrons; or Hedges and Flocks of Sheep for Battallions, as has happen'd to many, to their great Shame and Confuſion. Therefore he that Commands the Scouts is always to be well aſſur'd, and to ſee with his own Eyes what things are, rather than to Alarm the Captain upon another's Report. But it being moſt certain that the Commander of the Scouts cannot always be in every Place, or leave the ſtraight Way, if it happens that Two or Three Scouts he has ſent out to Diſcover bring him Word, that they have Seen or Heard the Enemy, then muſt he ſend One or Two of his Men to Acquaint the Captain with what his Scouts Report, and that he is going himſelf to ſee and be ſatisfy'd of the Truth of it; which he ſhall do without Diſcovering himſelf to the Enemy, and preſently ſend his Captain certain Advice of it. The Captain muſt immediately ſend him back the ſame Troopers that brought him the Account, and Reſolve either

to

to Halt till he has more certain News, to Act according as he ſhall be inform'd from him that Commands the Scouts, or elſe to March on ſtill gently; not to loſe time, or to gain ſome Advantageous Poſt to Draw up his Men in.

If the Captain has ſeveral Squadrons under his Command, he is always to take Care, when he has paſs'd any Bridge or Defilee, to ſtretch either to the Right or Left in good Order with his Squadron, and there to Halt till all that follow him are paſt the Bridge or Defilee; and he muſt be ſure to leave a Trooper of his Squadron at the end of the Bridge or Defilee, with Orders to come immediately and Acquaint him, as ſoon as the Rear is paſt, and this to avoid the Inconveniency which muſt otherwiſe enſue, of obliging thoſe that come after to follow him upon a Gallop, and in Diſorder, and perhaps they might ſcatter and loſe their Files, eſpecially in a Dark Night, when a Captain is to make his Men keep a profound Silence, a Rule always obſerv'd at Night. And in all Places where the Road Divides, or Croſſes, the Captain muſt leave One of his Troopers to give Notice to the next Squadron which Way it is to take, and then to return himſelf to his Squadron; and the Commander of the next ſhall in like Manner leave One of his Men to give the ſame Notice to the Squadron that follows, and ſo from one to the other, that their Troops may not diſperſe, if there be any conſiderable Number, and may not Miſtake the Road; and the Captain muſt not forget always to order the Commander of the Scouts to leave One of his Men in ſuch Places, to give him Notice which Road he is to take. Thus will the Captain perform the Expedition he is upon

without Confuſion, the Orders being ſtill convey'd from Hand to Hand.

The Captain ſetting out to get Intelligence with all the Precautions abovemention'd, muſt take care that his Scouts have always good Guides along with them, eſpecially in the Night, and when they are to March in a ſtrange Country, and difficult Ways, he is to keep other Guides with him, as has been ſaid. And whereas the Parties that go out to get Intelligence, or on other Accounts, generally March by Night, the Captain muſt order the Commander of his Scouts, in Caſe he happens to fall in unawares upon the Enemy, to Charge them without any Deliberation, or giving them time to Conſider; for upon ſuch Occaſions the preſent Neceſſity of Fighting takes away all leiſure of Reflection, and there is no Hope but in Reſolution and Boldneſs, and all Safety depends on Victory. In this Caſe the Captain ſhall preſently Detach as many Men as he thinks Neceſſary to ſuſtain his Scouts, under the Conduct of a good and Reſolute Commander, and the Captain himſelf ſhall March after immediately, in the beſt Order he can, with all his Force, to fall Furiouſly upon the Enemy, by that Means to Break and put them to the Rout; a Rule which has generally prov'd Succeſsfull to all thoſe that have Attack'd firſt, tho' Weaker and Fewer in Number than their Adverſaries. But there being no general Rule without an Exception, according as time and Place ſhall allow, he who Commands the Scouts may Reſolve according to his Judgment what is to be done upon the Spot. If therefore he meets with the Enemy, and has Time and Conveniency to obſerve their Strength, as coming out of a Wood, or Defilee, or Village, or over a Bridge, and has a full View of them on ſome Plain, and there-

thereupon judges the Enemy ſo Strong and in ſuch good Order that it is impoſſible to make them give way, then muſt he with all Speed ſend the Captain an Account of all Particulars, and Adviſe him to Retreat as ſoon as poſſible; that nevertheleſs to gain him time, ſince he has been ſeen by the Enemy, he will endeavour to Amuſe and Stop them, Skirmiſhing with their Scouts or advanc'd Parties at the Entrance into the Defilee, or at the end of the Wood, and will not Retire till he is forc'd to it. But if the Scouts have not yet been ſeen by the Enemy, then their Commander ſhall Acquaint the Captain, that he has not yet ſhown himſelf, and expects his Orders, to know whether he muſt Retire, or what elſe he ought to do. Then the Captain upon the Advice ſent him by the Scouts, and according to the Confidence he has in the Fidelity and Reſolution of him he has put at the Head of them, and at the ſame time conſulting his Order, may Reſolve what to do, either to go up himſelf for the more certainty, or elſe to Face about, and Retreat without the leaſt Diſorder, after ſending his Orders to the Scouts by the ſame Man that brought him the Intelligence. In which Caſe he muſt get off, if he can, ſome other Way than that he came, to Deceive the Enemy, and by that means to gain time, whilſt the Scouts Skirmiſh, and the Enemies Charge them. He that Commands the Scouts muſt not fail to Retire the ſame Way he came, that he may draw the Enemy after him, till he finds he is hard Preſs'd, and can find an Opportunity of giving them the ſlip, eſpecially under the Shelter of the Night, or elſe in Croſſing ſome Woody or Cloſe Country; which he may do, provided his Men be well Mounted, as all Scouts ought to be, either ſcattering themſelves, or keeping

toge-

together, as they ſhall judge moſt Convenient, as Time and Opportunity ſhall offer; and in the mean while the Captain will have gain'd time to make his Retreat with his Men through By-ways.

But if it happen that the Scouts hear the Enemy at a diſtance Marching with much Noiſe, they muſt preſently acquaint the Captain, who is to conſult his Order, to Reſolve what Courſe to take, and conclude upon it without loſing time, either to get out of the Way to ſome Advantageous Poſt, where he muſt keep h[1]s Men in good Order under Covert, till the Enemy is paſt, if they come his Way, and have the Opportunity of Viewing them without being ſeen himſelf, and obſerving in what Order they March, determine whether it be proper to fall Furiouſly upon their Rear, by which Means he may eaſily put them to the Rout. But if he finds them ſo Strong that there is no Attacking them, he may let them Paſs without ſhowing himſelf, and then prudently, without loſing time, come to a Reſolution, either to March on, or to Retire ſome other Way, always Conſulting his Order, that he may no Way proceed contrary to it. If the Commander of the Scouts perceives that the Enemy do not come towards him, but March ſome other Way, he muſt ſtill Acquaint the Caprain, who ſhall Detach Two or Three Scouts that they may make the leſs Noiſe, being Truſty and Judicious Men, who ſhall go Cautiouſly without ſhowing themſelves, to View whether the Enemy is Strong or Weak, and in what Order they March, that according to their Report he may Charge, or let them Paſs without taking any Notice. If the Scouts find a freſh Track of the Enemy, the Captain may then diſcreetly judge whether

he

he ſhall follow their Track to Fall upon their Rear, or ſend out ſome Troopers that can Speak the Language of the Country, to ſome Neighbouring Houſe or Village, pretending to be the Enemies Party, and by that Means to enquire of the Peaſants whether the Enemy are Abroad, what Number they are, how long they have been gone, and what Way they took. Thus may he get certain Intelligence, and know how to Behave himſelf. If the Captain is aſſur'd that the Enemy makes towards him, and are very Numerous, and much ſtronger than he, it would be a great Indiſcretion to pretend to make Head againſt them, and therefore he muſt Face about, and return the Way he came upon a large Trot, without Confuſion, eſpecially if he has ſeveral Squadrons with him; there being no other Way to avoid Meeting the Enemy, or letting them Paſs without being Diſcover'd. To conclude, if he is forc'd to make his Retreat, he muſt hold on his Way back, till he comes to ſome Place where he can ſlip aſide, and gain Ground, without leaving a Track for the Enemy to Diſcover which Way he is gone, as ſtricking through the Court or Garden of ſome Houſe, or through ſome Gate, ſhutting it after all his Men are Paſt, or through ſome thick Wood, or at the coming out of ſome Ford, Marching through the Water Two or Three Hundred Paces up or down, and in ſeveral other Places, where he may quit the Road without being Diſcover'd by Track, eſpecially at Night, and thus by changing his Courſe he may Deceive the Enemy, and Secure his Retreat through By-ways. He may uſe the ſame Means to ſhun the Enemy, if he is inform'd they Purſue him in the Rear; but if they are ſo cloſe to him that there is no ſhunning o

them

them, then must he always make his Retreat in good Order, sending out Detachments of Fifteen, Twenty or Thirty Men, more or less, according to his Strength, under good Resolute Commanders, to Secure his Rear, and Skirmish with the Enemy to Amuse them, especially in Defilees, that so he may gain Ground, and get off. But if at last he perceives there is no avoiding them, he must Encourage his Men, putting them in Mind of their Honour and Duty, and Advising them to Sell their Lives dear, and to Die bravely with their Swords in their Hands, yet assuring them he has such Confidence in their Valour, that if they will but follow his Example, and do as he does, with God's Blessing he does not Question but he will bring them off with Honour, and Repulse the Enemy so Vigorously, that those who Escape the first Onset will have but little Mind to Renew the Charge. He may declare to them, that if he thought there were any one among them so Base and Cowardly that he were not Resolv'd as well as himself, to Conquer or to Dye, that he would desire any such to quit the Ranks and retire. But that he takes them all for Men of so much Courage and Honour, that he cannot Question but they will all do their Duty alike, that they may equally Share in the Glory they are like to acquire. Having thus Encourag'd his Men, he must take some Advantageous Post to Receive the Enemy in good Order, and there do his utmost; for a desperate Resolution, when Men are forc'd upon Defence, has often produc'd wonderful Effects, and prov'd Successful beyond all Expectation.

If the Captain perceives, or is inform'd in his Way, that the Enemies whole Army, or any part of it is Marching to Attack and Surprize the Quarters he set out from, or only moves that Way, and yet cannot give speedy Advice

of

of it, he muſt do as the Scouts were before directed, that is, muſt preſently ſend, or go himſelf and ſet Fire to ſome Houſe or Place, that the Fire may be ſeen from the Quarters, that this Signal may give them Notice of the Enemies March, and they have time to be upon their Guard. And the Fire will ſerve to Amuſe the Enemy, for they will not proceed till they know the Meaning of it. But if he can find no Place to ſet Fire to, he muſt Detach Three or Four Troopers, to carry Intelligence to the Quarters upon a full Speed, with Orders, if Requiſite, to Fire their Carabines or Piſtols as ſoon as they come near enough to be Heard by the Guards, provided it be Neceſſary to be ſo ſpeedy in giving the Alarm, and in the mean while the Captain ſhall act Purſuant to his Order. But if he Diſcovers the Enemies Army Marching another Way, he muſt follow it either upon the Right or Left, as he ſhall judge moſt Expedient, to prevent being Diſcover'd, and to manage his Buſineſs with Safety, and Retire if need be; or elſe he may get before it, or follow in the Rear, and Endeavour to take ſome Priſoners of thoſe that generally ſtraggle to Plunder Houſes at a diſtance, or ſtay behind; and he muſt always take Care to March at ſuch a Diſtance from the Enemies Army, and with ſuch Precaution, that he may not be Intercepted or Surprized.

But if the Captain finds the Enemies Army Encamp'd, he muſt forecaſt not to come near it till Night, either to take ſome of their Scouts, or to Surprize ſome advanc'd Vedette, as alſo to Search the Houſes, Farms, or Chappels without the Camp, where the Stragglers of the Army and Marauders generally take Shelter, whom he ſhall carry away, if he can make no better Advantage. But if when he comes near the Enemies Camp he hears them

Sound

Sound to Saddle, or to Horſe, and perceives that all the Camp is in Motion in Order to March, then ſhall he Detach Five or Six Troopers under a good Commander, to carry Advice to his own Camp that the Enemy are preparing to March, and ſhall himſelf continue at a Diſtance to obſerve which Way the Enemy moves, that he may himſelf carry the News.

When the Captain has got Intelligence of the Enemy, and taken Priſoners, either by Day as they March, or by Night as they lye Encamp'd, and is forc'd to Retreat, either becauſe he is Diſcover'd, or fears being Purſu'd, he muſt then ſend Ten or Twelve of the beſt Mounted Troopers, or more, according to the Number of Men he has, with a Trumpet, and Orders to haſten half a League or farther on the Way he is to Retire, and to conceal themſelves in ſome Place fit for an Ambuſh, directing them if they ſee him come with the Enemy at his Heels, to ruſh out of that Place with the Trumpet at their Head, making the greateſt Noiſe they can, juſt at ſuch time as the Enemy can ſee and hear them, to make them jealous there is ſome great Ambuſh, and by that Means put a ſtop to them; for it is always Convenient in War to begin every Action by impoſing on the Ears and Eyes, which Art being dexterouſly Manag'd, may be of great uſe; it being a Maxim in War above all Exception never to Engage raſhly in a Suſpicious Poſt, without Viewing of it firſt, and being ſure there is no Ambuſh in it. This will put a ſtop to the Enemy, and give the Captain time to gain Ground, whilſt the Detach'd Troopers ſtand faſt, the more to Amuſe the Enemy and Skirmiſh till they are overpower'd by the Enemy; when they ſhall make the beſt of their Way, whilſt the Enemy are Examining the Poſt, and

Re-

Retire another different Way from that the Captain and his Men took; always keeping in ſight of the Enemy, to Deceive and Draw them after them, that ſo the Captain may Retire another Way; which he is to Chuſe the cloſeſt, or moſt private he can, that the Enemy may not ſee him, eſpecially at Night, going through Woods, or very cloſe Defilees, that he may get off Safe in good Order, and the Enemy never perceive the Cheat. When the Detach'd Troopers perceive they have drawn the Enemy a great Way, eſpecially at Night, or if they are in ſome cloſe Country, they may then make the beſt of their Way, and give them the Slip as faſt as they can, either ſeverally, or all together, as they ſhall think moſt Convenient; which being rightly Manag'd, the Captain may make his Retreat without loſing One Man.

It muſt be obſerv'd, that if the Captain before he Sets out from his Quarters is inform'd that he cannot make his Retreat any other Way than the ſame he is to go, then it would be proper for him to leave an Ambuſh in ſome convenient Place on that Road, either of Part of his own Men, if he has a conſiderable Number, or ſome Foot, or both together, as the Enterprize ſhall require, and to that End he ſhould cauſe his Troopers to carry the Foot behind them to the Poſt they are to make good, or to Secure his Retreat at ſome Bridge, or the Entrance or End of ſome Defilee. It is further to be obſerv'd, that in Undertakings of Moment the Captain is not lightly to give Credit to things upon the bare Report of the Scouts, but muſt himſelf, if poſſible, with his own Eyes ſee how Matters are, and be ſure of all things, becauſe of the Accidents that might happen, for which his Head is anſwerable

if any thing Miſcarry through his Fault, and he does not perform his Duty punctually according to his Order. In ſhort, theſe are the Occaſions in which a Captain particularly ſhows his Experience, his Valour and his Conduct.

Chap. XIII. *Of Ambuſhes.*

IT has been a Queſtion debated, whether it were Lawful in War to make uſe of Wiles, Stratagems and Spies; ſome Perſons affirming that it is below Men of Honour to take any ſuch Advantages; and theſe urge the Example of *Alexander the Great*, who ſaid, he did not care for Stealing of Victories; but this is only to be allow'd in Two Caſes, *viz.* in private Quarrels, and when there is Faith given, and an Alliance Stipulated; for in open War it is Honourable and Lawful to Deſtroy Enemies by any Means whatſoever; and it is as juſtifiable in a Juſt War to take Advantage of an Enemy's Folly as of his Cowardice. It has therefore been the general Practice in all Ages to Endeavour to annoy the Enemy by all means whatſoever, and ſo to Weaken and Deſtroy their Forces by Degrees; and it is for the moſt part the Cavalry, which is Employ'd in this Nature, to give them no time of Reſt, either cutting off their Convoys or Forragers, or making Excurſions to their very Entrenchments, and to their Towns to draw out the Garriſon into ſome Ambuſh.

It has always been Practis'd to lay Ambuſcades, either between Two of the Enemies Quarters, where they lye Divided, and betwixt which there is a Communication, or elſe betwixt their Camp and ſome Town of theirs, whence they bring Con-

Convoys or Proviſions, or with which they have a conſtant Intercourſe. There are alſo Ambuſhes laid, when the Two Armies are Encamp'd near one another, to Surprize Forragers, or ſuch as go Abroad to Pillage; or elſe about ſome of the Enemies Garriſons, to take Booty and Priſoners, and in many other Places upon ſeveral Occaſions, which Daily occur to a Good and Vigilant Commander.

An Officer will never Succeed in ſuch Undertakings if he makes his Deſign known to any Perſon whatſoever; and the Succeſs of his Ambuſh chiefly depends in not having it Diſcover'd during his March; and therefore he ought always to March by Night upon ſuch Enterprizes, and to ſend out Scouts before him, to Diſcover on the Right and Left whether the Enemy is not in Ambuſh on his Way, or does not lye in Wait for him upon Intelligence given of his Deſign. Therefore he muſt order his Scouts to Search narrowly on the Right and Left in all Places where an Ambuſh may be laid, that he may March in Safety, and not be Diſcover'd. And if the Captain has a long March, he much paſs through all Places that are Inhabited by Night, and muſt even avoid going ſuch Ways by Night or by Day, unleſs there be no other Road, or Neceſſity obliges him; for he is always to avoid all Places Inhabited as much as he can; that he may not be ſeen or heard by Day or Night, either by the Enemies, or by their Spies, or by any Perſons they may have in Pay in Villages, or other Places Inhabited, to give them Intelligence of any of their Enemies Parties that ſhall paſs that Way; and the Captain muſt ſo forecaſt it, that he may come to the Poſt where he is to lay his Ambuſh an Hour before Day, that he may have time to Diſpoſe his Men before

before Day appears; but if he comes to it before Day, he muſt keep at a Hundred or Two Hundred Paces Diſtance from the Poſt, that he may have it well View'd before he goes into it, and alſo the Places about it narrowly Search'd, and yet the Captain ſhall remain a Horſeback with his Men in good Order till Break of Day, Poſting advanc'd Vedettes, and continually ſending out Scouts on all Hands, becauſe it might happen that the Enemies ſhould come to Surprize him in his Ambuſh, if they had receiv'd any Intelligence, and they might come by Night, without being ſeen or diſcover'd, unleſs cloſe at Hand, and then, if the Captain were already in the Place of the Ambuſh, he would not have time to make his Men Mount, or to Draw them out in good Order. Beſides, ſeveral Troopers ſpent with Fatigue might be dead Aſleep as ſoon as they came to the Poſt, and were Diſmounted, and ſo the Captain might be Surpriz'd and Defeated in his own Ambuſh, unleſs he kept at a Diſtance, and upon his Guard, till it were time to enter upon the Poſt, and diſpoſe his Men.

Being thus aſſur'd of the Poſt he has Choſen, and that there is no Body anywhere about it, he muſt Place himſelf under Covert as ſoon as it is Day and Diſpoſe his Men at a convenient Diſtance, to avoid Confuſion when they are to Ruſh out upon the Enemy; for Diſorder and Confuſion may Diſappoint the Execution. He muſt be very careful to Poſt Vedettes or advanc'd Sentinels on all Hands under Covert, ſo that they may not be perceiv'd, or elſe he ſhall make them lye flat upon their Bellies, and others to get up into Trees, to Diſcover any People that come at a Diſtance. Thus may he make his Ambuſh Succeſsful, and

do

do ſome good Service, as Occaſion ſhall offer.

If the Captain is Poſted near ſome Garriſon of the Enemies, and is ſure the Horſe in the Place are Inferior to the Party he has with him, then ſhall he Detach Fifteen or Twenty Men, more or leſs, according to his Strength, with Orders to go up to the very Gates of the Town, and to Drive away all Men and Cattle, and what elſe they find without it, by that Means to draw out the Calvary into the Ambuſh, and there cut it off, and take a Booty, and Priſoners of Note. Now the Occaſions and Opportunities of laying Ambuſhes for the Enemy being various, the Captain muſt proceed differently according to them, ſometimes with a great Number of Men, ſometimes with a leſs, ſometimes with Foot, and ſometimes without. Therefore in theſe Enterprizes the Captain will have need of all his Judgment, Induſtry and Experience, to compaſs his Deſigns, and prevent being ever Surpriz'd by the Enemy. And the rather, becauſe in all Martial Expeditions every Man aſſumes to himſelf the Honour of the Succeſs, and the Misfortune of a Defeat is always imputed to One Man. It would be endleſs to examine and enumerate all the Particulars and Circumſtances that do or may occur upon ſuch Occaſions, according to Time and Place; and therefore the reſt muſt be left to the Prudence and Judgment of the Commander.

CHAP.

Chap. XIV. *Of Beating up of Quarters.*

NO part of an Horſe Officer's Duty requires more Circumſpection than the Beating up of the Enemies Quarters, becauſe none can turn to greater Honour or Profit, and on the other Hand he runs the greateſt hazard of ruining his Reputation, and loſing himſelf, and all his Men. And therefore unleſs he be a Man of great Experience, Judgment and Reſolution, he can never hope for Succeſs in ſuch an Enterprize; which is one of the moſt Difficult, and Hardeſt to be Manag'd, that occur in War. For this Reaſon there are few Commanders that dare attempt ſuch Undertakings, either becauſe there are but few ſo Ambitious and Deſirous of Honour as to Raiſe themſelves in the Army by this Means; or elſe that they are not careful enough in Learning, by the help of their Spies, what Poſture the Enemy is in, which alone would render the Execution of ſuch an Enterprize eaſie. For it is certain that even thoſe things which appear to us moſt difficult, would not prove ſuch, had we the Boldneſs to Attempt, and the Conduct to Execute them.

Experience has taught us, that it is eaſier to Surprize an Enemy's Quarters at a great diſtance, than near at Hand, becauſe the farther off the Danger is, the leſs Care is taken avoid it; and therefore I ſaid before, that the principal Cauſe of a Surprize is too much Security; and a Defeat is never ſo certain as when Men are leaſt upon their Guard.

Thus the Commander, who has laid the Deſign of Surprizing the Enemies Quarters, muſt be ſure to be truly and fully Inform'd by truſty Spies of the Nature

Nature of the Quarters in all its Circumſtances, as how their Corps de Garde and Vedettes are Poſted; whether the Enemies are Barricadoed or not; whether there are any Moraſſes, or other Obſtructions to hinder the Acceſs, where their Parade or Place of Arms lyes, whether any Rivulet, Brook, or any Thing elſe cuts the Quarters in two; but the Chief thing he is to be well Inſtructed in, if poſſible, is what Sort of Troops are Quarter'd there; and above all, whether he that Commands them, is a Man of Experience, Vigilant and Cautious, or a Man of Reſolution; or whether he has any of the contrary Qualities; according to which Information the Commander may take his Meaſures to Succeed in his Enterprize.

When he has got all the Intelligence he can, taken his Meaſures, and prepar'd all things, he muſt March ſo diligently with all his Men, that he may come upon the Enemy unexpected an Hour before Day. In his March thither, and in his Retreat, he muſt uſe the ſame Precautions we mention'd in the Chapter where we ſpoke of going out to get Intelligence of the Enemy; that is, he muſt make ſure of good Guides, and ſend his Scouts before him till they come near to the Quarters; he muſt take Care not to March through Places Inhabited, or where he may be Diſcover'd; he muſt March by Night croſs the Country, and not along the great Roads, leſt he ſhould be ſeen or diſcover'd by the Track, and Notice be given to the Enemy; for it has often happen'd that the Enemy having timely Intelligence of their Adverſaries March, have taken ſuch Meaſures, that the Commander, and all his Men, have become a Prey to thoſe they went to Surprize. Therefore the

Com-

Commander muſt prudently weigh all Accidents that may happen; and tho' he is to March with Courage, and void of all Fear, yet he muſt omit nothing that may be for his Safety, and muſt accordingly uſe all Precautions to facilitate his Retreat, by Poſting a Number of Horſe, and even ſome Foot, under a good Officer, about half Way, or elſewhere to Secure ſome Paſs or Advantageous Ground. The reſt of the Directions in this Caſe ſhall not be Repeated here, becauſe enough has been ſaid of them in the foregoing Chapters.

When the Commander has all things in readineſs; if his Deſign be, for Example, to go with Three Hundred to Surprize Six Hundred of the Enemies in their Quarters, he muſt Diſtribute his Men after this Manner. When he is come near the Quarters he ſhall in the firſt Place divide them into Four Squadrons of Sixty Horſe each, and the other Sixty Men that remain he ſhall divide into Three or Four little Parties of Fifteen or Twenty Men each, under good Officers, and ſhall give each of them One or Two Trumpets, that at the ſame time he falls upon that Part of the Quarters where he Deſigns to enter, thoſe little Parties making a great Noiſe with their Trumpets, may Alarm all Sides, ſome on the Right, others on the Left, and others at the Poſts that are Strongeſt and Beſt Guarded, to the End the great Noiſe may make the Enemy believe the Aſſailants are very Numerous, and Stronger than themſelves, ſo to Diſtract and Confound them, and to prevent their making their Eſcape; or getting out to draw up and put themſelves in a Poſture of Defence; and to this End he muſt forbid thoſe ſmall Parties entring the Quarters, and order ſome of them ſtill to keep up on the Avenues, and others

to

to Scour about without the Quarters, and to be ſure to take no Priſoners, if they meet any coming out to make their Eſcape, or to Rally; but to Kill all they meet till they ſhall be Countermanded.

When the Commander has diſpoſed his Men as has been ſaid, and caus'd them to put ſome Sign in their Hats to know one another by, as their Handkerchiefs, or White Paper, or the like, then ſhall he Order the ſmall Parties to March up towards the Flanks of the Quarters without any Noiſe, and at the ſame time he ſhall March with the Four Squadrons in good Order, following one another, and with profound Silence, without Scouts before them, to prevent being the ſooner ſeen or heard by the Vedettes, and as ſoon as ever he perceives they have Diſcover'd him, he muſt Cauſe the Firſt Squadron to puſh forwards without heſitating, the other Three following cloſe at his Heels in good Order, and they muſt endeavour, if poſſible, to be all up with the Corps de Gard, and as ſoon as the Vedettes, that they may ſurprize, and bear it down, and ruſh all together into the Quarters. When once the Commander is got in with his Four Squadrons, he ſhall Cauſe one of them immediately to take Poſſeſſion of the Place of Arms, and at the ſame time ſend the others quite through to the other End of the Quarters, and to Scour all Parts of them, with Orders to Kill and Hew down all they meet, without taking any Priſoners, unleſs they meet the Commandant of the Quarters. This is to prevent the Enemies getting to Horſe, and Rallying, to put themſelves in a Poſture of Defence, till the Commander be abſolutely Maſter of the Quarters, and perceives the Enemy are no longer in a Condition to join and make Head a-

Commander muſt prudently weigh all Accidents that may happen; and tho' he is to March with Courage, and void of all Fear, yet he muſt omit nothing that may be for his Safety, and muſt accordingly uſe all Precautions to facilitate his Retreat, by Poſting a Number of Horſe, and even ſome Foot, under a good Officer, about half Way, or elſewhere to Secure ſome Paſs or Advantageous Ground. The reſt of the Directions in this Caſe ſhall not be Repeated here, becauſe enough has been ſaid of them in the foregoing Chapters.

When the Commander has all things in readineſs; if his Deſign be, for Example, to go with Three Hundred to Surprize Six Hundred of the Enemies in their Quarters, he muſt Diſtribute his Men after this Manner. When he is come near the Quarters he ſhall in the firſt Place divide them into Four Squadrons of Sixty Horſe each, and the other Sixty Men that remain he ſhall divide into Three or Four little Parties of Fifteen or Twenty Men each, under good Officers, and ſhall give each of them One or Two Trumpets, that at the ſame time he falls upon that Part of the Quarters where he Deſigns to enter, thoſe little Parties making a great Noiſe with their Trumpets, may Alarm all Sides, ſome on the Right, others on the Left, and others at the Poſts that are Strongeſt and Beſt Guarded, to the End the great Noiſe may make the Enemy believe the Aſſailants are very Numerous, and Stronger than themſelves, ſo to Diſtract and Confound them, and to prevent their making their Eſcape; or getting out to draw up and put themſelves in a Poſture of Defence; and to this End he muſt forbid thoſe ſmall Parties entring the Quarters, and order ſome of them ſtill to keep up on the Avenues, and others

to

to Scour about without the Quarters, and to be ſure to take no Priſoners, if they meet any coming out to make their Eſcape, or to Rally; but to Kill all they meet till they ſhall be Countermanded.

When the Commander has diſpoſed his Men as has been ſaid, and caus'd them to put ſome Sign in their Hats to know one another by, as their Handkerchiefs, or White Paper, or the like, then ſhall he Order the ſmall Parties to March up towards the Flanks of the Quarters without any Noiſe, and at the ſame time he ſhall March with the Four Squadrons in good Order, following one another, and with profound Silence, without Scours before them, to prevent being the ſooner ſeen or heard by the Vedettes, and as ſoon as ever he perceives they have Diſcover'd him, he muſt Cauſe the Firſt Squadron to puſh forwards without heſitating, the other Three following cloſe at his Heels in good Order, and they muſt endeavour, if poſſible, to be all up with the Corps de Gard, and as ſoon as the Vedettes, that they may ſurprize, and bear it down, and ruſh all together into the Quarters. When once the Commander is got in with his Four Squadrons, he ſhall Cauſe one of them immediately to take Poſſeſſion of the Place of Arms, and at the ſame time ſend the others quite through to the other End of the Quarters, and to Scour all Parts of them, with Orders to Kill and Hew down all they meet, without taking any Priſoners, unleſs they meet the Commandant of the Quarters. This is to prevent the Enemies getting to Horſe, and Rallying, to put themſelves in a Poſture of Defence, till the Commander be abſolutely Maſter of the Quarters, and perceives the Enemy are no longer in a Condition to join and make Head a-

gainſt him. Then ſhall he Cauſe as many Men as he thinks fit to Diſmount and go into the Houſes, to take Priſoners and Horſes, and to break Open or ſet Fire to ſuch Houſes as refuſe to admit them, and where the Enemy would make ſome Reſiſtance; but at the ſame time he ſhall cauſe Parties to Scout about the Quarters to hinder any Number of the Enemy Rallying, and ſtill the other little Parties ſhall keep without the Quarters, obſerving their Orders exactly, by which Means the Commander may fully Poſſeſs himſelf of the Quarters, carry off the Enemy, and take a great Booty.

But if the Commander be inform'd that the Enemy keep a ſtrict Guard in the Night, and have continually Scouts and Parties Abroad in the Country, then perhaps they will not be ſo Cautious in the Day-time, and he may ſucceed better at Noon than at Night, or Break of Day, as has often hapned; he may then, upon full Information of all Circumſtances, conſider how to Chuſe the moſt Advantageous time, according to the Situation of the Quarters, in Caſe he come up near to them at Noon-day, under the ſhelter of Woods, and cloſe hollow Ways.

There is another Way to Surprize Enemies in their Quarters, which has met with good Succeſs, where Commanders have known how to make their uſe of the Opportunity, which is thus: If it appears there is great Danger in Attacking the Enemy in Quarters that are well Guarded by good Troops, under the Command of an able Officer, then muſt he take Care to be certainly inform'd of the Day they are to Diſlodge, and in what Place they are to take up that Night; and in Caſe his Spies cannot acquaint him with the Name of the

Quarters

Quarters they remove to, he may gueſs at it, if he is well acquainted with the Country, by conſidering how far they can March in a Day; which done, he muſt ſo forecaſt that he may come to their Quarters a very little time after them, by which Means he may eaſily Surprize them, coming about Night-fall; and it being likely that they muſt come thither Late, eſpecially when the Days are Short, and they have had a long March, becauſe then it is likely they will not have had Leiſure to Poſt their Guards, nor give the neceſſary Orders for it, as fearing nothing, and believing their Adverſaries very remote. And if the Commander who has this Deſign be at a very great Diſtance from the Enemy, who is ſtill to remove further off, he muſt be ſure to take time enough, as has been ſaid, to be at their Quarters preſently after them, and at Night-fall; when he will certainly Surprize them, being then in Diſorder, and unprovided of Neceſſaries, and many of them gone Abroad a Forraging, as not finding enough in the Quarters, which frequently happens. But above all, the Commander muſt take Care not to acquaint any Body with his Deſign, and ſhall ſet out from his Quarters with the greateſt Secrecy that may; and even give out that he is going upon ſome other Deſign, taking a contrary Way from that he is to go; by that Means to deceive the Spies the Enemy may have in his Quarters; and having March'd a League, more or leſs, the wrong Way; he may turn ſhort, either to the Right or Left, towards the Place he Deſigns for, ſtill keeping along one or other ſide of the Enemy, but at ſuch diſtance that he may not be diſcover'd, if they March at the ſame time. Thus may he prove Succeſsful, as many Commanders have done this Way, who have taken great Booties,

and gain'd much Reputation by their Wiſdom and Conduct.

The Commander who is going to Surprize the Enemies Quarters, whatever Way he contrives, muſt cauſe a good Number of Servants a Horſeback to follow him, that when he is Maſter of the Quarters, they may Diſmount and go into the Houſes to take Priſoners, and ſecure the Horſes; as alſo Fire the Houſes where any Reſiſtance is made, that he may not be forc'd to employ many of his Troopers in this Service, and in Conducting and Securing the Priſoners, Horſes and Booty; but may make his Retreat in good Order, and with all poſſible Speed.

Chap. XV. *The Duty of a Captain of Horſe, when in Garriſon, in a Frontier Town.*

WHen an Army breaks up to go into Winter-Quarters, there is generally a competent Number of the Cavalry put into the Towns, to continue there in Garriſon during the Winter, which is very Advantageous, becauſe it ſecures all their own Country; hindring the Enemy from making Excurſions and Pillaging, without Imminent Danger of being cut off. Beſides this, it keeps the Cavalry always in Exerciſe, having daily Opportunity of ſeeing the Enemy, of making Excurſions into their Country, and Subſiſting upon their Coſt. Nor is this all, for even the Garriſons are the Securer againſt any Attempts of the Enemy than if they had no Horſe in them; and if the Cavalry does

does its Duty, it Defends all the Neighbouring open Towns and Villages, and Protects them from being Inſulted by the Enemy, or brought under Contribution. In ſhort the General who Commands the Army the next Campaign ſoon finds the Difference there is betwixt the Cavalry that has Winter'd on the Frontiers, and been kept in Service, and that which has lain Idle, and remote from the Enemy.

Thus we ſee there is good Reaſon for putting great Numbers of Horſe during the Winter into Frontier Places, which proves of great Uſe, and gives the Commanders the Opportunity of gaining much Honour, Reputation and Experience. And therefore never any Officers ſpend their time at Court, who love to ſtick to their Duty, to improve in their Buſineſs, and to gain Reputation; for ſuch Captains never leave their Troops or Garriſons, unleſs compell'd by ſome abſolute Neceſſity; and conſequently thoſe who Winter at the Court only for their Pleaſure, cannot do it without Shame and Diſhonour.

When a Captain of Horſe is in Garriſon in a Frontier Town, and there are other Troops in Garriſon beſides his own, and he Commands them all, he cannot March out with all the Cavalry, or any Part of it, without the Governour's Knowledge and Approbation. Neither can the Governour diſpoſe of them without acquainting their Commandant, and having his Conſent. But if the Captain be in Garriſon in a Frontier Town, where there is no Governour, and the Mayor, or other Civil Magiſtrates of the Town, have the Keys of the Gates, and give out Orders, which ſcarce they ever do, but yet may happen, then the Cap-

tain Commandant may diſpoſe of the Horſe without acquainting the ſaid Magiſtrates.

Chap. XVI. *Of the Guard of Horſe in a Frontier Place.*

WHen a Commander is in Garriſon in a Frontier Town, he is always to keep One or Two Troopers at the Governour's Corps de Garde, or that of the Place of Arms, Relieving them from time to time, that they may be always ready to give him Notice when there are any News of the Enemy, or the leaſt Alarm, and to convey the Governour's Orders to him. Beſides, he ſhall keep Twenty or Twenty-five Men upon Guard in the midſt of the Town, or near the Gate that is next the Enemy, that theſe being always ready to Mount, may preſently Salley out, in Caſe the Enemy appears or ſends a ſmall Party up to the Gates to take Priſoners, or drive Cattle, or make any other Booty, which is frequently done, to Draw out the Cavalry into ſome Ambuſh, if they be hot in Purſuit to recover the Priſoners or Booty. But if theſe Troopers Salley out in time, they will hinder the Enemies Deſign, tho' they be very Numerous; for theſe Twenty or Twenty-five coming upon them ſpeedily, will Check and Amuſe them, and by that Means all the Cavalry in the Place will have time to Mount and go out, and ſo the People Abroad may Retire with their Cattle in Safety. And if the Place may be Surpriz'd by Eſcalade, or otherwiſe, the Captain

tain ſhall cauſe this Guard, or Part of it, to be kept all Night without the Gate next the Enemy, yet under ſhelter of the Half-Moon, or Barrier that covers the Gate, and ſhall direct them all the Night to Scout Abroad by Two and Two, or Four and Four, as ſhall be moſt Expedient, and this in their turns, on all the Avennes, by which the Enemy may come to Surprize the Place; which they can never do if theſe Troopers fulfil their Duty. It is alſo very neceſſary that theſe Horſemen at the opening of the Gate, and before any Body goes out, do go and View all Places about it, for a Mile, or farther, to ſee there be no Ambuſh of the Enemies to Surprize ſuch as come out, or go into the Town. This Care of the Horſe will ſecure the Place from Surprize, as well as the People and Cattle about it.

Chap. XVII. *What a Commander is to do upon an Alarm during the Day, in a Frontier Town.*

IF the Commander of Horſe is in Garriſon in a Frontier Town, which is near the Enemies, and they Stronger in Cavalry than he, than muſt he always be Suſpicious that they will uſe all Sorts of Artifices to draw him and his Men out of the Town into ſome Ambuſh.

To this purpoſe the Enemy may make uſe of Double, or Falſe Spies, who will bring the Commander Intelligence, and make him believe that there is ſome ſmall Party Abroad, or ſome good Prize to be made, to draw him out the Way they

tell him the Party is, and where they lye conceal'd in great Numbers.

The Enemy may alſo Counterfeit ſome Neighbouring Governours, or other Commanding Officers Hand, on the other Side, and ſend ſuch Falſe Order to the Captain to March out, Appointing him a Place of Rendevouz as it were to carry on ſome Important Deſign, and ſo draw him into their Snare; but this is now no longer Practis'd, becauſe of the Fatal Accidents which have happen'd on this Account; and therefore Experienc'd Governours and Commandants in Towns have provided againſt ſuch Surprizes, by certain Tokens agreed on between them, by which they eaſily diſcover and know the true Orders and Advices they ſend one another.

The Commander may alſo Judge the Enemies lye in Wait, when the Country People of ſome Villages, who us'd to come every Day to the Town, are miſſing; for then it is likely they are detain'd by the Enemy, leſt they ſhould give Notice of their Ambuſh.

It may alſo happen that the Enemy lying in Ambuſh Six or Eight Miles from the Place, may ſend out Twenty-five, or Thirty Horſe into ſome Village near the Place, feigning as if they retir'd in Diſorder, as coming from ſome great Fatigue; being ſatisfy'd the Inhabitants of that Village being for the adverſe Party, will not fail to give Intelligence to the Garriſon, ſo to draw out the Cavalry after thoſe Men, and bring them within Reach of their Ambuſh. Therefore the Captain that Commands the Horſe in the Place, muſt take Care to be well ſerv'd by his Spies, that he may know every Day whether the Enemy is Abroad, and what Numbers, judiciouſly conſidering which Way their Garriſons

riſons lye, what Ways they can come, in how long time, and what Forces they can bring together: But above all, he muſt weigh the Experience and Diligence of the Officers he is to Act againſt, that he may never be Outwitted by them.

It has been ſaid before, that the moſt uſual Method to draw out a Garriſon, is to ſend a ſmall Party, after laying the Ambuſh, to take Priſoners, or drive the Cattle from the Walls of the Place, that he who Commands the Horſe in the Garriſon going out to Recover the Booty, may be drawn into the Ambuſh.

We will in the firſt Place, ſpeak of the Orders the Commander is to give upon ſuch an Alarm, and the Precautions he is to take, and then of what he is to do when left in Garriſon in a Frontier Place, during the Campaign, to curb the Enemies Garriſons of the Neighbouring Places, and to Secure the Convoys, and thoſe that go to, and come from the Army; and in the laſt Place we will talk of the Methods he is to uſe to avoid being impos'd on by Falſe Spies.

When the Commandant hears the Alarm, or is inform'd that the Enemy appears, he ſhall immediately Mount on Horſeback, cauſe all his Men to Mount and March out of the Place that Way the Enemy appears; and if without the Gate there be Roads that have Ditches and Hedges on the Sides, or Hollow-ways, at his going out he ſhall ask of the Governour, or of the Town Major, ſome Number of Foot, with an Officer to Poſt them in ſuch Advanc'd Poſts to Support his Men, and to Secure his Retreat in Caſe of need; for ſince to draw out a Garriſon they generally Employ but Twenty-five or Thirty Troopers to go up to the Walls of the Place, it will be enough for him

him to Detach the like Number, or ſome few more, under a good Officer, to Charge them, with Orders not to Advance ſo far that the Enemy may Encloſe them; and at the ſame time the Commander, with all his Horſe, ſhall draw up on the Eſplanade, and Poſt his Foot to the beſt Advantage; and ſhall himſelf take Care not to Engage ſo far that the Enemy may Cut him and his Men off. For if he ſuſpects there is any Ambuſh, he muſt not Advance any farther than to Support and Encourage thoſe he has Detach'd; and thoſe few will ſuffice to oblige the Enemy to quit their Booty, if they have got any, or to prevent their taking it, and gain time for the People abroad to withdraw themſelves and their Cattle. But if the Commander ſees his Detach'd Party run back with the Enemy, Charging them in the Rear, then ſhall he Detach others, in ſuch Number as he ſhall think fit to Support the firſt, ſo to Check and Repulſe the Enemy; and tho' he ſhould loſe ſome of his Men, yet that Loſs will not be Conſiderable, compar'd with that of all his Cavalry, ſhould he do like other young and unexperienc'd Officers, who being too hot and inconſiderate in Purſuing the Enemy, have gone ſo far with all their Men, that they have been Enclos'd, and Cut off from all poſſibility of Retreating, or Saving themſelves, through their own Raſhneſs. Therefore a Man muſt not think to Erect Trophies upon all Occaſions.

Chap-

Chap. XVIII. *What a Commander is to do when in Garriſon on the Frontiers, during the Campaign.*

WHen the Army takes the Field there is always a ſufficient Number of Horſe left in the Frontier Garriſons to Secure the Convoys and People that are daily going to and from the Army; as alſo to Curb the Enemies in the Neighbouring Garriſons. If the Commander who is left in Garriſon during the Campaign in a Frontier Town, obſerves that the Enemy have another Frontier Garriſon ſtronger in Horſe than his, he may make Advantage by Ambuſhes and ſudden Excurſions, and by that Means keep them in Awe; which will be eaſie for him to perform, if at the beginning he gathers ſome Auxiliary Troops of Horſe from the other Neighbouring Garriſons of his own Party, in ſuch Number as may ſuffice to Defeat the Enemies Garriſon, ſhould it come out againſt him; and to this purpoſe he muſt appoint thoſe Troops a Place of Rendevouz on his Way, ſo well deſcrib'd, that they may not miſtake one Place for another, and that he may join them with his Cavalry at the appointed Hour, ſo as to compaſs his Deſign effectually, without any Obſtacle. When he has ſo done Three or Four times, he may the more ſafely venture out with only his own Garriſon, becauſe the Enemy being diſcourag'd by his firſt Excurſions, will not eaſily all Salley out upon him, for fear he has ſtill the ſame Force. If the Commander thus left in Garriſon has Intelligence by truſty Spies, (which he muſt Purchaſe at any Rate

Rate whatſoever) or if he has but ground to gueſs that the Enemy is going to lye in Ambuſh on ſome great Road, to Fall upon the Convoys, or People going to or from the Army, then in Caſe he is not Commanded to Secure the Convoy, he may March by Night, and lye on the Way the Enemy is to go from their Garriſon to their Place of Ambuſh, and may Chuſe a convenient Poſt, if he is acquainted with the Country, or has good Guides that know it; for in all Roads there are ſome Places they muſt needs Paſs through, as Defilees, or between Two Woods that are not above a Carabine Shot aſunder, or between a Wood and a Village, or other ſuch like Places.

The Commander muſt ſet out ſo in time that he may come Seaſonable to the Place where he deſigns to meet the Enemy, and muſt Charge his Guards not to Lead him through any Places that are Inhabited for the Reaſons before mention'd. When he is come to the Place where he is to lye in Wait for the Enemy, if it be near a Wood he ſhall cauſe it to be Search'd before he comes too near, and being ſatisfy'd there is no Body in it, he ſhall draw up his Squadrons at their due Diſtances, along the Side of the Wood, without Entring into it, but facing the Way the Enemy is to March. He muſt keep his Men Mounted in good Order and Watchful, and yet Place Advanc'd Vedettes, with Orders when they ſee or hear the Enemy coming, to Retire without being Diſcover'd, and without Noiſe, to give him an Account, and fall into their Squadrons; but in Caſe they are Surpriz'd by the Enemies Advanc'd Parties, to move up ſome few Paces towards them, Fire upon them, and then run away at leaſt Eighty or a Hundred Paces diſtance from the Squadrons, paſſing beyond them, that the

the Enemies Scouts may Purſue them, and their whole Body following their Scouts at the Heels, as is uſual at Night, the Commander may fall upon their Flank as they paſs by him, or Charge them in the Rear, when they are paſt, as he ſhall think fit.

Beſides poſting of Vedettes, he muſt not forget to ſend out well Mounted Scouts on all Hands, with Orders to Halt every now and then, and ſometimes to Alight, and clap their Ear to the Ground, and Liſten whether they can hear any Troops March; and as was ſaid of the Vedettes, if on a ſudden they meet with the Enemies Scouts, to fly after making as if they would go up to View them, and Firing upon them; and to paſs by at the aforeſaid Diſtance from the Ambuſh, and draw on the Enemy in the ſame manner. But if the Scouts can View the Enemy without being obſerv'd, then ſhall they come back as faſt as may be without making a Noiſe to acquaint the Captain with what they have heard and ſeen. And to the End no unlucky Accident may happen, when the Scouts Retire and paſs by the Vedettes, the Captain muſt give both of them a Night Signal, by which the Vedettes may at a Diſtance know they are their own Scouts that are retiring. The Commander may follow much the ſame Methods if he takes his Poſt at the Entrance into, or going out of ſome Defilee.

It will be alſo Convenient, if the Captain upon March, or when he is come to his Poſt, happens to hear any extraordinary Noiſe in ſome Neighbouring Village, that he Detach Four or Six Ingenious Troopers, with Orders to Ride round the Village without making a Noiſe, if it be ſmall, to ſee if they can find any New Track of the Enemy;

my, and to Liſten whether they cannot hear them; and when they have Rode round without finding the Reaſon of the Noiſe they have heard, Two or Three of them ſhall Alight, and giving their Horſes to their Companions to hold, ſhall walk ſoftly without making a Noiſe into the Village, to Liſten whether the Enemy has not put in there to Refreſh, or on ſome other Account; and to bring him Intelligence with all Expedition of what they have found. But if the Village be very Large, it may ſuffice to ſend the Troopers to the Entrance of it, with Orders to go in upon Occaſion with the Precaution as above.

Chap. XIX. *Of Spies, and how the Commander is to behave himſelf according to the Advice and Intelligence they bring him.*

IT is a Matter of the greateſt Importance in War to pry into the Enemies Deſigns, and to know their going Out and coming Home, becauſe by this Means many unlucky Accidents are prevented, many Surprizes contriv'd, and much Miſchief is done them. To this Effect it is abſolutely neceſſary to have Good and Faithfull Spies; which a Commander is to Purchaſe by Dint of Money and Rewards, ſo to allure, and by Intereſt to induce them to Expoſe themſelves to all manner of Dangers, that they may Dive into the Enemies Deſigns, and come away without loſing time to bring Intelligence.

A Commander can never have better or more Faithful Spies than ſome of his own Men, who pretending to Deſert, may get to be admitted among the Enemies Horſe; becauſe being among them they will have the better Opportunity of ſending Advice, whether they are in the Field, or in Garriſon. But it would be requiſite to have ſome of theſe in ſeveral Regiments, and divers Garriſons of the Enemies, yet ſo that they ſhould not know one another; and it muſt be concerted with them to what Place they are to carry their Letters of Advice, as to leave them under ſome Stone, at the Foot of a Tree, near ſome Croſs, or any other remarkable Place that is eaſie to be found. However, they are themſelves to bring Advices of any great Moment, as of the Enemies deſigning to Surprize ſome Town, or Quarters, or the like.

The Commander may alſo make uſe of ſome Soldier diſguis'd like a Peaſant, or otherwiſe, who ſpeaking the Enemies, or the Language of the Country very well, may upon ſome pretence go into their Camp or Quarters, to View their Poſts, and all Particulars relating to them, and to Learn what they are doing, that he may bring Advice of all he can Diſcover. He may alſo Employ ſome Peaſants, becauſe they have the Liberty of going where they pleaſe, without being ſuſpected or obſerv'd by the Enemy, eſpecially in a Conquer'd Country, where they have the Liberty of going into the Camp, and all Towns, and of Travelling by Night; and conſequently they may eaſily carry News, and give good Intelligence. But it muſt be his principal Care, if poſſible, to have ſome Spies that can Inſinuate themſelves, and get Admittance into the Quarters of Generals, or Governours of Towns, for the better Underſtanding or Gueſſing at the

Ene-

Enemies Deſigns. He may alſo make uſe of Double Spies; but theſe muſt be Men of try'd Fidelity; and to gain Credit and Admittance among the Enemies General Officers, muſt ſometimes give them true Intelligence of the Motions of the other Party; however this muſt be in Matters of ſmall Conſequence, and at ſuch time as the Enemy can make no Advantage of them. The Commander muſt at the ſame time be very Cautious of the Enemies Double Spies; and therefore if he reſolves to March out upon the Intelligence brought him by Spies, of whoſe Fidelity he is not throughly ſatisfy'd, then ſhall he detain them, under Colour of making much of and rewarding them, and ſhall order his Servants to Entertain them, and at the ſame time to take Care they do not make their Eſcape, yet ſo that the Spies may not perceive they are any way miſtruſted; to the End that if the Advice they have brought proves true, he may Bountifully Reward them at his Return, ſo to oblige them to continue doing him ſuch Faithful Services; and theſe Spies being thus generouſly requited, will not only remain ſatisfy'd, but will for the future Expoſe themſelves to all Hazards, being thus Allur'd by Intereſt, and others in Hopes of the like Recompence, will ſtrive to bring Intelligence of Moment.

If therefore the Commander receives Information by Spies he has not entire Confidence in, that the Enemy is Abroad, or there is ſome other Advantage to be gain'd, then will it be Convenient before he ſets out from his Garriſon or Quarters, that he ſend out, towards the Place the Spies have told him of, Three or Four good Footmen, who being well acquainted with the Country, ſhall Advance an Hours March before him; as far as ſome Defilee,

or

or ſome other Place he ſhall Appoint them, where he may ſuſpect, or it is poſſible, the Enemy might lye in Ambuſh for him, and have ſent him that Falſe Intelligence. This Precaution is principally to be us'd when the Country is cloſe, and fit for Surprize, becauſe the Enemy cannot be Diſcover'd at a Diſtance; as alſo when the Ways are Narrow, and there is no Marching, but by Filing off; for then if the Footmen are Ingenious they can never be loſt or taken by the Enemy, and that Commander ſhall Appoint the Place to which they ſhall return to meet him, to give him an Account of what they have ſeen or learnt. He muſt not omit before he Marches to Charge all his Men to take great Care of their Arms, and have them ready for Service; for it often happens that ſome are Negligent in this Particular, who do not only by this Means render themſelves uſeleſs, but may do great Harm and Occaſion the Loſs of the whole Troop or Squadron.

Chap. XX. *Of Remounting the Troop.*

THere is no need of any Harangue to prove how Neceſſary it is that the Cavalry ſhould be well Mounted, to be able to do good Service, becauſe the thing proves it ſelf. Therefore as ſoon as a Captain of Horſe leaves the Camp, and retires into Winter Quarters, he muſt take Care to Sell all the Batter'd Horſes and to Buy good ones as ſoon as poſſible. He muſt alſo ſee to Remount his Troopers that ſhall happen to have Loſt their Horſes, if he finds them Deſerving; to the End that during the Winter they may have time to Train up their Horſes, and Enure them to Fatigue; becauſe if the Troopers

Troopers were not Mounted till juſt the Campaign begins, moſt of the Horſes would not be fit for Service, or to endure the Fatigue of the Campaign; eſpecially if they ſhould happen to be too young, or had not Winter'd well, and then the leaſt Labour would put them out of Condition of doing Service; ſo that the Troopers would be left Afoot, and conſequently of no uſe; and beſides, Horſes are generally Cheaper at the beginning of Winter, than when the Campaign is ready to begin.

I do not think my ſelf oblig'd to give an Account of the Rules I have ſeen obſerv'd by ſeveral Lieutenant Generals in the Conveying and Guarding of Forrage, either in their March when they went far, and left Garriſons of the Enemy on the Right and Left, placing Guards either of Horſe or Foot in certain Suſpicious Places, with Orders how to behave themſelves to Favour the Retreat of the Forragers, and to Defend them againſt the Parties of the Enemies Neighbouring Garriſons; or of their Care in Poſting Advanc'd Guards with neceſſary Vedettes, and in ſending out Scouts on the Enemies Avenues to Secure the Forragers; or of what they obſerv'd in their Retreat; I ſay I do not think my ſelf oblig'd to Treat of theſe Points, nor of the Method of conducting Convoys; becauſe it is always a General Officer that Commands upon ſuch Occaſions, and the Captain of Horſe has nothing to do but what he is Commanded, and is always under the Eye of the Officer Commanding in Chief. The Reader may therefore Excuſe me, if I ſpeak only of things Relating to the Duty of a Captain of Horſe, when he Commands in Chief, which was all I intended and undertook.

The End of the Duties of Horſe Officers.

THE

THE DUTIES OF ALL THE OFFICERS OF THE FOOT.

THE mighty War that has been Kindled and Flam'd throughout all *Europe* for ſeveral Years, is by that Means become ſo general a Profeſſion, that it is a ſhame any Man ſhould preſume to fill any Poſt in the Army without being throughly Acquainted with all the Duties of that Place. And tho' the Goodneſs of Princes and Generals often induces them to Accept of the good Will and Intention for the Deed, and thus to Excuſe the Ignorance of Officers, yet this is but a ſtronger Tie and Obligation to compel them to uſe all Methods to improve and become worthy of that Favour and Goodneſs that is us'd towards them. This little Treatiſe will ſhow every Officer of

of Foot what is Expected from him; and what he ought to perform for his own Honour and Preferment, and for his Prince's Service. It was Originally writ in *French* by Monsieur *de Lamont*, Town Major of *Thoulon*, after Twenty-three Years continual Service in the Best Regiments in *France*; and rising gradually through all Degrees, from carrying the Musket to the Post abovemention'd. His Capacity, after such Service and Preferment, has no Cause to be doubted of, and his Instructions have receiv'd a general Approbation both in *France* and *Holland*, Countries that may well be allow'd Competent Judges in Martial Affairs. This little Treatise may serve every Officer, from the Sergeant to the Collonel, in the Nature of a Journal; for here he may find Directions how to behave himself upon all Occasions that shall offer. We will now come to the Matter.

Chap. I. *The Duty of a Sergeant.*

THE Sergeant of a Company of Foot is to be look'd upon as the Soul of the Company, and his Duty as the Base and Foundation of all other Officers, for as much as he is the *Primum Mobile*, on whom all the Oeconomy of the Company does turn, and almost all the Honour of the Regiment depends.

A Sergeant ought to be Discreet, Sober, Judicious, Faithful to his Prince and Captain; Brave even to Undauntedness; and none ought ever to be made who has not actual Experience in the Practice of War; for he must be perfect in the hand-

handling of Arms, that is, the Exerciſe of Pike and Muſket, and the uſual Evolutions, that he may ſee the Word of Command given to a Batallion obey'd, Inſtruct ignorant Soldiers, make them Honour and Reſpect him; be Abſolute, but not Cruel; be Courteous and Loving, but not Familiar with them; ſo to Encourage thoſe that are in the Company, and draw others to it. He muſt underſtand how to make a good Lodgment and Epaulment, and to carry on a Sappe as directed. In his Words he muſt never ſwerve from Truth, eſpecially when he has been ſent to View or Meaſure any thing; for generally Sergeants are ſent upon thoſe dangerous Actions, and therefore I ſaid he muſt be Brave even to Undauntedneſs, for then on them the Honour of the Regiment often depends.

As for Inſtance, it is uſual to Detach a Sergeant with a ſmall Number of Men, to fall on before a greater Detachment that is to follow, to advance a Lodgment, gain a Traverſe, or Barricade, or to begin any Attack of what Sort ſoever. If that Sergeant performs not his Duty, either through Cowardice or Ignorance, every thing is preſently in diſorder, and there is nothing more Dangerous or Fatal than to begin wrong. Thence proceed the great Confuſions and Panick Fears, that retard the Works; and if this Fault happens in the Trenches, it may retard the taking of a Place a Day; and then if it ſhould be reliev'd that Day, the whole Fault is laid upon the Regiment then in the Trenches, which will be long before it can wipe off a Notable Blemiſh, and be upbraided by the whole Army with the Blame of having been the Cauſe of raiſing the Siege.

If

If he does not underſtand all the other Things above mention'd, his Company is allways wretched, and the Soldiers Libertines, awkward, ill diſciplin'd, and ſcarce fit for Service; and I muſt ſay it were much better a Company had no Sergeant at all, than to have ſuch as do not underſtand thoſe great and eſſential Parts already mention'd, till they are inſtructed in all the reſt.

Chap. II. *Inſtructions to a Sergeant of Foot how to behave himſelf.*

MY Deſign being to inſtruct all new Officers of Foot, after giving an account of all they are oblig'd to know for the due Execution of their Employment, the Sergeants will not take it ill if I give them ſome Advice how to behave themſelves, and inform them what they are to obſerve, in order to gain Reputation, and Advance themſelves to the greateſt Poſts.

It is to be obſerv'd, that Valour is ſo Noble a Part in all Sorts of Perſons, of what Quality ſoever, that, if they back it with good Behaviour, they can never fail to diſtinguiſh themſelves among other Perſons of their Rank and Condition. And when they have once gain'd this Repuration, it is their own Fault if they do not make their Fortune. But it is neceſſary I diſtinguiſh what Sort of Courage it is I mean that is requiſite for gaining this Reputation; for I do not think it enough to Fight Valiantly, and expoſe one's ſelf to all Sorts of Dangers; Madmen and Beaſts, and the meaneſt People in the World, have very often as much of

this

this as the Braveſt Men; this it's true is one Part of it, but the Courage I mean is to raiſe their Thoughts, and be nobly Ambitious of gaining Eſteem.

Now this being a thing that does not altogether depend on a Man's own ſelf, but rather on the Affection of another, it is not to be acquir'd without ſome Sort of Application. This Application conſiſts in doing his Duty well and pleaſing his Captain and Officers above all others; yet not ſo, but he muſt endeavour to pleaſe all other Perſons, eſpecially his Superiors, and to this effect he muſt make himſelf agreable and uſeful.

In order to become agreable, he muſt be Civil and Courteous to every Body; that is, he muſt always offer himſelf to do ſome ſmall Service whenſoever there is Occaſion; never talk to his Superiors but with Hat in Hand, which is a reſpect that will gain him Friends; for Vanity and Haughtineſs is generally hated; Talk but little, becauſe a Man cannot Talk much, and always well; be Secret in all he is entruſted with; never Repeat what he hears ſaid in contempt of, or to leſſen another; never Debauch, or do any thing that is Scandalous in Publick; be always decently Clad, but without Gaudineſs, or Superfluity, or colour'd Ribbands, for that denotes Weakneſs, and a light Temper; always be well ſhod, and wear a good Sword, and Handſome Hat and Belt; take ſpecial Care of his Halbard, and avoid being look'd upon as a Drinker, Smoker, or Wencher; which are all Indecencies, and hinder a Sergeant's Preferment; for they will ſay, he is a good Soldier, it is true, but he is a Drunkard, Whoremaſter, always running after Women, or elſe he is a Slovenly, Baſe Fellow, and Diſgraces his Company. So that if ever he happens to fall into ſome Debauch, inſtead

ſtead of boaſting, he muſt take care to conceal and never ſo much as Mention it, then will the World ſay, he is a brave Soldier, Diſcreet, Sober, Modeſt, talks little, is a Man of ſenſe, and Deſerves a better Poſt. And when it comes to this, there Wants only a good Opportunity to raiſe him to the higheſt Commands, for true worth makes itſelf belov'd, and every Body ſpeaks well of ſuch a Man and is proud of being helpful to him.

In order to be ſerviceable to all Men and uſeful to his Captain, he is to obſerve what Follows. The Sergeant muſt be diligent and Aſſiduous in his Duty, either upon Marches, or in Garriſon; he muſt never Quarter himſelf, till he has diſtributed the Billets to all the Soldiers of his Company and ſeen them quarter'd; teach them to Handle their Arms, and the exerciſe of Pike and Musket; give them good Inſtructions and keep them in awe; never fail to go to receive Orders, and carry them to his Captain, whereſoever he is, acquainting him with what was ſaid in the Ring, and to do the ſame to his Lieutenant and Enſign, always agreing with his fellow Sergeant; ſettle a Sort of moral politick Government among the Soldiers; ſo that he always have one to be a Sort of Favourite, in whom he may confide; make them Honour him; keep a good underſtanding among them; adjuſt all Differences that ariſe among them; when their Cloaths tear, compel them to mend them, and ſo their Shooes; oblige them to keep their Arms clean and well fixt; be Courteous and gain their love by good management; always keep private Intelligence with the moſt tri'd Men of the Company, ſo to diſcover the Deſigns of them all, and whether

any

any have a mind to desert; if he cannot read or write, be sure to learn it, which may be done in Two or Three Months; be true to his Religion, and give good Example in all Things. He must also be easie in the Service, and not make any unreasonable Disputes or Pretensions; and when he has Reason to contest upon a Point, not be too fond of his own Opinion, but go to the Major, or some other Experienc'd Officer, lay the Matter before him, and desire his Advice; visit the Officers frequently and every Day wait on the Major with respect, and never be cover'd before them, but ever easie in all things; above all, never be quarrelsome; but when he is engag'd be sure to come off with Honour; and rather die than do a base thing. And to conclude, never give any Man the least Cause of Complaint, but endeavour to live Nobly, and be esteem'd by all.

Chap. III. *The Ensign's Duty.*

AN Ensign must be perfect in all the Duties of a Soldier; must understand Arithmetick, as far as the Extraction of the Square root, because it is the Basis and principal Foundation of the Art of War; must be expert in handling his Arms, that he may judge whether the Soldiers of his Company do it gracefully; must teach, and cause them to be taught before him; and sometimes exercise the Detachments that mount the Guard or dismount. He must understand all the usual Evolutions, that he may see the Word of

Command given to the Batallion duly executed; muſt not be Ignorant of any thing that belongs to the Rank, Honours, Priviledges, Service and Poſts due to his Employ, to prevent ſtarting any Difficulties, or ſetting up Pretenſions wrongfully, whence there ariſe Conteſts prejudicial to the exactneſs of the Service, which muſt not be retarded on any Account whatſoever. He is to keep a Liſt of all the Men in every Squadron, and ſee they be punctual at their Guards, and to be able to diſcourſe all theſe Points profoundly, before he preſumes to ask or take upon him the Commiſſion of an Enſign.

Chap. IV. *Inſtructions to an Enſign how to behave himſelf.*

THE Enſigns will be pleas'd to give me leave to ſet down ſome Rules for them to walk by in their Employment.

I ſhall make Two Sorts of them. The firſt of Young Gentlemen of Quality and Rich. The Second of thoſe who have no Fortunes, and take upon them this Employment to lay the firſt Stone in raiſing their Fortune, and deſign to erect a Superſtructure by their Patience and Aſſiduity in the Service.

The firſt of theſe are to govern themſelves ſomewhat after a different manner from the others; for having Eſtates, and only making this Poſt a Step to riſe the eaſier to another more ſuitable to their Conditions, they are to ſhow themſelves by keeping a good Equipage; to keep a good

good Table; to treat their Brother Enſigns with Courteſie and free from Haughtineſs; and ſo the other Officers of their Regiment; to viſit their Captain, Colonel and other Superior Officers with reſpect; never to be cover'd, or ſet down before them, till they deſire them; not to miſs at Sieges to go into the Trenches, to ſee how Matters are carry'd on there, and hear what old Officers ſay of it; but be very Cautious of giving their Opinions, becauſe theirs is an Employment, and a time only for learning; to wait upon the Generals, and endeavour to appear before them with their Captains; to ſtudy the Mathematicks and Geography with Application; to be Curious in reading good Books, and underſtanding Works of Wit; to be converſant in Hiſtory; to endeavour to know the Soldiers of their own Company; to enquire after them of the Sergeant, that he may give the Captain an Account; to keep good Arms, and have good Cloaths, well choſen, yet without Gaudineſs, that he may not be look'd upon as vain or extravagant in that Point; to take Care not to affect Debauchery or profaneneſs, but on the contrary, to be Modeſt, and conceal it, if he has hapned to commit any; to talk little, and in fine, to be brave without boaſting; to ſhow his Courage in the Trenches, and upon all other Occaſions; for Young Men muſt ſettle a Reputation; not to be quarrelſome, but if once ingag'd rather die than do a mean Action; to be Generous, and always give ſome Pittance to the Soldiers, and ſome ſmall Preſent to the Sergeants, as a handſome Sword or Belt, a Feather, or the like. Theſe things oblige the Captain, and gain the Enſign Eſteem.

As for those Ensigns who have no Estates, they must behave themselves otherwise; for besides that all Men shun Poverty, it hinders a Man from exerting his Natural Virtue far want of Necessaries. To supply this defect, he must labour to excel in all other Points; and since he cannot purchase that Friendship, which is so easily granted to Prosperity, he must ravish it by his Worth; that is, he must study Night and Day to become useful; and to that end he must take most particular Care of the Company, in those Particulars mention'd under the Sergeant's Duty; be exact in point of Service, and in instructing the Soldiers that are Ignorant; have an Eye upon the Behaviour of the Sergeant; keep a good understanding among the Soldiers; shew an undaunted Courage, and go on with Mirth and Gayety to Fight, and the same into the Trenches; to learn every thing; to carry Fascines himself; to make himself remarkable in all Places; if it be desir'd, to know any thing of an advanc'd Post, to offer himself to go, and perform it with a Grace; to visit the Colonel, and all the Captains; never to be cover'd, or sit down before them, till they desire him; to be always ready to serve every Body with Civility; never to borrow Money of any Body; and take heed of Gaming; to be Clean, plain and modest, without any gaudiness; only observing Decency; to keep his Arms well, to be Sober in all respects and above all very Modest.

He must also be easie upon Service, and take great Care of those Mistakes some Officers often commit; believing that to gain Reputation, and be look'd upon, they must always contest about some Point, or use unnecessary and superfluous Pre-

Precautions to put in Execution the Orders they receive from a General or Commandant. It is the Property of a good Officer to think nothing hard, to make a Virtue of Neceſſity, and to deſire nothing but to ſerve and to pleaſe the General, or the Commandant. If ſo, the Service is much the better perform'd, the General Values, and the Regiment Eſteems him, and is always ready to teſtifie his Merit, which is the ready Way to Preferment.

Chap. V. *The Duty of the Lieutenant of Foot.*

THE Lieutenant's Duty is to know that of a Soldier to Perfection; to underſtand Arithmetick as far as the Extraction of the Square Root, for the Reaſons aforemention'd; to ſee the Exerciſe of Pike and Musket perform'd; to underſtand all the Evolutions; to diſcourſe pertinently of the Methods of War, as of the manner of gaining an Advantage in all Places and Exigencies; of making a good Encampment; of Intrenching in all Sorts of Places; of Cantoning without Noiſe or Confuſion; becauſe very often the Lieutenants Command the Company in the abſence of their Captains; and it is a diſmal thing it ſhould be left to a Man that knows not how to lead it, but at hap hazard, as Fortune ſhall pleaſe to direct; and yet many Accidents may occur which may require a Conſummate Experience to come off with Honour.

A Lieutenant is alſo to know all the Articles of War, and other Rules, and in general, all that concerns the Right, Honour and Duty of his Poſt, to prevent the Miſtakes and Conteſts which often retard the Service very conſiderably; and that he may give his Opinion upon due Information in Councils of War, to which he may be call'd for want of Captains; and it is a dreadful Thing when ſuch Counſels are held for trying of guilty Soldiers, that the Life of a Man ſhould be expos'd to the Fancy of one that judges without any knowledge of the Law or Conſtitution, and only by Opinion, without any other Ground but meer Chance, whether right or wrong, and yet his Sentence is Definitive.

He muſt therefore be able to diſcourſe pertinently and give a good Account of all Points that may be put to him in the Caſes above ſpecified, before he can pretend to be a Lieutentant.

Chap. VI. *Inſtructions to a Lieutenant how to behave himſelf.*

THE Lieutenants will be pleas'd to take it in good Part that I give them ſome Inſtructions how to behave themſelves, having my ſelf ſerv'd in that Poſt, and found by my own Experience and Faults what it is that will hinder a Lieutenant of Foot from advancing to the greateſt Employments.

I muſt repeat the ſame thing to them which I have before ſaid to the Sergeants, that a Man before he pretends to any thing, muſt be capable of it, and

and have a Reputation fixt. Now ſince this is not in our own Power, tho' we perform all that is proper for the attaining of it, but rather depends on the Will of others, who weigh our Deſerts as they pleaſe, and put ſuch Value upon them as they think fit, and this for the moſt Part according to Fancy, without examining it by the Rule of Juſtice, but as Sympathy or Antipathy leads them; or elſe according as we have prepar'd them by our previous Actions, we muſt therefore divide this Management into Three ſeveral Parts.

The firſt, which is to make an Impreſſion, and may diſpoſe the Minds of all thoſe that may ſpeak favourably of us, to our Advantage or Diſadvantage. This firſt Part contains our Behaviour, our Meen, our Cloathing, and our Equipage.

The ſecond, our Works and Actions.

And the third, the uſe we are of in the Service.

As to the firſt, it is requiſite a Lieutenant be Modeſt, Courteous, Talk Little, and to the Purpoſe, Cloath according to his Ability: If Rich, he muſt have a good Stock of handſome Cloaths, well choſen, according to the moſt univerſal and receiv'd Faſhion, without ever being fond of following thoſe that invent them, or ever appearing gaudy; for tho' it is ſaid a Young Man may wear all Sorts of Colours, yet if he does not, he will be the better look'd upon, and every Body will ſay he is a Young Man that has the Diſcretion of one in Years, and is orderly in all he does. And ſince it is our ſight which firſt diſcovers all that appears before it, no ſmall Advantage may accrue to the Perſon that ſhall

ſhow himſelf in ſuch a Dreſs as may be grateful to the Eyes, and by their Means prepoſſeſs the Mind with a favourable Opinion.

If he is Poor he muſt have a ſuitable indifferent Equipage, and take care to keep it well; he muſt ſpare out of his Belly, to be handſomely, yet modeſtly, cloath'd; beſure to be always neat and clean, and rather ſuffer the utmoſt extremity of Want than Borrow of any Man whatſoever; becauſe if he becomes a Slave to his Creditor, and a Scare-crow to all others, which is, ſhould not return what he Borrows, he becomes guilty of the Worſt and moſt Pernicious of all Qualifications. Nor muſt he ever play, unleſs he will run the hazard of loſing all he has in the World, be look'd upon as a Man of no Government, and little Senſe, and bring himſelf into a Thouſand Quarrels, beſides the frequent Occaſions of playing the Knave, after which a Young Man is only fit to be hang'd, or leave the World. Both the Rich and the Poor muſt be ſure to have good Arms, and well look'd after.

The Second Part concerns his Words and Actions. A Lieutenant is to Talk but Little, and give Ear to all that is ſaid, and be Cautious of giving his Opinion in any matter whatſoever; becauſe it is an Employment in which a Man is only to learn, and it belongs not to him to decide. When he ſpeaks of any one, tho' he be his Enemy, he muſt never ſay any ill, leſt he give Occaſion to be ill talk'd of himſelf, which will not be for his Reputation; and beſides, vain and haughty Words cauſe Contradiction and Contempt, whereas modeſt and civil Diſcourſe gains Commendation and Applauſe. He muſt be orderly in his Gate that it may not be ſtarch'd, nor ungain'd, always active, and endeavour to oblige every Body; never contend

for

for the upper Hand, or precedence in indifferent Matters with any one, yet never yield to any one contrary to Reaſon upon Publick Ceremonies belonging to his Poſt.

The third is the Uſefulneſs of his Perſon. In order to be uſeful, he muſt be very knowing in his Buſineſs, and even beyond it, if poſſible; do his Duty with Vigilancy and Activity; never be Sloathful; viſit his own Captain every Day, and the others too; often wait upon them to the Generals, to their Viſits of Compliment, when they walk abroad, or go to divert themſelves, firſt endeavouring to find out whether they will allow of it, and asking their conſent, provided he have then no Buſineſs to do for the Company; be acquainted with all the Soldiers of the ſaid Company; endeavour to know their Minds, by holding Intelligence with ſome of them; encourage them to ſerve as they ought to do; commend the Captain as a good Man; aſſure them he has heard him ſpeak well of them, and wiſhes them well; that he will ſoon be preferr'd to a Conſiderable Poſt, and will take Care of them all; give the ſaid Captain an Account of all things; make court to him; never pretend he is not to concern himſelf with his Duty; and that it is no Buſineſs of his; but rather do the Duty of both, if he can; a Man is always commended for all that tends to the Advancement of the Service; pay great Reſpect to his Captain, and all the others, and never be cover'd or ſit down before them till they bid him, whatſoever the Quality of the Captain or the Lieutenant may be; take great Care of the Companies Arms, and oblige them to keep them clean; make them mend their Cloaths and Shoes when they wear out; ſend the Sick to the Hoſpitals,

and ſee they be look'd after in Sickneſs; and in ſhort, make himſelf knowing and uſeful in the Works, and do Juſtice to all Men, and to himſelf in the Captain's abſence. He muſt learn the Duty of a Captain, and perform it as if the Company were his own.

Chap. VII. *The Duty of a Captain of Foot.*

IT is requiſite that a Captain, for the Worthy executing of his Employment, and underſtanding of his own Duty, be perfect in the Duties of a Soldier, of an Enſign, a Lieutenant, and particularly of a Sergeant. And ſince theſe Officers have their dependance on him, he is to make choice of them upon full Knowledge of their Deſert, and not upon the Recommendation of another; and, if it may be to pick them out of the eldeſt Soldiers, or his firſt Corporal, if he is capable of it, or elſe ſome other. For this Reaſon he is to be extraordinary cautious how he beſtows the firſt Riſe in the Company; for if he beſtows it on Elderſhip rather than Merit, then he that is thus rais'd aſpires to other Preferments as they fall, and pretends a Right to the Halbard, excluſively to all others, tho' he is not capable of them; and if the Captain refuſes it to his eldeſt Corporal, then he ſometimes debauches moſt of his Company. Therefore to avoid this Inconveniency, he muſt allow the eldeſt ſome better Pay, upon Condition they do not pretend to any Preferment; making them ſenſible of

of their Ignorance, or what Vice it is that renders them unworthy; thus to excite in them a desire of capacitating themselves, of mending their Faults, or at least to satisfie them they must not pretend to Rise. This prepares them to see others preferr'd before them, without allowing them to complain; and makes the Employment the more valuable, by discovering it requires several things should be understood, learnt and known; and therefore the Captain is to examine the Person before all the Soldiers, to show them what an Officer, Subordination, and Obedience are.

He must first examine him as to his Service and Experience, which must be Considerable; whether he can give the Word of Command for the Exercise of Pike and Musket; whether he is capable of Instructing ignorant and awkward Soldiers; whether he knows how to Command a Detachment; whether he could make a Lodgment under the Enemies Fire; how he is to Cover and Epaule himself against their Fire; whether he can carry on a Sappe and can Read and Write. Then if he answers pertinently to all these Particulars, he is to Commend him before all the Soldiers to make much of him, to Command them to Own, to Respect, Honour and Obey him, and to call him Mr. and not plain *John* or *Tom*; and in private he must Order the Serjeant to make the Soldiers Fear him by his Grave Deportment among them, and to Love him for his Civility and Kindness; and he must himself use him Civilly, that the Soldiers may Respect him; and to encourage the Sergeant, and make him carry himself more genteelly, he must order him every Day when they march to take a List of the

the Soldiers Quarters, as he delivers out their Billets, and to allow of no Alteration without acquainting him; to give him an Account of all things every Night, and the ſame in Garriſon, and every Day to viſit one half of the Quarters, and his Comrade the other.

A Captain is alſo to underſtand Arithmetick, as far as the Extraction of the Square Root; to have ſome inſight in the Mathematicks; or if he knows not how to take the Dimenſions of inacceſſible Bodies, or the uſe of the Rule of Proportion, he muſt at leaſt know the Lines of Defence, and how to gain a flank'd Angle, to carry up a Trench to it, to make a good Lodgment on it, and to Flank it well, to order his Places of Arms and Batteries conveniently; to begin the Sap at the Foot of a Glacis, on the edge of a Ditch; to make a deſcent into a Place that is eaſie to be defended; to carry a Gallery acroſs a Ditch, after making good a Lodgment to ſupport it, well Epaul'd and Flank'd, ſo that the Enemies may not attack it without imminent Danger; and in fine, to know how to lodge himſelf on a Breach; for altho' there are Ingineers who have the ordering of theſe Affairs, yet they are intolerably tedious; and things would be much better done, becauſe many Eyes ſee more than Two; and it is the Nature and Property of a Captain to be Brave, and to have Courage, which is not ſo general among all Ingineers. Thus would Conqueſts become ſpeedy and frequent, more Officers and Soldiers be ſav'd, and good ones would be made; no Man would be ignorant of the Art of War; which by ſuch Means would make the greateſt Obſtacles uſeleſs, and eaſie to be ſurmounted; and no Man would have an Employ-

ment

ment that knew not how to execute it. But this is not all the Buſineſs of a Captain, becauſe he is ſometimes made to do the Duty of a Major, or Major of a Brigade, and therefore he muſt be laborious and vigilant, and know all the Duties of a Major, or Major of Brigade, and the Duties, Rights, Privileges, and Prerogatives of them, and his own Poſt, to prevent the Trouble of Controverſies that may ariſe, either in the Army, in Detatchments, in Marches, in the Order of Battel, or in Garriſons and Winter Quarters, which are all prejudicial to the Service; and I have ſeen them rais'd by Men of 20 or 30 Years Service, who ought to die for ſhame when they ſaw themſelves condemn'd as being in the wrong. This proceeds from the want of Ambition, there is often in the Sou's of ſome Men, who place the utmoſt Bounds of their Fortune in arriving to be Captains, and believe all the Duty of their Poſt conſiſts in executing what they are commanded, in receiving and fighting an Enemy courageouſly when it falls to their Lot, in carrying on the the Works laid down by an Engenier, and in giving the Word of Command for the exerciſe of Pike and Musket, without adding any thing of their own. However, in Proceſs of Time it ſo falls out, that they come to be at the Head of their Regiments, which are employ'd in Flying Camps, or in great Detachments from the main Army to inveſt ſome Place, or upon ſome other Deſign, under a Lieutenant General, who having a conſiderable Body, it will then be requiſite to form Brigades that the Regiments may roul in Order. Then ſhould not the eldeſt Captain, next the Commandant of the ſaid Regiment, be made Major of the Brigade, he would

would complain loudly, plead his Twenty or Thirty Years Service, and ſay he had the greateſt Wrong in the World done him; and yet ſhould he have the Poſt, it would ſo fall out that whenſoever the General enquir'd of him concerning the Strength and Condition of his Brigade, he would not know what to ſay. If after a long March Ammunition-Bread ſhould be ſcarce, and it were only to be deliver'd to the preſent and effective Men, all the Regiments would complain, becauſe he would not be able to give them a juſt and rational Account of their effective Strength. If there were Works to be diſtributed, either in intrenching or making of Lines, all the Regiments would complain they had too great a ſhare in that Fatigue, alledging it was not equally divided. If again there ſhould happen any honourable Enterprize, for which he muſt detach ſome Men of his Brigade, they would be all for marching, becauſe he would not have kept a juſt Account of their Rouling, and what Guards had been kept. Beſides, ſhould it happen that ſome Major of a Regiment had forgot or chang'd the Word, and a great Confuſion ſhould happen in the Guard of the Camp through the different Words, it would be for want of his taking Care of going his Round about the Camp, and to the Guards, to be ſure of the Word, after giving it at Night-fall. In ſhort, a Thouſand other Accidents would happen, as his taking more or leſs Authority than was due to the Poſt he had undertaken, without underſtanding or being capable of it; and ſo in other Caſes. Therefore I ſay a Captain is bound to know all the Duties in Perfection, as alſo the Articles of War; how Caſes have been decided upon Controverſies formerly ſtarted, the Poſts of

all

all Regiments, and which is due to his own, to avoid those I call vulgar Mistakes, because they proceed from Ignorance. Another Powerful Reason for being thus perfectly knowing, is, that it often happens when detach'd from the Army, and hard press'd by the Enemy, or oblig'd to attack or to quit a Post, or any other Account whatsoever; I say then the Lieutenant General, or other Commandant of the detach'd Body, either to clear himself if Things happen amiss, or for his better Information upon good Advice, will call a Council of War to consult upon the present Exigency, and will Summons all, or a great many, of the Captains to give their Opinions; and then what Stress can he lay upon the Advice of Persons who are uncapable, and do not understand the Matter in Hand? What Light can he gather from those who are themselves hid in the Darkness of Ignorance? Thus you see it is requisite that all Commanders should understand the Art of War; and that such as know it not be not employ'd instead of those that are fit and serviceable.

These are the most Essential Duties of a Captain; all which an Officer, or other Person that aspires to the Post, should understand to Perfection, and be able to give an exact Account of them before he may be admitted.

Chap.

Chap. VIII. *Inſtructions to a Captain how to behave himſelf.*

THE Captains will be pleas'd to give me leave to put them in Mind, that the Etymology of the Word or Title of Captain, ſufficiently denotes the Importance of the Character, becauſe it is deriv'd from the Latin *Caput*, that is, Head or Chief; and as there is no Head without a real or ſuppoſititious Body, ſo there is no Captain without a Body, which is his Company, or an abſolute Command over ſome other Perſons.

It is true, there are ſome Perſons, both by Sea and Land, who are call'd Captains, tho' they have no Companies; but this Title is given them for their Deſert, and becauſe they have born Command, and come off with Honour, and therefore the Title of Captain has remain'd to them by Cuſtom; and the Lieutenants in the Foot-Guards, and the Brigadiers in the Horſe, have the Honour of this ſtill. However, it is never given at firſt without ſome Command; and therefore all Captains are oblig'd to ſupport and maintain their Quality by extraordinary Merit, and by ſingular Application to their Duty, which they muſt fulfil with the greateſt Circumſpection and Aſſiduity; and therefore for their better Information I will divide their Conduct into Two Parts.

The Firſt ſhall relate to what they are to obſerve in their Way of Proceeding and Living.

The

The Second, their particular Duties towards those that serve under them.

Some will say there are Captains of all Sorts of Degrees, and of several Qualities, who are still good Captains for the Service they are to do in the Business of their Post. To this I Answer, that their Advice in some small Measure regards those who are satisfy'd with an indifferent Esteem; and for such, as what I have already said of the Duty of a Captain is more than enough; but those who desire to deserve this Title in its greatest Extension, as it is given to Great Generals of Armies, when we say such a Man is a great Captain, such I say are to distinguish themselves by the Practice of all Sorts of Virtues, and by Magnanimous Behaviour endeavouring thus to gain the Esteem of all Men; and as there is no acquiring of Wealth without some Pains and Trouble, so it is most certain there is no gaining Esteem, or becoming Virtuous, without Study and Application; for to this End a Man must govern his Passions, and curb their first Sallies, live to please all the World, and rather cloath himself to the Fancy of others than his own.

This last Particular, which seems of very little Moment, is yet of very great Consequence, and on it for the most part depends all the good Opinion and the Esteem the World has for Persons of Note, because it is the first that affects the Eyes, and insensibly disposes us to receive such an Impression as our Reason can afterwards scarce blot out.

As our Fancies differ, so we all love several Colours; therefore I say he should cloath himself in those that are most us'd and universal, and

in

in the moſt General Faſhion with Decency, becauſe all Men love it.

He muſt have a good Equipage, and well kept; never play, unleſs at Games that are for Exerciſe, becauſe it is venturing his Fortune, as well as his Money, ſhould he loſe much.

If he has no Eſtate he may by his Ingenuity make amends for that defect, which is not caus'd by himſelf, or of his own ſeeking. He muſt never make it known by the Way of moving Compaſſion, yet never conceal it, that it may be known the Reaſon of his having a ſlender Equipage is for want of Means to ſupport a greater, and this he muſt talk of dexterouſly and properly; be no Burden to any Man, and borrow leſs than if he were Rich. He muſt be very Courteous, without Formality, Grimace, or Uneaſineſs; as Generous as his Condition will bear, and never ſuffer Poverty to prevail on him to commit any ſordid Action; not be Haughty or Vain, yet always carry it high enough; Obliging to all Men, and endeavouring to pleaſe in all things.

If he is Rich, he muſt be Magnificent without Prodigality, that he may not be accus'd of want of Senſe, and be forward in obliging all Perſons of Worth. Such Men have great Advantages over the others, and are much nearer making their Fortunes; for they may do any thing; and if they have Wit enough to do every thing well, they preſently gain an univerſal Eſteem, which puts them in a Condition to hope for and aſpire to any thing. It is needleſs for me to ſay a Captain muſt be Courageous, and Brave in the higheſt Degree, for he who is not, ought to be drowned. He ought to know, or endeavour to know,

know, all things; to be Curious in having good Books, and making uſe of them, that he may learn to ſpeak properly; yet to talk little, and liſten to every thing; not to be Cenſorious; never to begin a Quarrel, if he can avoid it; but if he happens to be engag'd in any, which muſt never be but upon good and ſufficient Grounds, to bring himſelf off with Honour and Reputation; to give a good Example; becauſe as many as are under his Charge are apt to follow it; never to do or ſay any thing that is Profane, or that may give Scandal, and to be Prudent and Moderate in all his Actions. He muſt conſider he is the Head of many, who look upon him to do as he does. He muſt do Juſtice to all Men, and never make an unjuſt uſe of his Power and Authority on any Account whatſoever; be ſtrict in keeping his Promiſe to any Soldier when he liſted him in his Company, and obſerve all the Forms requiſite upon that Occaſion, which are very eſſential, and which few obſerve, and are therefore much to blame.

The Forms are theſe. He muſt ask him whence he came? And what Reaſon he has to liſt himſelf? When he has anſwer'd, put the Queſtion whether he has ever ſerv'd? If he ſays he has, enquire why he left the Service? And whether he has his Diſcharge? If he has, to ſee it, and keep it till he has done examining him. Then Queſtion him whether he has ever ſerv'd againſt his Prince, either in Rebellions at home, or in foreign Armies? If he ſays he has, to upbraid him with his Diſloyalty, and make him ſenſible what a ſhame it is to be falſe to his Prince and Country, and what Danger he has run if he had

had been taken, or if his Sovereign's Mercy had not prevail'd to grant a General Pardon, for then he might have been hang'd, tho' he had return'd 20 or 30 Years after the Offence committed; beſides the Baſeneſs of the Action and the Scandal it brings on the honourable Profeſſion of a Soldier. Then is he to ſettle the Terms on which he is liſted, and to keep his Word inviolably. When they are agreed of the Terms he is to acquaint him with the Laws made againſt Deſerters, that he may not plead Ignorance; and then make him ſwear he will ſerve the King faithfully under his Command; that if he knows any thing againſt the Service he will diſcover it; that he will upon all Occaſions hazard his Life in his Service; that he will never leave the Company without leave; and after all this he is to enter his Name in a Book he is to have Bound a purpoſe to keep his Regiſter; he muſt carefully ſet down his Name, and Sirname, the Place of his Birth, of what County and Pariſh he is, his Age, Complexion, and Shape, and then deliver him up to the Sergeants, or Officers of the Company, to be taught his Duty, and to receive what has been promis'd him; to put up his former Diſcharge, if he has any, promiſing him it ſhall be taken Care of, to produce it upon Occaſion, and reſtore it to him when he quits the Company. To conclude, the Captain is to be true to his Religion, to make the Service his only Buſineſs; and both Rich and Poor never to do any indecent Action in Publick, nor be guilty of any Debauch whatſoever, to avoid Scandal, and giving an ill Example; and above all things, to oblige all that are under his Command ſtrictly to

per-

perform all Parts of the Service, without any Favour or Connivance, but on all other Accounts be Mild, Courteous and Obliging. These are in general the most useful things a Captain ought to observe.

Chap. IX. *The Duty of a Major of Foot.*

THE Post of a Major, either of a Garrison, or of a Regiment, ought to be fill'd by a Man of known Fidelity, and particular Zeal for his Prince's Service; one that has gain'd profound Experience in War, and particularly in Foot Service. It is his Duty carefully to observe all things that are for his Prince's Interest, as his Supervisor in Martial Affairs. If he is Major of a Town or Citadel, he is from time to time to give his Sovereign an Account of the Condition of the Place, the Strength of the Garrison, of the Designs of the Governour and Inhabitants, in case there be any Cause to suspect them; but this must not be upon light Grounds; and tho' it be the Duty of a Governour to give an Account of all under his Charge, yet that is no hindrance but the Major may do so too; for the more Shepherds there are, the better the Flock is guarded. But to proceed upon his Duty, I say the Major must be extraordinary Zealous, Loyal, Vigilant and Industrious, very Brave, well Discours'd, Rigid to the utmost in distributing Service, without any Favour or Affection; and when there

there is a good one in a Town or Regiment, the Governour, or the Colonel, have little to do, but live at much eaſe. The Town Major in a Garriſon is the Governour's Mouth; only he or his Adjutant are to carry Orders; to cauſe all to be publiſh'd; to ſettle all things that relate to Martial Diſcipline, or the Kings, or the Governour's Authority; to keep Account according to Times and Occaſions of all Poſts that are to be guarded, and Proportion the Guards to the ſtrength of the Garriſon; to ſhow them to the Governour, and receive his Orders about the manner of diſtributing them; and when he has receiv'd them, to cauſe them to be put in Execution to the utmoſt Nicety.

In time of War, if the Place may be attack'd, and there be any Reaſon to apprehend the Garriſon is not ſtrong enough to defend it, or that the Fortifications, the Artillery, or Ammunitions are not ſufficient, he muſt acquaint the Governour, and at the ſame time write to the Secretary of War to inform his Prince. If the Place is beſieg'd he is to contrive how to defend it, according to the ſtrength of the Garriſon, and the Inhabitants; for if he is skilful he can tell almoſt to a Man how many can defend it, and what they are fit for; and then he ſhows his Projects to the Governour, to eaſe him of ſome part of the many Cares, which at ſuch a time lye heavy upon him; and if he likes them, he receives his Orders, and ſees them executed. If he has Men enough, he muſt not only Man the Outworks well and viſit them twice a Night, and as often in the Day, but endeavour to meet the Enemy, by making ſmall Redoubts and Lodgments, in order to diſpute every Inch of Ground, and gain time; and therefore he muſt

must understand the Mathematicks, at least that Part which relates to Fortification; for I presuppose that he must be perfect in the Duties of a Soldier, a Sergeant, an Ensign, a Lieutenant, and a Captain, give the Word of Command for the Exercise of Pike and Musket, draw up the Batallions, and make them perform all Sorts of Evolutions; for this the meanest Majors must understand. I only speak here of the more material Duties, as being absolute Masters of the Articles of War, and all other Rules and Ordinances of that Nature; and it were not amiss he understood some little Law, that they might be able to sum up the Resolutions come to in formal Proceedings in a due Method; above all things not to be Ignorant of all manner of Contests that have been started and decided; as soon as any fresh Regiments come into the Garrison, to be inform'd of the Customs and Laws, to the end that when he distributes the Service, they may be put upon it without Prejudice to them, forasmuch as the Majors of Regiments have no publick Duty in Garrison. He must not neglect to write down the Times and Seasons when any extraordinary Accidents happen, and what was done in the Case, because those serve as Presidents or Laws when the like occurs again. The Major is to be a Living Register or Record, to inform the Governour or Commandant of a Garrison of all the Difficulties and Disputes that arise, and this by his constant Experience, and the Register beforemention'd. He must be Courteous in his Command, but at the same time Absolute and Severe, especially in never appointing of Men to be Soldiers; who are not in a Condition to serve, and not admitting into the Guards any scurvy Soldiers, or ill Arms; never allowing Squadrons to consist

of

of leſs than the third part of a Company, or the Soldiers to mount by turns, and make but a Quarter Guard; but to oblige them all without any exception to do their 24 Hours Duty, which makes the Officers good; the Captains are oblig'd to have full Companies, and well arm'd, and the Prince is ſerv'd effectually, without any Fraud; for it is to no purpoſe to ſend Commiſſaries and Muſter-Maſters into Garriſons and Armies, if the Majors do not go Hand in Hand with them in making the Muſters, becauſe only the Majors can know the effective Men, which the Commiſſaries can never diſcover, unleſs they had the Spirit of Prophecy; for there is nothing more certain than that when a Captain makes it his Buſineſs to fill up his Company with Faggots, he takes ſuch Meaſures, and gives them their Leſſon ſo well, that it is almoſt impoſſible to find out one of them.

The Majors of Regiments are to know all theſe things without any Exception becauſe as the Town Major is the Soul of the Garriſon, ſo is the other the Soul of his Regiment; as the Town-Major is to know how to defend it when beſieg'd, and to acquaint his Sovereign with the Wants of the Place if he apprehends a Siege, or with the Deſigns of diſaffected Perſons if he knows any ſuch; ſo is the Major of a Regiment to know how to attack a Place; and when he knows his Regiment is to march into the Field, he is to give Notice of the effective ſtrength of it, and how it is arm'd and regulated; and if he diſcovers any Captain, or other Officers, who have any Deſigns againſt his Sovereign's Service, he is to acquaint him, by which Means there will never be any Weak Regiments, or ill arm'd, and no falſe Meaſures will be taken in

in Enterprizes, nor will any entire Regiment ever Desert to the Enemy, as has been often seen. So that by the Concurrence of the Majors all the Abuses committed in Garrisons and Troops may be Redress'd, all the Good and Bad Officers in the Kingdom known, and only such continu'd as may be useful and fit for the Service, and the Generals will be much eas'd, and see plainly into those Things they could never before unravel.

The only Point is to find such Majors that are Zealous, Loyal, Exact, Industrious, Men of Courage, and well vers'd in all Things above-mention'd, which may be done thus. The Prince need only declare them his own Peculiar Servants and Representatives in their Garrisons and Regiments, and oblige them to come to Court within a Year after the Notification of his Orders, to take an Oath of Fidelity in his Presence, and to be examin'd as to their Capacity, to make them answerable for all Events, in Case a Garrison be Surpriz'd, or Besieg'd, when in a bad Posture of Defence, for want of their giving timely Notice of what was wanting; or that a Regiment which had been in Garrison should be found Weak, ill Arm'd, or made up of bad Soldiers, ill Disciplin'd, Unskilful and Ignorant, and he have given no Notice of it. In such Case he ought to be Punish'd without Mercy, as a False and Treacherous Servant. This Duty ought to be Publickly made known, to the end the Majors might Act without Complaisance, or any Scruple, on Account of the Obligations of serving a Friend, but that the Tie of Honour and Conscience might Prevail, and satisfie his Friend that there was nothing to be expected from him contrary to his Oath and Duty; and therefore such as should be found to have fail'd for Interest, to

have allow'd of Falſe Muſters, and to have combin'd with the Captains and Officers, ſhou'd be puniſh'd with Death, as Family Thieves; Vigilancy would then be the greateſt Teſtimony of a Major's Deſert; for Knowledge would be common to them all; thoſe that were found ignorant upon Examination being Caſhier'd, and others of due Capacity put into their Places. As for his Courage a Major is ſoon try'd, becauſe it is his Buſineſs to lead his Regiment into the Trenches, and the Detach'd Parties to the Poſts they are to Maintain; and thoſe that are Beſieg'd do the ſame in the Outworks, and Advanc'd Poſts. For theſe Reaſons the Major has the Third Place in Command next the Colonel and Lieutenant Colonel of a Regiment, and to the Governour and Deputy Governour in a Town, becauſe he is to be at the opening and ſhutting of the Gates, to ſee the Guards be under Arms, to detach Men to thoſe ſmall Poſts which are only guarded by Night, or to go Rounds or Patrouls without, or to go look out before the Draw-bridge is let down. For theſe Purpoſes he muſt chuſe the Beſt Men, ſuch as are Brave and Expert, becauſe on them in a great Meaſure depends the Security of the Place.

Beſides all that has been ſaid, it belongs to the Major to draw up the Forces to Form the Battalions, to Exerciſe all Men, to ſee it be well perform'd, to obſerve in Marching that the Men keep their Diſtances, that they carry their Arms Well, all of a Height, that the Ranks be Strait, and all other Particulars be Exact, and every thing managed with Decency, and a good Grace. In the Field it is requiſite the Major have Two or Three good Horſes; but theſe muſt be Pads, and not

not War-Horſes, or Racers, becauſe he having no certain Poſt is always a Horſeback, either carrying Orders, or obſerving how the Regiment Marches, Exerciſes, or Behaves it ſelf in Fight; and it is his Buſineſs to be every where upon Occaſion. The Major muſt alſo have an Adjutant, who ought to be well mounted, and himſelf a Perſon of Experience, Ability, Courage and Judgment, becauſe he is the Major's Right Hand to Eaſe him of Part of the great Burden of his Employment; and upon Occaſion in his Abſence, whether for Sickneſs, Wounds, or any orher Occaſion, to perform all the Duty of a Major: It is very requiſite the Major take Care there be a good Drum-Major to the Regiment, becauſe he is to Teach all the others, and to give them Orders as their Superior, and direct them how to Behave themſelves upon all Publick Occaſions.

Chap. X. *Of the Lieutenant Colonel.*

THE Duty of a Lieutenant Colonel is much the ſame as that of a Captain, and his Behaviour like it, tho' in ſome Particulars it varies a little. He muſt be Grave, Sober, Modeſt, Sedate in all his Actions, extraordinary Courteous, and Exact in the Service, carry an Even Hand towards all the Officers; never particularly Familiar with any one whatſoever, ſevere in Point of Martial Diſcipline, Generous in all his Proceedings, Juſt in rewarding or commending Merit throughout the whole Body, even to the meaneſt Soldier, giving a Good Example upon all Occaſions, and Regularly Practiſing his Religion.

Chap. XI. *Of the Colonel.*

IT is not abſolutely neceſſary that a Colonel be ſo perfectly knowing in all Points; not but that if he were it would conduce more to his Reputation and Merit. It will ſuffice that he be Diſcreet, Rich, a Man of Credit and Authority, Grave in his Behaviour, Lofty in his Deportment, yet without the leaſt Vanity or Haughtineſs; Courteous to all Men, and particularly towards the Captains of his Regiment, and even the other Officers, yet without ever growing too Familiar with them; but on the other Hand, after an obliging manner to ſhow them an Affable Kindneſs, which may ſtill make them pay him reſpect. Birth and Quality are alſo very neceſſary Qualifications, to the end the Officers may have cauſe to hope for Preferment through his Favour and Intereſt, which he muſt ever grant to Merit, and no otherwiſe; and thus every Man will do his utmoſt to gain it by all Honourable Means, performing Brave Actions, and keeping up Good Companies. Where he ſees Worth, he muſt extol and make it known to the utmoſt with Zeal and Application, tho' it be but in a private Sentinel; and whenſoever any one performs any Good or Notable Action, he muſt make it known to the General, nay, and to his Sovereign, if poſſible, that he may commend it, to Encourage others. He muſt be ſure never to deſpiſe any Perſon whatſoever in his Regiment, nor ſpeak ill of any, tho' he have Juſt Cauſe; but on the contrary, muſt call him to him in private, and there charge

charge him with his Fault or Faults; unleſs it be an Officer that often relapſes, and leads a Scandalous Life, in which Caſe he may reprimand him in publick, after Two private Admonitions. As for the Soldiers he muſt always keep them in great Awe; and be Rigid to the utmoſt Degree in Point of Martial Diſcipline. If he knows any Officer that is Faulty, that is, guilty of Cowardice, Diſhoneſt, Leud, Mutinous, or an extraordinary Libertine, and there is no hope of reducing or making any good of him, he is privately to order him to make the beſt of his Commiſſion within ſuch a time, and if he does it not, then muſt the Colonel acquaint the King, that another may be put into his Place. He muſt make it his Buſineſs frequently and ſtrictly to view and examine all the Companies in his Regiment, commend thoſe that have good ones, and promiſe them to acquaint his Sovereign with it; cauſe the Officers and Soldiers to be exactly taught and inſtructed, be often preſent upon exerciſing, and when he ſpies any Soldier do better than the reſt, give him a Piece of Money, whatſoever Company be belongs to. This raiſes Emulation in them; and if he obſerves any Company worſe clad or ſhod than the reſt, and ſees any old Soldier in that Poor Condition, order him a Suit of Cloaths, or a Pair of Shoes, which will have a wonderful Effect; for the Captain is ſham'd, all the Soldiers in the Army commend him, and when this Report is ſpread abroad in Winter Quarters, it draws abundance of Men, who hope to be reliev'd and ſupported when they want.

Theſe are in the main the moſt Eſſential and Conſiderable Duties of all Officers of Foot,

it only remains to preſcribe a Method that no Officer whatſoever may be admitted till he is perfectly inſtructed in all thoſe Duties that belong to his Poſt, and to teach all thoſe who are already in Commiſſion, and it will appear upon tryal that there are very few of them who underſtand theſe Maxims, which is very unaccountable; and it will be much more ſurprizing to ſee what an Alteration there will be in a Year throughout the Army.

Chap. XII. *The Method of Inſtructing all the Officers of Foot, and of Examining them before they may be admitted.*

THE Art of War being the Nobleſt of all other Arts, there is no doubt to be made, but that it ought to have its Rules and Precepts to walk by as well as they, and theſe to be learnt, obſerv'd, and never deviated from. To this Effect the Rules ought to be fixt, and Maſters appointed.

The moſt difficult of theſe Rules are thoſe that belong to the Mathematicks for all the others are learnt either by ſuch Books as have been already publiſh'd by Men of long Service, or by every Man's own Experience, obſerving what he ſees, what is the conſtant Practice, and how others Diſcourſe and Behave themſelves.

Arithmetick is the firſt, becauſe it teaches to diſtribute and divide, and is the very Foundation for drawing up of Battalions, making of Detachments, and forming all Sorts of Figures. It is alſo the Ground Work of Fortification and Geo-

Geometry, for there is no calculating of Diſtances, Heights, Depths, Proportions or Numbers, without Arithmetick.

It is requiſite that a Maſter of Mathematicks Teach all the Rules, and Particulars abovemention'd, as alſo the Uſe of ſuch Books as are to be Read, and of the Inſtruments to be Us'd in ſuch Operations.

To this Effect every Governour, and every Colonel, ſhould be oblig'd to provide an Able Maſter for his Garriſon or Regiment. All theſe Maſters ſhould be furniſh'd with the Neceſſary Books and Inſtruments for Teaching the Art of War, and carry them along with them, without any Difficulty, and might Teach in the Field, unleſs upon marching Days, as well as in Garriſon, and perhaps better; becauſe there is not ſo much Diſtraction; and the Officers and others would apply themſelves to this for want of other Diverſion. Therefore they would all do well to carry their own Books and Inſtruments in their Baggage for their Private Uſe, and they would meet with daily Opportunities of practiſing thoſe Propoſitions they ſhould be taught in their Meetings, or the Examples they met with in their Authors; ſo that they would at the ſame Time acquire the Theory and the Practice, and become wonderful Proficients in their Profeſſion. Beſides Three Great and Advantageous Points would be gain'd.

Firſt, It would draw the Young Gentry into the Foot Service, becauſe abundance of Gentlemen who have Inconſiderable Eſtates, and many Children, and conſequently cannot afford to ſend them to Study the Mathematicks and Uſe of Arms at their own Expence, would certainly make them carry a Muſket a Year or Two, that they might

Learn in ſo Noble a School. This would furniſh a great Number of Men fit to make Able Officers; and if there ſhould be Occaſion for never ſo great Levies, there would ſtill be enough fit to Command.

Secondly, It would raiſe the Reputation of the Foot Service, which moſt Men of any Fortune now ſhun for the Horſe; and Men of indifferent Quality would raiſe their Thoughts above a bare Command among the Foot, if they could be Taught the Duties of a Governour, and of a General Officer. And the Publick would reap this Advantage, that were a Perſon ſo knowing made Governour of a Town, and ſeconded by Officers of ſuch Ability and Experience, the Place muſt needs make a double Defence. This would be a ſufficient Motive to all thoſe that could raiſe their Thoughts to aſpire to thoſe high Poſts, to Learn the Rules and Precepts in the Foot Service.

Thirdly, Whereas moſt Officers of what Quality ſoever make the Duties of their Poſt the leaſt Part of their Care, but on the contrary in Winter Quarters ſpend their Time in the moſt Pernicious Exerciſes, as Dancing, Gaming, Courting Miſtreſſes, Drinking, and other Debaucheries unworthy their Profeſſion, and which Conſume all their Money, that ought to be laid out in furniſhing their Equipage for the next Campaign: Theſe Things I ſay would not be ſo frequent, were they oblig'd to Study the Duties of their Poſts, which would Employ their Time, and afford them a Serious, and moſt Beneficial Diverſion. Nor are theſe Exceſſes here mention'd only in Quarters, the Extravagancies, Debauchery and Gaming is no leſs in the Field than elſewhere: For when an Army lyes any Time in One Place, there is ſo little

little to do, and ſuch Want of Diverſion, that abundance of Perſons of very Great Parts ſquander all they have in Eating, Drinking and Gaming, which does not only Ruin them, but helps to Impoveriſh their Friends, who in Honour cannot ſee them Want. Therefore were this Method ſettled to Employ all Perſons, Idleneſs would be baniſh'd, and all its Deſtructive Conſequences ceaſe.

For the performing of what is above ſaid, as there are Days appointed for exerciſing of Soldiers, ſo ſhould there be Two Days a Week fix'd for all the Officers, either in Camp or Garriſon, indiſpenſibly to meet, in order to be Taught ſuch Things as have been before mention'd. And to make this Duty known, and unavoidable, there ſhould be a Poſitive Order for all Officers of Foot to put themſelves in a Condition to give Account of all the Duties of their Poſts upon Examination as to all Points here ſet down, within a Year after Publication of the ſame Order, under Pain of loſing their Commiſſion, and being Broke, as ignorant, and unfit for Service. And it ſhould be declar'd that for the future none ſhould be admitted into the Service that could not qualifie themſelves accordingly.

For the capacitating of all Officers as above, there ought to be a Profeſſor of the Mathematicks in every Garriſon, and belonging to every Regiment, who ſhould be oblig'd to Teach all the Young Gentlemen that carry'd a Muſket *gratis*, and he ſhould have a Particular Hour for them and the Enſigns, and another for the Captains and Lieutenants, to Read them Lectures upon the Duties of their Poſts, which they ſhould afterwards Study by themſelves. Beſides, there ſhould be

Two General Meetings every Week, where all the Officers ſhould be oblig'd to meet, and after examining them as to their Particular Duties, there ſhould be Diſcourſes of higher Matters, as the Maxims of War, of their Behaviour and Manners, and of Virtue and Morality, which would produce Wonderful Effects; for it ſhould be often inculcated, that all ſuch as were convicted of Debauchery or Prophaneneſs ſhould be certainly caſhier'd, and all Virtuous and Generous Perſons encourag'd and preferr'd, which would raiſe Emulation, and the Army would become as Regular and Modeſt as Religious Men.

When any Officer ſhould deſire to be examin'd, in order to obtain a Certificate of his Capacity from the Aſſembly, for his Preferment, there ſhould be an extraordinary Meeting, where he having anſwer'd to all Queſtions put to him by another Experienc'd Commander appointed for that Purpoſe, ſhould receive a full Certificate from the whole Body for him to Preſent to the Secretary of War, who might again cauſe him to be examin'd in his Preſence before his Commiſſion ſhould be granted. Thus would the Art of War be rais'd to the higheſt Pitch of Honour, and the Graveſt and moſt Zealous Perſons would ſend their Sons into the Army, which is now look'd upon as a School of Leudneſs, Immorality and Prophaneneſs.

To defray the Charge of theſe Profeſſors, there ought to be deducted out of each Soldier's Pay, One Penny *per* Month; out of each Captain Thirty Pence, each Lieutenant Twenty Pence, each Enſign Fifteen Pence, and Fifteen from the Two Sergeants; which in a Regiment of Thirteen Companies, and Fifty Men in a Company,

pany, would amount to Eighty-three Pound Ten Shillings *per Ann.* And this, with Quarters, and ſome Gratuities from Officers, would make a handſome Livelihood; but if the Regiments were larger, would riſe Proportionably to a conſiderable Subſiſtence. This may ſuffice to give an Idea of ſo Advantageous a Deſign, which will ſoon be Improv'd and made Practicable in all its Parts, if the Sovereign ſhall think fit to encourage it.

THE

THE DUTIES OF A SOLDIER.

Chap. I. *That of all States and Conditions that of a Soldier is most Honourable to himself, and most Advantageous to his Country.*

MAnkind is divided into Four Sorts of States or Conditions, the Soldier, the Gown-Man, the Merchant or Trader, and the Husbandman. All these are Useful and Necessary to the Publick. The Soldier Toils to enlarge the Dominions, Disappoints the Designs of Enemies, and keeps the Subjects in their Obedience to their Sovereign. The Gown-Man makes the Laws Flourish, hinders the Strongest from oppressing the Weak, and curbs Wicked Men by the Fears of Punishments. The Merchant Transports

ports what is to ſpare in his own Country into others, and brings back what is wanting, bringing Home Money for that which we ſhould elſe be over-ſtock'd with, and furniſhing all that Neceſſity and Luxury can crave. The Husbandman Plows and Sows, and his Labour is Beneficial to Rich and Poor, for both partake of his Induſtry; however, though all theſe concur towards the Advancement of the Publick Good, yet I cannot but think that among them all, none is ſo Honourable to himſelf, or ſo Beneficial to his Counrry, as that of a Soldier. For if we do but obſerve the Dangers to which he daily expoſes himſelf, can it be deny'd, that as he Sacrifices all he can hold moſt Dear for the Safety of his Country, even to the laſt Drop of his Blood, ſo his Country is far more beholding to him than to thoſe who only afford it ſome of their Induſtry and Care? Beſides, that his Country cannot ſubſiſt without him, becauſe, as has been ſaid, he daily Labours, not only to Aggrandize it, but Defends it from its Enemies; and what is beyond all Controverſie, he is the Support of the Gownman, the Merchant, and the Labourer. For how could Gown-Men cauſe the Laws to have their full Force, unleſs there were Soldiers to ſtrengthen the Prince, and to force wicked Men to ſubmit to his Government? How could Merchants make Trade Flouriſh, unleſs there were Warriors to Convoy them Safe into ſtrange Countries, and bring them back Safe to their Ports? And to conclude, how could Husbandmen Till and Sow their Land, unleſs the Soldiers maintain'd them in Peace. This makes good what I have ſaid, that the Exerciſe of Arms is the moſt Noble for him that follows it, and the moſt Beneficial to the Publick,

and

and therefore no Wonder if all Persons of Ambitious and Great Spirits prefer it before all other Employments. But because this State of Life requires extraordinary Qualifications to make a Man Successful in it, I must add, that there is nothing more dangerous than for a Man to engage in it, without first enquiring whether he is fit for it. In the first Place every Body knows, that this Profession requires Courage, and therefore I shall say no more of that in this Place; but will only observe, that a Man cannot be truly Brave unless he fears God; and will lay it down as a Maxim, that the most Necessary Qualification in a Soldier is that he be a Good Man. In the Second Place, I require he should be Discreet and Prudent, and am Positive if he has these Two Qualities, there is nothing but what he may Hope for. Besides the Reasons I shall lay down to Prove what I have said, there are Thousands of Instances to make it Good, and I shall Insert some few, because I know Examples sometimes make a greater Impression on the Minds of Men than all the Reasons that can possibly be alledg'd. When I have prov'd these Two Particulars, I shall proceed to some Remarks I made whilst I was in the Service, which will not be unprofitable to those who design to Engage themselves in Martial Affairs. For having often observ'd, that the Men of greatest Experience were subject sometimes to be overseen, I have much more Cause to Believe, that those who have none at all stand in Need of Instructions to prevent their committing of Faults; I mean in common Matters; for it would be a Madness to think that a Soldier can learn all his Trade by Book. All my Remarks are made upon Modern Instances, which are still fresh in the Memory of Man, and there-

therefore would be eaſily diſprov'd, ſhould I any way deviate from the Truth. And that what I ſay may find more Credit, I ſhall often Name the Perſons that are inſtanc'd, unleſs what is urg'd be to their Diſcredit, in which Caſe I muſt be pardon'd for not mentioning Names, my Deſign being not to ſpeak ill of any Man. I ſhall not pretend to be Nice in my Method, which perhaps ſhould I deſign it would be a Matter of great Difficulty; Men of my Profeſſion being generally more expert at their Sword than at their Pen; beſides that, my Intention is not to Write an Hiſtory, which would require more Circumſpection, but a ſmall Collection of ſeveral Matters, which will be thought well enough Writ if they Prove Uſeful and Beneficial.

Chap. II. *That an Officer ought to Profeſs Religion, both in Regard of the Effect it has upon others, and for the Advantage it is to himſelf towards making his* Fortune.

There is no Man, though never ſo Wicked, but Believes in his Heart there is a God, and has an Apprehenſion of his Judgments. All Things we ſee in Nature inform us that there is ſomething above us; and though we are never ſo unwilling to own it, yet we daily receive ſo many Mercies, as are more than enough to force our Aſſent. This was ſufficient to convince the Ancients that there was Somebody above, who govern'd all we ſee; and they were ſo fully ſatisfy'd

tisfy'd of it, that they appointed ſevere Puniſhments for ſuch as deny'd it; and it is a Shame for us that thoſe People who had no other Help but the Light of Reaſon ſhould teach us what we ought to believe. I might lay hold of this Occaſion to run into a deep Diſcourſe of Morality, were it pertinent to the Matter in Hand; but ſince it is not, I ſhall be ſatisfy'd with declaring that it is ſo abſolutely neceſſary for an Officer to make it known he profeſſes Religion, that without it I do not think he can hope to make his Fortune, and this for Four Principal Reaſons. The Firſt is, That there can be no great Confidence plac'd in a Man who has forſaken his God, becauſe it is to be believ'd he will as eaſily betray his King. The Second, Becauſe being prophane is an ill Way to gain Eſteem; for as much as it is the Nature of Prophaneneſs to be hateful to all Men, and even to thoſe that are the moſt diſorderly. The Third, Becauſe he cannot be Brave who is not Good; and in ſhort, ſuch Men always counterfeit; they march to fight with a Dread upon them; and if it were in their Power would not go at all. The Fourth, Becauſe he cannot expect any great Command, by reaſon that being diſtracted in time of Action by Checks and Stings of Conſcience, he is not in a Condition to bring himſelf off with Honour.

I do not in the leaſt condemn theſe Checks, which ſometimes produce good Effects; but I ſay, if our Religion requires we ſhould chuſe another Time to ſettle the Affairs of our Conſcience, the Service no leſs requires the ſame, becauſe at that Time there muſt be a great Preſence of Mind to know how to behave our ſelves. I am very well ſatisfied that the prophaneſt Perſons affect this Preſence of Mind, when they are commanded upon

upon Action; but it is all Counterfeit; and it eaſily appears they do not enjoy that inward Peace they pretend; and it is ſtill eaſier to diſcover their Diſorder and Confuſion when they are in Fight. I deſire no better Witneſſes than thoſe very Perſons who have been in Action, without any Previous Care of their Souls; and would they ſpeak the Truth, I am ſatisfy'd they muſt own they were never in greater Diſorder. I could produce many Inſtances of Leud Perſons, who ſeem'd to go on to Battel without any Fear, and yet were no ſooner wounded, but all their Talk was of Judgments, and the Dread of what was to enſue; ſo certain it is that there is no Man but quakes when he thinks he is to be accountable to Divine Juſtice. I ſay again, I could produce a Thouſand Examples to prove this Truth, but I ſhall be ſatisfy'd with Two, the one of a Captain of Dragoons, and the other of the Count *de Guiche*, whoſe Death was ſo unlike his Life, that we cannot but admire the Goodneſs of God, which produces ſuch wonderful Changes when he ſees fit.

A Captain of Dragoons, who was one of the wickedeſt in the Army, and took a Pride in his Prophaneneſs, being dangerouſly wounded at the Battel of *Turquem*, the Surgeons bid him take Care of his Soul; and he perceiving they were in earneſt, and deſpair'd of his Life, began to ſhed abundance of Tears, and told all thoſe that came to ſee him, That he was not afraid of Death, but that he quak'd to think of God's Judgments; that tho' he always appear'd void of Religion, yet the Checks of his Conſcience had ſufficiently convinc'd him that he was one Day to give an Account of all his Actions; that he begg'd Pardon for the Scandal he had given them, but if it would pleaſe God to

grant

grant him Time to repent, he hop'd to convince them of his Converſion by a Change of Life. It pleas'd God to grant him Time as he deſired, and having recover'd his Health, he left the Army, and took to a Religious Life, in which he ſtill continues.

The Count *de Guiche*, a Lieutenant General in the *French* Army, was a Man of Singular Worth, and Profound Learning, and yet he was not exempt from the Corruptions of Youth, and the ill Example of ſome debauch'd Perſons ſo far prevail'd upon him, that it got the better of his Inclination and Knowledge. Being on his Death-bed, he would have all that had been Witneſſes of his Failings to be ſenſible of his Converſion. He diſcours'd of his paſt Diſorders with ſo much Feeling, and ſuch lively Eloquence, that all People were much edify'd, and deſcribing the Vanities of this World, as they then appear'd to him, he made even thoſe who were deepeſt plung'd in them ſenſible that they purſu'd their own Ruin. He bid them take Example by him, and to obſerve what he carry'd with him out of the World, after enjoying ſo much Wealth and Honour. In ſhort, he diſcours'd ſo piouſly, and like a true Chriſtian, that he drew Tears from the Eyes of all his Hearers, who were much edify'd at this Lord's Converſion, who was ſo intirely reſign'd to the Will of God.

Chap.

Chap. III. *That Wiſdom is requiſite in a Soldier, and without it he cannot hope to make his Fortune.*

THIS Chapter has much Relation to the laſt; for as *David* ſays, *Pſal.* 3. *v.* 10. *The Fear of the Lord is the Beginning of Wiſdom*; and therefore I did well in placing the Fear of God before Wiſdom, and in ſaying it was the firſt Qualification requiſite in a Soldier. But I do not pretend that a Soldier's Wiſdom ſhould conſiſt in Outward Show; his Exterior Part muſt be always free, and never formal, and he had better always be merry than grave; but I would have him make it appear in well digeſting a Deſign, in foreſeeing and preventing the Difficulties that may ariſe in the Execution of it, and laſtly, in executing it with good Conduct. Theſe Three Things are ſo abſolutely requiſite in a Soldier, that if he wants any one of them he can never hope to gain much Reputation. For what will it avail to lay a great Deſign, if he knows not how to remove all Difficulties, or wants Conduct to put it in Execution? Therefore before a Man engages himſelf in the Trade of War, he muſt weigh himſelf, if I may ſo call it, and conſider what he is fit for; becauſe if he has not a ſound and piercing Judgment, Diſcretion and Prudence, it is in vain for him to hope to make a conſiderable Fortune. The Art of War does not conſiſt in falling on, but in knowing when to fall on to Purpoſe. The beſt Way therefore generally is to have Recourſe to Subtilties and Devices; for he who ſhould always pretend to overcome his Enemy by downright Force, would be likely to do him

him little Harm. A Man muſt know how to act according to Occaſion, ſometimes to Charge, and ſometimes to Retreat; for tho' there be ſometimes a ſucceſsful Raſhneſs, yet a Man is more commendable for doing what he ought to do, than for Defeating the Enemy, when he ought not to have fought. Nor muſt it be imagin'd that theſe great Productions of the Brain are only neceſſary for Generals, a plain Captain has as much need as they of Prudence and Diſcretion; and there are a Thouſand Exigencies in which he muſt be all his own Council, and contrive to bring himſelf off. If at that Time he does not act as may be expected of a diſcreet Man, let him never expect to be truſted with another Command; the Generals will never be guilty of it; for it would ſhew Want of Judgment in them, ſhould they intruſt him in greater Matters, after he had given Proof of his Want of Capacity.

Chap. IV. *That a Man muſt be ſatisfy'd he has Courage, before he undertakes to go to the War.*

SInce I ſpoke but a Word by the by concerning the Courage a Man ought to have to go to the Wars, it will not be amiſs to ſay ſomething of it in this Place; and the rather, becauſe many engage themſelves without conſidering or reflecting on the many Inconveniencies that enſue upon it. I have always heard it ſaid, that we ought ſeriouſly to reflect on it before we enter upon any State of Life, becauſe it were better never to undertake a thing, than not to perform it as we ought. This

is

is a moſt neceſſary Precaution to him that deſigns to follow the Sword, becauſe the Conſequences there are quite of another Nature than in any other Condition. For Inſtance, if a Man takes to Trade, and does not underſtand it, he only runs the Hazard of loſing his Money, but does not loſe his Honour. So a Man that puts on the Gown, and to the beſt of his Knowledge does Juſtice to all, tho' he be not reckoned a Man of extraordinary Parts, yet will he be reckoned an honeſt Judge; but a Soldier, who once gets the leaſt Blemiſh in his Reputation, forfeits all his Honour; for there are thoſe who pry into his Behaviour, and will not abate him the leaſt Point. He muſt be ſteady in the greateſt Dangers, prudent in his Undertakings, clear-ſighted in Difficulties, active in Execution, ſuffer no Indignity, yet without being quarrelſome; for unleſs he has all theſe Qualities, he proves a Man of no Account among thoſe that have ſerv'd, and can never pretend to ſignalize himſelf but to his own Loſs. However, moſt Men go to the Wars, without ever ſo much as thinking on theſe Things, as if they were going to a Merry-making, or to divert themſelves; they ſuffer themſelves to be drawn in by their Eyes, and are charm'd by an Officer's Lac'd Coat, or a Rich Howſing on a Fine Horſe, and think they need only go to the War, and they ſhall have the ſame; never conſidering that to appear ſo gay, a Man muſt have a good Eſtate of his own, or muſt have perform'd great Actions, which have been greatly rewarded by his Prince; or which is much to be fear'd, he muſt have been the Ruin of many poor Wretches in his Winter Quarters. Women alſo very often contribute much towards making a Young Man take this Reſolution, becauſe he perceives

ceives they are more fond of Soldiers than of any others; and we are apt to ſpare for nothing that may gain their Favour, and yet I think it is too dearly bought, when a Man goes to the War meerly out of Complaiſance, without any Natural Inclination of his own. I have ſeen ſome Perſons ſo out of Conceit with it, and ſo dejected at the very beginning of the firſt Campaign, that it mov'd Compaſſion to ſee them; and yet tho' the Fatigue be great, that ought not to deter a Man from embracing this Courſe of Life, for Want of Health, Strength and Reſolution, becauſe Bodies inſenſibly grow hardy; and ſome who are much out of Order the firſt Campaign, never think of it after. I am therefore of Opinion there is but one Thing that ought to prevail upon an honeſt Man not to follow the Sword, which is, if he were ſenſible he had not Courage enough. In that Caſe he would be highly in the wrong, in going to expoſe his Shame before ſuch good Company; and there are many other Ways he may make choice of, where he may live in Reputation. For Inſtance, it will be no Shame not to be thought Brave if he becomes a Churchman, a Lawyer, or the like; but as ſoon as he has a Sword by his Side, every Body will laugh at him if he does not his Duty. I have ſeen many made the Scorn of the Army for want of this Conſideration, and among them the Brother of one of the chief Magiſtrates of *Paris*, who was a Captain of Horſe, fled as ſoon as ever he ſpy'd the Enemy, for which he was broke, and ſent home diſhonourably; whereas had he put on the Gown, as his Brother did, he might, like him, have liv'd in good Repute, and have been reſpected by all Men. Beſides him, I knew another Perſon of Birth and Quality, who ſhew'd ſuch Poorneſs of Soul,

Soul, that he was forc'd to alter his Condition to avoid being laugh'd at.

Some Men have more Honour than others; and when once they have engag'd themſelves inconſiderately, tho' they are unfit for the Employment, yet they do their Duty in Service as well as if they were naturally Brave; it is a great Hardſhip upon them; but I find when they have once committed the firſt Fault, they may be honour'd, and reckoned as Brave as any. A Man of a very wealthy Family, having taken upon him the Command of a Troop of Light Horſe at the beginning of the Dutch War, found himſelf in a miſerable deſperate Condition when he was in the Army; he could never uſe himſelf to the Noiſe of Cannon, or Musket-Shot, and, to uſe his own Words, he was ſo much out of Conceit with the Profeſſion, that his Meat did not digeſt with him; yet for all this he never ſhew'd the leaſt Faint-heartedneſs upon any Service he was commanded to; but when the Campaign was over, he order'd his Valet de Chambre to bring him his Cloak; and being himſelf the firſt that made a Jeſt of his Fear, told his Friends he would give any Body leave to cudgel him if ever he wore a Sword till he went to the Campaign. This done, he threw up his Commiſſion, and bought a Civil Employment, in which he did not long continue neither.

This is what a Man ought to do when he has been ſo much overſeen as not to conſider what he was going to undertake. A Campaign is ſoon over; and it is better for one to overcome himſelf for a ſhort time, than to loſe himſelf for his whole Life; yet the ſureſt Way is to weigh all Things well before he engages. What I ſay here regards all Sorts of Perſons; and thoſe of the greateſt

greateſt Quality may apply it to themſelves as well as others. It is true, they cannot gain much Reputation without going into the Army; but were it my Caſe, I would rather retire to my Eſtate, than expoſe my ſelf to be laugh'd at; for the more a Man is exalted above others, the leſs he can hope to hide his Faults.

Chap. V. *What a Man ought to know before he goes to the Wars.*

THere are ſome Things which a young Man is abſolutely oblig'd to know when firſt he goes to the Wars, and ſome others, which he may be ignorant of, without any Reflection upon his Honour. He muſt know he is bound to reſpect all his Superiors, to be civil to his Equals, to be courteous to all Officers, and to have Charity for all thoſe under his Command. But this Charity muſt not extend ſo far as to ſlacken in obliging them to perform their Duty to the full, for he can never be too ſevere in that Point. The Knowledge of theſe Matters will prevent his falling into many Errors. He cannot fail in Point of Reſpect to his Superiors, without being reprimanded, and perhaps puniſh'd, becauſe all Generals take Care that every Man have his Due, not according to his Birth, but to his Poſt. Therefore a young Gentleman muſt not think that becauſe he is of great Quality he can pay the leſs Reſpect to a Soldier of Fortune; he will never be in the Wrong in giving him all manner of Honour, and ſhould he fail in that Particular he will be compell'd to it. In the next Place, if he is civil to his Equals, all

Men

Men will value him; for Civility wins the Heart, whereas every Body hates Pride. Thirdly, If he is courteous to all the Officers, they will all ſpeak well of him, and he may hope to advance his Fortune that Way, as well as by his Brave Actions; Reputation in War being as neceſſary as any other thing. Laſtly, If he has Charity for all under his Command he muſt certainly be belov'd, which will be no ſmall Advantage to him; for Soldiers never forſake an Officer they love upon Action; and he gains much Honour by their ſticking cloſe to him; whereas thoſe that are hated by their Men are often abandon'd by them, and thus ſhamefully diſgrac'd, Soldiers ſometimes preferring their Revenge before their Honour.

Thus it appears there is a Neceſſity of being inform'd in theſe Four Duties before a Man go into an Army, to avoid committing of great Faults; and it is worth obſerving, that nothing is more dangerous than to be out in the beginning, the firſt Impreſſions being always the ſtrongeſt. I was put in Mind of the firſt of theſe Duties the very firſt Day I drew near the Army, but after ſuch a manner as ſurpriz'd me. I had got a Cornet's Commiſſion in a Foreign Royal Regiment that then ſerv'd in *Flanders*, and in my Way to it paſs'd through *Arras*, where the Colonel, Monſieur *de Montaigle*, lay ſick at that time. I had Letters of Recommendation to him, and went to deliver them, and wait upon him. He receiv'd me very courteouſly before he open'd them but underſtanding that I was an Officer in his Regiment, he put on much Gravity, and told me, that Monſieur *Lombard*, the Major of the Regiment, was juſt come from the Army with a Convoy, that he had given him an Account of me, as of a Perſon well re-

commended to him by Persons of Worth, and therefore I ought to do my self the Honour to wait on him. Monsieur *Lombard*, the Major, was a Man of much Personal Worth, but of Indifferent Birth, which made me to be much surpriz'd at the Word of doing my self the Honour to wait on him, which I did not think had been us'd in speaking of a third Person; but I was soon undeceiv'd, upon Information, soon discovering the the Difference that was betwixt a Captain and a Subaltern. Not but that some of the greatest Officers are courteous to Subalterns; but since there are others that take all the Advantage of their Authority, it is good to be prepar'd for it in time, in order to give them all that is due to their Posts. Monsieur *de la Cardonniere*, when he was only Commissary General, would never suffer a Subaltern Officer to be cover'd before him, nor would he permit the Captains of his Regiment to sit down till he bid them. I knew a Captain of his Regiment, who was one of the best Families in *France*, and could hardly be perswaded he was oblig'd to keep the same Distance as the rest; but Monsieur *de la Cardonnierre* took a Delight in carrying himself haughtily towards him, because he knew him to be vain. Among the Foot the Colonels carry it still higher than among the Horse; and it is a receiv'd Custom among them to allow only the Captains to sit, the Subalterns standing, and very often uncover'd.

There are other Essential Things necessary to be known by a young Man when he goes to the Wars, as that he must never turn his Back, how great soever the Loss is on his Side; for if a Man is once suspected of Cowardice he is past all Hopes. He had better be taken Prisoner, which

is

is the beſt Courſe that can be for Perſons of Worth in a General Rout, this being leſs Diſhonourable than to fly among the reſt. *Bonnet*, One of the eldeſt Captains in the *French* Horſe, told me as much with Tears in his Eyes after the Battel of *Taverne*, for they would make him accountable for his Regiments not doing its Duty; and in Truth there were Orders to obſerve his Troops more narrowly than the reſt, and to break him in caſe of the leaſt Failure. The Commiſſary, who was his Friend, intruſted him with the Secret, and he being mine, made no difficulty of diſcourſing it with me, telling me all his Misfortune conſiſted in not having ſtaid to be taken Priſoner when his Men had left him. Of all the Officers whoſe Courage was once call'd in Queſtion, I never knew but One that could effectually recover his Reputation. He was a Colonel of Foot at the Siege of *Liſle*, and I believe had not till then ſeen much Service; ſo that being little us'd to Fire, he ſhew'd ſome Fear in the Trenches. His Father, who was a very Brave Man, underſtanding what had hapned, reproach'd him in an heinous manner when he was reliev'd; and the Son not daring to appear any more before him, the next Winter at the Siege of *Dole* took a Paliſade, and never left it, till the Forces had made their Way to Mount the Breach. This Action done at the Head of all the commanded Party, and therefore very Publick, gave all the Army enough to Talk of. The better Sort applauded his Reſolution, and others imputed it to his Deſpair; but this Officer having ever ſince behav'd himſelf with as much Bravery as any Man in the Army, thoſe that ſpoke ill through Envy have been ſilenc'd, and he is now count-

ed one of the Braveſt Men in the Kingdom.

Thoſe Things which a Man may be ignorant of without any Diſreputation, are ſuch as can only be learn'd by long Experience: Nay, it is ſometimes good to confeſs ones Ignorance, becauſe thoſe Perſons to whom a Man owns it, after that take Pleaſure in inſtructing him, and think themſelves oblig'd to it on Two Accounts, Firſt to Reward his Modeſty, and in the next Place to ſhew they underſtand their Buſineſs. I knew an Officer of Horſe, who after Twenty Years Service being commanded to blow up a Church, where it was ſaid the Enemy would Fortifie themſelves, made no Difficulty to own to thoſe that were with him that this Command puzzl'd him, becauſe having never ſerv'd in the Foot, it was none of his Buſineſs to Charge a Mine. For this Reaſon I am of Opinion, that he who aſpires to make a great Fortune, muſt not be ignorant in theſe Affairs; becauſe when a Man deſigns to be a General Officer, he muſt know what belongs to the Foot as well as the Horſe, and go into the Trenches.

Upon ſome other Occaſions I do not think it a Shame to ask Advice, though a Man has been a Soldier never ſo long. For Example, when an Enemy is to be charg'd, an Officer may adviſe with all others, firſt delivering his own Sentiments, to ſhew that what he does is not through Ignorance. This produces Two good Effects, Firſt, it often opens him a Way to Succeed, which he had not thought of, and in the next Place it encourages all about him when they ſee he Deſpiſes none.

But there are certain General Rules which every Man is oblig'd to know: A Captain of Horſe would

would be much in the wrong ſhould he Diſpute about Command with a Captain of Foot in Garriſon; and ſo a Captain of Foot would be as much out ſhould he pretend to Command a Captain of Horſe in the Field. This is a fix'd Caſe, and the ſame Practice is in all Parts. However, I have ſeen Mareſchal *Schomberg* order the contrary upon a Conteſt ariſing between the Baron *D'Erce*, a Captain of Horſe in the Chevalier *Duke*'s Regiment of Horſe, the Chevalier *De Montecu*, Captain of Dragoons in the Regiment of *Teſſe*, and a Captain of Foot. They were all Three detach'd from the Army to put themſelves into a Caſtle call'd *Maſdeou*, which is in the Mid-way between *Perpignan* and *Bellegarde*. Monſieur *Schomberg*'s Deſign was to prevent the Enemies poſſeſſing themſelves of it, and to ſecure the Convoys that came to his Army, which lay emcamp'd half a Leage ſhort of *Bellegarde*. All theſe Three Captains preſently pretented to Command in the Caſtle, and all of them gave good plauſible Reaſons for their Pretenſions. *D'Erce* alledg'd that the Garriſon being to march out every Time a Convoy came from *Perpignan*, it was his Right to Command, becauſe it muſt be conſider'd the Marſhal only ſent them thither to ſecure the Convoys, and therefore that was not properly a Garriſon. *Montecu* anſwer'd, that the Caſtle had Walls, and they being to remain there till further Orders, the uſual Cuſtom ought to be obſerv'd, as is always when Horſe and Foot are in Garriſon, that he being Captain of Dragoons, and the Dragoons rowling both with Horſe and Foot, there could be no doubt made but he muſt Command, becauſe he was an Elder Captain than the Captain of Foot, and the Captain of Horſe had no Right to Command where either of them

was. The Captain of Foot pleaded for himſelf to exclude the other Two, That *Montecu*'s Arguments were good with Reſpect to the Captain of Horſe, but did not regard him; for his being an Elder Captain was of no Force, for he knew that among the Foot it was the Seniority of the Regiment that gave the Command; and that *Teſſe*'s being younger than his, he ought to Command without any Oppoſition. They could never agree among themſelves, and therefore deſiring to have the Caſe decided, *Schomberg* gave it for the Captain of Horſe. *Schomberg* might have remedy'd this by giving the Captain of Horſe a Commiſſion of Commandant; but as it was, there is no doubt but he did manifeſt Wrong to the Captain of Foot; for there is no doubt that in a Wall'd Place he ought to Command the Horſe; and as for the Dragoons, there lay no Diſpute as to the Eldeſt Commiſſion; for it is a certain Rule that the Command among Foot goes by the Seniority of the Regiment; and a Captain of the Eldeſt Regiment, though himſelf never ſo Young, Commands the Eldeſt of a Younger Regiment. This is a Rule which ought to be known to all Soldiers, for he would be laugh'd at that ſhould pretend, becauſe he had an Elder Commiſſion, to Command a Captain of an Elder Regiment.

The ſame is not practis'd among the Horſe, for there when a Detachment is made, they enquire who is the Eldeſt Captain, and he Commands, if there be no Superior Officer. As for Subalterns, they follow the Method of the Foot, and they Command according to the Seniority of their Regiments, and not of the Commiſſions.

I ſaid above that Subalterns were to Reſpect their Captains, the ſame is to be underſtood of all other

other Officers in General towards their Superiors; as Captains towards their Majors and Lieutenant Colonels, theſe towards their Colonels, and ſo on of all the reſt. So that no Man muſt imagine that as ſoon as he is made Captain he is above this Reſpect; I have ſeen great Officers that took a Pleaſure in mortifying others that did not underſtand themſelves; and I will here give an Inſtance, to ſhow how dangerous a thing it is to deviate from one's Duty in this Point.

The Baron of *Vannes*, a Gentleman of *Lorrain*, of Worth and long Service, commanded the Regiment of *Gaſſion* in the Year 1674. This Regiment being drawn up, *Vannes* order'd a young Captain to go give a General Officer an account of ſomething; the other thinking it below a Captain to carry a Meſſage, anſwer'd, he might ſend a Subaltern, that Buſineſs being fitter for ſuch a one. The Baron ſaid, he commanded him to do it, and not a Subaltern, and therefore he adviſ'd him to go, or he knew how to make him obey. The Captain, who had given Occaſion for this Anſwer, reply'd ſomething Impertinently, which put *Vannes* into a Paſſion, and they both grew ſo hot that they drew their Piſtols ready to fire at one another, but that other Officers of the Regiment interpos'd. Upon this *Vannes* went and complain'd to the General, who immediately order'd the Captain to be ſecur'd. A Council of War was call'd, and he was upon the Point of being ſhamefully broke, had not a Perſon of great Note writ to the General in his Behalf. However, the Example being of ill Conſequence, the Captain was oblig'd to beg of *Vannes* to interceed for him, and they compell'd him, as ſoon as diſ-

charg'd, to ask Pardon of *Vannes* at the Head of the Regiment, drawn up on Purpoſe.

As there are ſome over-haſty Captains, ſo there are Colonels who cannot Govern their Paſſions at all times; ſo that it happens they inſult over their Captains without Cauſe; yet I have obſerv'd, that tho' all the Army ſaid they were in the wrong, yet they were only order'd to make a plain Excuſe to thoſe they had wrong'd. A Colonel, who was a very Brave Man, but very paſſionate, and who beſides hated the Major of his Regiment, and us'd all his Endeavours to remove him, told him one Day as they were both a Horſeback, that he muſt put away a Wench he kept, becauſe he gave an ill Example to all the Army. He was in the right in the main, there being nothing more Scandalous than for a Man to carry a Leud Woman about after him; but the Colonel did not ſo much reflect on it on account of the Scandal, as becauſe he had a mind to be rid of him. Thus adding other haughty Words to what has been ſaid, and proceeding to act accordingly, he drew his Piſtol, and had it not miſt firing had ſhot him through the Head. The Major complain'd, but all the Satisfaction he had was, that he was order'd for the future to forbear being ſo hot.

'I would not omit this Inſtance given by the 'French Author, yet cannot but obſerve, that 'perhaps the Reaſon why the 'Major had no Satisfaction, was 'becauſe he gave the Occaſion 'by keeping a Wench, and 'might not give his Colonel the due Reſpect when 'he reprov'd him; and therefore I will add ano-'ther Example I was my ſelf an Eye Witneſs to.

An Obſervation of the Tranſlator.

A

'A Colonel of Foot, who, like him abovementi-
'on'd, bore his Major ill-will, meeting him one
'Morning in the Street before ſeveral Officers of
'the Regiment, took occaſion to fall out, and
'give him ſome hard Words, which the Major
'told him he would not have done had he not
'rely'd on his Authority as a Superior Officer.
'The Colonel, who was a young Soldier,
'drew, and the Major laid hand on his Sword,
'but could not draw it the firſt tug or
'two, becauſe having rode all the Day before in
'the Rain, it was ruſted in the Scabbard, which
'oblig'd him to give Way acroſs the Kennel, the
'Colonel preſſing on him. At laſt the Major's
'Sword coming out, he ſtood on his Guard, and
'then the Colonel left him. The Major made his
'Complaint, and a Council of War ſitting, at
'which I was preſent, upon full hearing of the
'whole Matter the Colonel was commanded to
'beg his Major's Pardon at the Head of the Regi-
'ment, which was accordingly done. But to re-
'turn to our Author.

To avoid falling into all Errors of this Nature, an Officer muſt pay a blind Obedience where it is due; and when he is to command, be ſure never to order any thing but what is proper, and for his Prince's Service; for otherwiſe the Subordinate Officers may refuſe to obey; a great Poſt gives a Man no Authority over them on other Accounts; and if they were oblig'd to obey in all Points, as well as for the Prince's Service, no Gentleman would Serve.

Not but that I would adviſe all thoſe who deſign to riſe not to be too nice; the Service done in an Army to a Man of Worth is not look'd upon as ſervile; for if it were, no General would have ſo

many make Court to him. It is enough that one does behave himself towards all Persons alike; that is, it would not become a Gentleman to do the same for a Captain, tho' of never so great Quality, that he would for a General; that would look mean; for it is not Quality that is to be respected, but Merit. Besides, a Captain can do nothing towards making a Gentleman's Fortune, and a General can do any thing if he pleases.

There are Abundance of young Men that go to the War before they have seen any thing, and come from home full of Vanity, because they have been told, that only Princes are above Gentlemen, and therefore they think it would be a great lessening to them should they submit to do any thing but fight. They must remember to make their Advantage of the Remark I made above; or at least if they cannot abate of their foolish Pride, they must take heed how they confound their Punctilio's with their Prince's Service. There are abundance of Commands in War which seem mean, and yet they cannot be refus'd without a Fault. An Officer must go for Ammunition Bread, if he is commanded; he must fetch Oats, see them measur'd, distribute Wine, and do many more such Things, which a Man may be mistaken in if not inform'd. All these Things are for the Prince's Service, and there is no Shame in performing them. I have seen Princes make Fascines, and work at the Lines, and yet it is not a Prince's Business to dig, and make Faggots.

Chap. VI. *The Duties of Subalterns towards their Captain, and of a Captain towards his Subalterns.*

I Said ſomewhat in the foregoing Chapter concerning the Obedience and Reſpect Subalterns owe to the Captains; but there being other Duties which regard their Poſts, it will not be amiſs to ſpeak of them. A Subaltern is to take as much Care of his Captain's Company as if it were his own. There is leſs Trouble with it in the Foot than in the Horſe, becauſe the Care of the Horſe is greater than any one imagines. In ſhort, a Thouſand Accidents may happen every Moment, and therefore a Man cannot be too nice, becauſe generally no Troop of Horſe is ruin'd but for want of looking after. It is therefore requiſite that the Corporals of each Troop every Day view the Horſes of their Brigade, and then give the Quarter-Maſter an Account how they find them; he is to acquaint the Lieutenant, and the Lieutenant the Captain. The Quarter-Maſter is not to make his Report till he has himſelf ſeen the Horſes, and ſo the Lieutenant, becauſe when he has ſeen the Thing himſelf, he can give a more certain Relation than upon the Report of another. When a Troop has march'd, the Officers muſt not go to Bed till they have ſeen all the Horſes, eſpecially if they are to mount again the next Day, becauſe ſome may be hurt, which without looking after would be quite diſabled; thus the Horſes have Time to recover, and the Troop is always kept up

up in good Condition. The Subalterns are ſo much oblig'd to this Duty, that the Captains may ſuſpend them if they neglect it in Quarters, or upon a Day of Reſt. They muſt go to the watering Place, to ſee the Horſes go and come, becauſe there they perceive whether they have any Lameneſs, which they cannot perceive in the Stable. None muſt ever be permitted to ride them to Water but the Troopers themſelves, tho' any of them had Servants, for they are not too good to look after the Horſes themſelves. Some let Hoſtlers or Boys ride them to Water, but a good Officer never allows of it, and takes Care it ſhall not be done twice. They muſt have an Hour appointed to Water their Horſes, and the Officers muſt be there to ſee them go One by One. When they are altogether in a Stable, as may happen in Winter Quarters, there muſt alſo be an Hour appointed to Dreſs, and give them Oats, and that muſt be overlook'd, that no Trooper may fail; for it is a true Saying, *That the Eye of the Maſter fattens the Horſe.* If the Horſes are aſunder, the Officers muſt divide themſelves to ſee them; and they muſt have their Oats given them one after another, to ſee whether they give them their Horſes. Some Troopers are ſuch Knaves as to ſell their Oats, inſtead of feeding their Horſes, but their Lives lye at Stake upon it, if prov'd. All theſe ſmall Duties are ſufficient Grounds for a Captain to ſuſpend a Subaltern if he fails of performing them; and a Subaltern muſt not dare to neglect them, if once his Captain has commanded him. A Subaltern in the Camp is alſo to take Care that the Troopers do not laviſh their Forrage, nor that they do not ſpare it through Sloth; for if they ſpare it, the Horſes are ſpoil'd for Want, and if they laviſh it, they are diſabled

diſabled by going too often to Forrage. I have ſeen Captains and Subalterns that would riſe in the Night to take Care of this; and it is not to be believ'd what Reputation of being good Officers they gain'd by ſo doing. This is in the main what needs be ſaid concerning the Care to be taken of Horſes; but there are other Duties which regard the Troopers themſelves, and which a Subaltern muſt apply himſelf to, that he may ſee them perform'd. In the firſt Place he is to take Care of their Arms, and ſee they be always fixt, and to this Purpoſe muſt have them brought before him once a Week to view them. All good Officers do ſo; and the Captains do not rely ſo abſolutely on their Subalterns, but that they will ſee themſelves whether they be all well condition'd. This is chiefly to be done after a Rainy Day; for if they do not look to it, the Troopers will let them be eaten up with Ruſt, and when they ſhould come before an Enemy there would be no Arms fit for Service. The Boots are alſo to be look'd after; for it is a moſt unſeemly Sight to behold a Man with Boots that want Heels, or Ript, or without Stirrup-leathers, as often happens. Much Severity is to be us'd towards the Troopers, whoſe Negligence cauſes the Officers Trouble; but tho' they be never ſo nice in keeping themſelves in good Order, they muſt never be rely'd on, for fear they ſhould inſenſibly ſlacken in their Duty. A Subaltern is alſo to be careful that the Troopers keep themſelves neat; which is very hard to be done in the Army, becauſe the Forrage ſpoils the Cloaths and Linen.

Beſides theſe Duties there are others which regard the Service, and which require that a Subaltern be juſt. This is requiſite when a Captain leaves him all the Care of his Troops, and relyes

lyes entirely on him, for then the Subaltern may impose upon him in abundance of small Things; but he exposes himself to great Shame if his Knavery should happen to be discover'd; for he is not only oblig'd to make Restitution, and all his Equipage sold to that Purpose, if he has squander'd the Money, but his Reputation is lost for ever; and therefore he must never appear in the Army, but rather go hide his Shame in some remote Country, where it often happens he is upbraided with his Fault.

There are other Duties still which regard the Service, and of several Sorts; but of all the Subalterns none is oblig'd to so much Attendance as the Quarter-Master. In the first Place it is his Duty never to go to Bed till he has given his Captain Orders; and if the Captain be not in his Tent, he must either wait for, or find him out. He must do the same to the Lieutenant and Cornet; and must be sure to forbear being too great with the Lieutenant, unless the Lieutenant be so much in his Captain's Favour, that the Captain cannot suspect they form any Cabal against him. However, tho' the Captain and Lieutenant agree never so well, I would advise the Quarter-Master to avoid giving his Captain any Jealousie, because it is easily taken, and hard to be remov'd. He must take Care to make the best of his Ground when he goes to encamp; for should he leave a House to another Captain which belongs to his own, his Captain will presently conceit he is making his Court to another at his Cost. A Quarter-Master is also oblig'd to visit the Quarters of his Officers, that they may have no just Cause of Complaint, if they are ill lodg'd, tho' it be but for a Night. All he can do in this Case is to desire the Magistrates

Magiſtrates to quarter them well, ſhowing them the Inconveniencies of the Houſes he has viſited; but if they are to continue there till further Orders, he muſt be the more preſſing; and if there be any Troops in before, he may cauſe the Billets to be made over again, that ſome may not be better quarter'd than others. A Quarter-Maſter, who underſtands his Buſineſs, does not expect his Captain ſhould put him in Mind of all theſe Things, but finds all ready when he comes in. However, if the Magiſtrates have canton'd the Troops, and have reſerv'd Cantons for thoſe that are to come, the Quarter-Maſter can have nothing to ſay to it, unleſs the Cantons are ſo unequal that the Wrong done him is viſible, and therefore he muſt not complain till he has viſited them. When he goes to take Quarters with other Quarter-Maſters, and they are to canton, he is to Viſit all the Cantons, that they may be all of equal Goodneſs; and when he has thus made them all even with his Comrades, he muſt not allow them to take the leaſt Thing from the others on any Pretence whatſoever.

It is not ſo eaſie aſcertaining the Duty of a Cornet as that of a Quarter-Maſter; but in my Opinion a Cornet ought to do like a Voluntier; that is, he ought to have a Hand in every thing, that he may the ſooner learn all Things. I know not any poſitive Buſineſs he has but to carry his Standard; and provided he knows he is never to take it abroad, without Two Troopers on his Sides to guard it, I think he knows all he is oblig'd to know; but nevertheleſs he may not omit thoſe Cares of the Troop I have ſpoke of above. Beſides, I would have him be ſo reſerv'd among his Troopers that they may not deſpiſe him; for Cornets

being

being generally Hair-brain'd, by reaſon of their Youth, it is not eaſie to expreſs how little the Troopers regard them, even to the failing of their Reſpect towards them. Therefore how young ſoever a Cornet is, he muſt know how to make himſelf reſpected, and oblige the Troopers to give him his Due; yet not ſo much by Severity, as Diſcretion.

As for the Lieutenant, he ought to know full as much a Captain, his Duty being almoſt the ſame. He is often detach'd to command a Party in chief, or a Guard, that might be a Captain's; and having no Body there to adviſe with, he muſt have Experience; for wanting it, the Conſequences may be Fatal. I have ſeen Lieutenants committed to the Provoſt for having behav'd themſelves like meer Novices in Fight. Therefore I would never adviſe a young Man to be a Lieutenant at firſt, becauſe being a Lieutenant there will not be ſo much Connivance towards him as if he was a Cornet. Beſides, all the Troop depends on him and the Quarter-Maſter; ſo that if the Troopers once diſcover his Weakneſs, which certainly they will, they will neither value nor reſpect him; and it were better for him to be no Officer than to be ſo contemn'd. Beſides, his ill Name will ſoon ſpread throughout the whole Army; the common Diſcourſe of Troopers being about their Officers, whom they extol to the very Skies if they value them, and run them down as faſt if they undervalue them. In ſhort, if a Man would have an Account of any Officer, he need only ſet his Troopers Tongues a running upon that Subject, and they tell all the Good or Harm they know with unſpeakable Ingenuity.

A Lieutenant or a Cornet, of what Quality ſoever he is, muſt never go before, or take the Way of his Captain: I know there are ſome who are an Honour to the Poſt, eſpecially Cornets, but I have ſeen ſome that were Dukes and Peers of *France*, and yet obſerv'd this, and the Captains were forc'd to take them by the Hand to put them forwards, or give them the Way; yet unleſs they be of this great Quality the Captains never uſe this Compliment, but always take the Way.

When Subalterns behave themſelves, as I have ſaid, towards their Captains, the Captains are alſo oblig'd to treat them civilly, and to make them ſome ſmall Returns. For Inſtance, I never ſaw any account with his Captain for Winter Quarters, but that he made him ſome ſmall Preſent. The Subaltern is not to refuſe it for Two Reaſons; the firſt, becauſe it is not ſo properly the Captain's Gift, as a ſhare he allows him of his Prince's Bounty; the ſecond, becauſe it is a Sign he is pleas'd with him, and he ought to take in good Part that he makes it known to him.

It is Intereſt which generally breeds Difference between the Captains and Subalterns. Therefore the Subaltern, to preſerve a good Intelligence, muſt be juſt in his Accompts when he is entruſted with any thing of that Sort, and the Captain on his Side muſt allow him ſome Share in the Profits that are due to him, and not take all himſelf. He muſt give him his Due, when he has got any thing for Quarters; that is, muſt pay him his Billets in Money, uſing him as he would be us'd himſelf, were he a Subaltern. If the Captain proceeds otherwiſe, he muſt expect the Subalterns will endeavour to make themſelves amends another Way; and if they can find an Opportunity to cheat him,

they

they will readily embrace it, thinking it the more Lawful, becauſe he has given them an Example by Uſurping another's Right. Hence ariſe Diſcontents and Controverſies, which always tend to the Confuſion of both Parties; for when Things are laid open, and the Courſe of their Difference is known, it is equally Diſhonourable to both, that a ſmall Matter of Intereſt ſhould diſturb the Friendſhip there ought to be betwixt them. However, tho' a Subaltern be at Variance with his Captain, he muſt not omit to take Care of the Troop, or Company; for he would be blam'd, ſhould the Troop, or the Company, go to Ruin through his Deſire of Revenge. He muſt diſtinguiſh betwixt his Prince's Intereſt, and his he complains of; and, conſidering the Service is concern'd, muſt do all Things to the beſt of his Power, as if they were the greateſt Friends in the World: If he does ſo, he will gain the Eſteem of all the Army; for the greater Cauſe it appears he had to complain, the more will he be commended for having done his Duty.

Chap. VII. *Of the Abſolute Obedience due to Superiors.*

I Have obſerv'd before, that there is a blind Obedience to be paid to thoſe that have a Right to Command; but ſince I did not declare that this was to be obſerv'd even when they were in the Wrong, I will prove it in this Chapter by the Example of a Brave Man, who left the Service on that Account, that I may not ſay he was Caſhier'd.

Monſieur *De Pillois* was a Brigadier of Horſe at the Battel of *Entziem*, and had the Reputation of knowing

knowing his Duty as well as any Officer in the Army. He had not yet charg'd, but ſtood his Ground to receive Six Squadrons that were Advancing upon him, whom he deſign'd to Flank. At this Time Monſieur *De Vaubrun*, a Lieutenant General, came and told him it was Time to fall on: *Pillois*, who was of the contrary Opinion, anſwer'd, he would Rout thoſe Six Squadrons as they paſs'd a Riſing Ground, and therefore he ought not to March till they drew near. Monſieur *De Vaubrun* fancying it concern'd him to ſee himſelf obey'd, commanded the Regiment of *Pillois*, at the Head of which the Brigadier was, to March; and *Pillois*, thinking himſelf concern'd if he loſt ſuch an Opportunity, commanded his Regiment to Halt; and his Authority being greater than Monſieur *De Vaubrun*'s over his own Regiment, they did not Advance till the Enemy was near the Riſing Ground. Experience ſhow'd Monſieur *De Vaubrun* that *Pillois* was in the Right, for he overthrew and drove thoſe Squadrons one upon another; yet he complaining after the Battel to Monſieur *De Turenne*, *Pillois* had a ſevere Reprimand; and had not that General been loth to undo any Man, he would have writ to Court about it at the ſame Time. Monſieur *De Vaubrun* was not ſo Good-natur'd as Monſieur *Turenne*; for not ſatisfied with the Satisfaction *Pillois* had given him by the General's Order, he ſoon after had him remov'd from his Poſt.

If there muſt be a blind Obedience paid even when a Man thinks himſelf in the Right, ſhould he act contrary, much more are we oblig'd to obey when nothing is commanded but what is for our Prince's Service. However, I do not ſay we may not examine the Commands; for if a Man deſign'd to betray his Prince, and ſhould command us to go over

over to the Enemy, it would be well done to disobey him; but we must be sure of what we do, for otherwise we should be accountable for our Disobedience. Excepting this Case, I would never advise any Body to refuse to obey his Commander, tho' I have seen a Lieutenant of Horse rewarded for so doing: He had been detach'd, with a Captain, to cover some Men that were repairing the Ways; they being both at the Head of their Troop, discover'd about an Hundred of the Enemy's Horse coming to Charge them: They were not above half the Number, which so daunted the Captain, that he presently resolv'd to retire, and gave the Word of Command accordingly. The Lieutenant disliking so much Cautiousness, told him, he did not like running away; and not being able to persuade him, he commanded the Men to follow him, and march'd towards the Enemy; the Troopers were willing, and Fortune favouring his Boldness, he bore the Enemy down; so that instead of being reprov'd for his Disobedience, he had the Troop given him, and the Captain was shamefully broke.

'Tis true, this Example shows a Man may sometimes dispence with his Obedience, when his Refusal is grounded on his Commander's Cowardice: But this is a very tickliſh Point; for if he happens to be beaten, it is to be fear'd the Commander will be look'd upon as a discreet Person, and he as a rash Fellow. Success often sets Things right; and he is made much of who gains an Advantage, who would be despis'd had he been defeated. However, I do not say but an Officer, if he is sensible of his Commander's Timorousness, may follow the Example of the Lieutenant here mention'd, but then he must be sure to observe several Things: First, The Number of the Enemy he is to Charge, that

that he may not undertake any Thing above his Strength; for a Man may put ſomething to the Venture, but muſt not expoſe himſelf, like a Madman, to be certainly defeated. Secondly, If the Poſt he is entruſted with be of great Conſequence, for if the Loſs of it be of Fatal Conſequence, much more muſt be ventur'd to make it good, than if it were of ſmall Moment.

I am alſo of Opinion, that an Officer in a Place that is beſieg'd, if the Governour will ſurrender, may refuſe to ſign the Capitulation, if he thinks it Diſhonourable. But this differs from what was ſaid above, and is then no Diſobedience; for the Place being no longer his Sovereign's, by Reaſon of the Capitulation the Governour has ſign'd, it is lawful for every one to approve or diſapprove of what the Governour has done; and the more, becauſe there is a Puniſhment for thoſe who refuſe to ſign the Capitulation, the Enemies making them Priſoners of War. But I would rather chuſe to hazard my Liberty, than it ſhould be ſaid I had fail'd in Point of Honour. Thus Mareſchal *Schomberg* gave great Commendations to a Captain of Foot, whoſe Name I have forgot, becauſe he refus'd to ſign the Capitulation of the ſhameful Surrender of *Bellegarde* in the Year 1674.

Chap. VIII. *Of the Penalty they incur who refuſe to obey their Officers.*

HAving declar'd how indiſpenſable it is that Officers be obey'd, it will not be amiſs to ſpeak a Word of the Puniſhment appointed for thoſe who do the contrary. In private Soldiers, Horſe or Foot, it is a Capital Crime, ſometimes puniſh'd with Death, ſometimes by ſhamefully Disbanding, and ſometimes by Cutting off the Hand, according to the Nature of the Thing. For Inſtance, a Trooper, or Foot Soldier, who draws his Sword againſt his Officer, is to have the Hand that committed the Offence cut off, that he may never be capable of committing the like again, then his Sword is broke over him, and he is ſent away diſgrac'd and maim'd. They are alſo put to Death for the ſame Crime; but that is when they have kill'd or wounded their Officer; otherwiſe only the Hand is cut off, as has been ſaid. They are ſhamefully caſhier'd when they are Mutinous; but when the Mutiny is great, and may prove of ill Conſequence, they muſt expect no Mercy, but are condemn'd to Death. There muſt be Seven to Try a Soldier, beſides the Major of the Regiment, who is in the Nature of a Sollicitor General, and draws all to a Concluſion, after ſumming up the Evidence on both Sides. Only the Captains are admitted into the Council of War; and if there be any Colonels they are admitted before the Captains. The Preſident of the Council of War ſigns the Sentence, and when he has ſign'd it, it is carried to the General of the Horſe, if he be a Trooper; or to the Commandant of the Infantry, if he is a Foot Sol-

Soldier, for his Approbation. This is to be understood in the Army, or where there is a General of Horſe, or Commandant of Foot on the Spot. I never ſaw any Wrong done in a Council of War but once; but then all the Officers of the Army were concern'd in the Matter, and therefore a Wretch was ſacrific'd, and beſides, he was not condemn'd to Death. A Regiment of Horſe had been in good Winter Quarters, and had got much Money, both for the Officers and Troopers Billets, without allowing the latter any thing. The Troopers deſiring to have a ſhare, ask'd it at firſt in a ſubmiſſive Manner, but perceiving they were made a Jeſt of, they Mutiny'd, and one of them undertook to carry the Complaint to the General, that he might right them. Accordingly, as ſoon as they came to the Army, he went to his Tent upon that Deſign; but the Colonel of the Regiment meeting him there, drew him aſide very handſomely, upon Promiſe to content him. However, they were not above a Hundred Paces from the Head Quarters, when the Colonel caus'd him to be ſeiz'd, and carry'd to the Standard. Then he preferr'd his Complaint againſt him, and having brought him before a Council of War as a Mutineer, he was caſhier'd, and condemn'd to Eighteen Months Impriſonment.

This I ſay was the only time I ſaw Injuſtice done in a Council of War; but all the Officers in the Army would have been liable to make Reſtitution, had this Trooper's Complaint been heard; and therefore all Men ſollicited againſt him, that his Puniſhment might ſilence the reſt: Upon other Occaſions I have always ſeen as much Juſtice done as could be expected from the moſt upright Judges. The Articles of War are there

read

read to the Criminal; he is ask'd whether he did not know them before he committed the Crime? And then he is try'd. The Council of War may abate of the Rigour of the Articles of War; and I have seen it practiz'd upon a Deserter, because the poor Fellow made it appear he had been Listed by Compulsion, and would never have gone into the Army of his own Accord. I have also seen Councils of War in which much Severity has been us'd; and in one of them, one of the Horse Guards was condemn'd to be cudgell'd to Death, for an Example to all that Body, that the fear of Disgrace might keep them to their Duty. This Gentleman of the Guards was not taken; but I know a Description of him was sent to all the Provosts, that they might endeavour to secure him, and the Sentence would have been executed had he fallen into their Hands.

It is not so frequent to put Officers to Death for Disobedience; and yet there are Instances enough of Officers being Executed on this Account; those that mutiny'd in *Treves* against Marshal *Crequi* were condemn'd to Die. They are also broke for not paying the Respect they owe, or for Infringing the Articles of War. Yet these Punishments are rare in Officers, because it is to be suppos'd they do not give Cause; however, upon Complaint from their Superiors, they are broke. In *France* a Captain has power to Suspend his Subalterns, if they disobey him in the least, and the General himself cannot restore them.

When an Officer or Soldier is to be broke with Shame, after Sentence of the Council of War he is brought to the Head of the Regiment, where his Offence and Condemnation is read, then his

Hat

Hat is thrown on the Ground, his Sword taken from him, and he receives Three Strokes on the Back, and ſo is diſmiſs'd; but ſometimes his Sword is broke over his Head, or other Ceremony us'd, according to the Diſcretion of the Council of War.

Chap. XI. *That great Reſpect is to be paid to the Quarters of Generals, or other Superior Officers, and much Care be taken not to fall into Paſſion there.*

WHen firſt I went to the War I could not conceive that ſo much Reſpect was to be paid to the Quarters of General Officers, and others of Superior Rank, and thought this only due to the Sovereign or Commander in Chief; but I was ſoon undeceiv'd, for I ſaw ſo many puniſh'd for the ſame Miſtake, that I reſolv'd to be no longer guilty of it. The firſt Example I receiv'd Information by was of a Captain in the Regiment of St. *Lieu*, who being at Play at the Colonel's Quarters, through eagerneſs to lay hold of his Money, took up a Flambeau, and threw it againſt a Looking-Glaſs, which was broke to pieces. *Monſieur de* St. *Lieu* coming in at the ſame time, ask'd him where he thought he was? The other anſwer'd abruptly, that if the breaking of the Glaſs diſturb'd him he would pay for it. This ſo highly offended *Monſieur de* St. *Lieu*, that he immediately complain'd, and the Captain was under Confinement for a Fortnight.

St. *Simon*, of the Family of the Duke *de* St. *Simon*, a Colonel of Horſe, very Brave, and reſpected in the Army, being at *Monſieur de Montbron*'s Quarters, among many other Officers, fancy'd that *Bruſart*, a Colonel of Dragoons, who was at the other end of the Room, ſpoke ill of him, which put him into ſuch a Paſſion that he threatned the other. *Bruſart*, who was as Brave and as Haſty as he, would make it appear that he did not fear him, and had not the reſt of the Officers interpos'd, one or other of them had been kill'd. The Noiſe they made brought *Monſieur de Montbron* out of his Cloſet; they would both have pleaded their Cauſe, but he refus'd to hear either of them, and ſent both away to Priſon, ſaying, that when he had puniſh'd them for the Offence of quarrelling in his Houſe, he would enquire who was in the Wrong, to do the other Right. An Officer muſt be ſo diſcreet as to conſider where he is; and if he has Ambition enough to hope to riſe, it will be no Trouble to him to pay that Deference to others, which he would have paid to himſelf in the ſame Poſt. Not but that there are ſome difficult Accidents which perplex a Man; as for Inſtance, it is very hard, whatever the Place be, to take an Affront, and endure to be ill-ſpoken of. *Buſca*, afterward Lieutenant of the Life-Guards, drew his Sword in the King's Quarters, and wounded his Officer for giving him a cuff on the Ear. It is true he was forced to fly into *England*, where he continu'd ſome time, but was afterwards recall'd, and rais'd to great Poſts. This ſhows we may ſometimes deviate from the Rules; yet I would never adviſe any Man to follow the Example; and the rather, becauſe ſhould any Body wrong us there is Care taken to reſtore our Honour. I know it

is

is hard to put up an Affront; and Nature prompts us to uſe Violence againſt Violence; but if we conſider our Sovereign has ſo order'd it, and that our Honour does not lye at Stake, I know not why we ſhould make any Difficulty to obey. A Lieutenant of the *French* Guards, whoſe Name ought to be tranſmitted to Poſterity, has given us a ſingular Example of his Prudence and Moderation He was in Garriſon at *Liſle* ſoon after it was taken, and marching at the Head of his Company through the Street, he had occaſion for a Pen and Ink to write down ſome Orders for a Sergeant. He made his Men Halt, and going into a Baker's Shop, civilly deſir'd to borrow the Pen and Ink; but the brutiſh Baker ſawcily anſwer'd, he would give him none if he had it. The Lieutenant being about to adviſe him to give better Language, the Baker gave him a cuff on the Ear, which the Company ſeeing, the Sergeants were juſt ready to ſtick him with their Halbards, and the Musketeers that were next at Hand cock'd their Pieces to fire upon him; but the Lieutenant conſidering the Town was newly taken, and the King had commanded the Garriſon to be favourable to the Inhabitants, he hindred the Soldiers doing the Man any Harm, and commanding them to march, ſtood himſelf at the Door of the Shop till all the Company was paſt, for fear thoſe in the Rear ſhould fall upon the Baker if he had led them. The King was acquainted with the whole Matter, who was ſo well pleas'd with it, that he order'd the Lieutenant the firſt Company in the Guards that fell. Hence we muſt conclude that it is always ſafeſt to do our Duty; and ſince that obliges us to curb our ſelves, ought not we to do all that is in our

Power to give no Cauſe of Complaint againſt us? But to return to our Purpoſe, I ſay we muſt ſhow our ſelves very Diſcreet and Modeſt when we are at any General's Quarters, for I could bring ſeveral other Examples to this Point, beſides thoſe already mention'd. This is moſt rigorouſly to be obſerv'd at the King's Quarters, and ſo the General's Houſe or Quarters are call'd, to which Purpoſe I remember a Paſſage I ſaw in the Year 1676. The Marquis *de Rivarolles* having won 500 Crowns of the Marquis *de Feuquieres*, and not knowing how to get his Money, went to his Tent, which was near the Duke of *Luxemburg*, then General of the Army, where after making a great Noiſe, he would have carry'd away his Horſes. The Duke of *Luxemburg* being told of the Diſturbance, commanded the Marquis *de Rivarolles* to be brought before him, and having ask'd him whether he did not know he was in the King's Quarters, the Marquis anſwer'd he knew it very well; then to teach you againſt another Time, reply'd *Luxemburg*, that the King's Quarters are as Sacred as the *Louvre*, I will ſend you to Priſon. Which he accordingly did, and when he had thus puniſh'd him for his Offence, he examin'd the Difference betwixt him and the Marquis *de Feuquieres*, and oblig'd this latter to pay him.

Chap. X. *Of the Severity of Martial Law, and the Penalties inflicted on those that tranſgreſs it.*

THere are ſeveral Motives which incline Men to take up the Profeſſion of the Sword. The Great Ones generally do it to purchaſe Honour; for being Born to great Eſtates, they want nothing but Renown. Others, who have not ſo much Cauſe to boaſt of their Fortune, endeavour to advance themſelves; and were it not for that Hope perhaps they would be more ſparing of their Lives. And tho' the Motive of the former be more Glorious than that of the latter, yet they are both Commendable, becauſe both follow the Dictates of Virtue; and both are uſeful to their Country, becauſe they ſpend their Blood for its Honour. However, there are others, who inſtead of endeavouring to raiſe their Fortunes by Glorious Actions, make it their Buſineſs to riſe by any Means whatſoever, and therefore their principal Aim is to rob on all Hands; and when they have ſuck'd the Blood of the People in Garriſons, they ſtrive to cheat their Sovereign in the Army, filling up their Troops and Companies with Faggots on a Muſter Day. Thus is a General deceiv'd on the Day of Battle, believing his Army to be much ſtronger than it is. All Nations have made ſevere Laws againſt falſe Muſters; but the Underſtanding there is often between the Officers and the Muſter-maſters very frequently prevent all theſe Precautions. The Officer that is convicted is certainly broke, and the Perſon that Muſters is differently puniſh'd, according to the Cuſtom or Law of the Country

he is in; but in *France* he has a Flower-de-Luce burnt upon his Cheek, and is ſent to the Galleys. Theſe Penalties are generally inflicted with the utmoſt Rigour; and one would think that Man mad, who would venture his Commiſſion and his Reputation for the poor Pay of Three or Four Soldiers, for it is not likely he can practice it long without Diſcovery. He who has done a baſe Action, and is ſatisfy'd his Crime is known to another, can ſcarce Sleep for fear the other ſhould diſcover it; then how ſhall he ever be at Reſt who has as many Witneſſes againſt him as there are Soldiers in his Troop or Company? Does not he know he ought to miſtruſt them all; and that the Diſcharge and Reward promis'd to Informers will induce one or other to accuſe him when he leaſt thinks of it? Yet had a Captain nothing to fear on this Account, as indeed he has, methinks the Apprehenſion of being look'd upon as an ill Officer ſhould oblige him to keep up a good Troop or Company; for he muſt not hope to conceal his Knavery at all times, tho' he have good Luck at Muſters. When the Army marches, or is in the Field, there are many Occaſions in which a General may diſcover the Weakneſs of his Company. There are no Faggots then at Hand to fill up, and what can he ſay for himſelf when he is upbraided with this Fraud? I cannot conceive how an Officer can take ſuch a ſhameful Courſe to enrich himſelf. There are other honourable Means to be us'd, and no Man of Senſe ſhould make choice of thoſe where more may be loſt than can be got. I have ſeen ſo many Diſaſters on this Account that a Man can never be too cautious in avoiding the like.

I could bring a Thouſand Examples of this Nature, but will reſt ſatisfy'd with Two, which will ſufficiently evince the Rigour of Martial Law in this Caſe. After the taking of *Maeſtricht*, the Commiſſary Generals Regiment of Horſe being put into Garriſon at *Liſle*, the Quarter-maſter of the Colonel's Troop thought he ſhould oblige *Monſieur de la Chardonniere*, who was then Colonel, by making his Troop to paſs Muſter as ſtrong as he could, and therefore put Three of his Servants into the Ranks the firſt Muſter. A Trooper, who perhaps had waited a long Opportunity to get his Diſcharge, which *Monſieur de la Chardonniere* had often refus'd him, gave an Information to the Commiſſary upon the Spot, and the Servants not knowing how to deny, were committed to Priſon. The Commiſſary immediately writ to Court upon it, and had Orders to enquire whether *Monſieur de la Chardonniere* had no Hand in what had been done, and if he had, to give ſpeedy Notice. It was *Monſieur de la Chardonniere*'s good Fortune not to be in *Liſle* at that time, and therefore it was eaſily made out that he knew nothing of what had paſt. However, he durſt not ſpeak a Word in Behalf of his Quarter-maſter, or beg his Servants Pardon. The Quarter-maſter, after a tedious Impriſonment, was broke, and the Servants had the *Flower-de-Luce* Branded on their Cheeks, tho' *Monſieur de la Chardonniere* employ'd Friends Underhand to ſave them.

The following Example fell upon an Officer of Note, and has ſomething ſo ſingular, that I do not doubt but all Men do think it ſtrange. *Monſieur de Lucinge*, Brigadier General of Horſe, and Colonel of the Royal Regiment of *Piemont*, was in Garriſon at *Douay*, when a Trooper of his Regi-

ment, at the time they were Muſtering at the Gates, rode out of his Rank to inform againſt a Faggot there was in *Grimaldi*'s Troop. The Commiſſary, who was a Friend to *Monſieur de Lucinge* and *Grimaldi* too, being willing to oblige them both, made as if he did not hear the Trooper, and by that Means gave the Quarter-maſter time to draw that Faggot out of the Ranks, and place him in the Rear of the Squadron, which was lawful; for then telling the Commiſſary he was a Servant that did Duty as well as the Troopers, he might paſs him if he would, or if not there was no harm could come of it. Still the Trooper ſtuck to the Commiſſary to make him look about, who believing *Grimaldi* had time enough to draw the Faggot out of the Ranks, told the Informer, who preſs'd for his Diſcharge, and the Reward of an Hundred Crowns the King had appointed for Diſcoverers of falſe Muſters, that he need only ſhow him the Man, and he would do him Juſtice. The Trooper led the Commiſſary to the Place where he had left the Faggot, but was ſtrangely out of Countenance when he ſaw they had drawn him out of the Ranks, and ſet him in the Place where the Servants ſtood that were to be Muſter'd. He would have juſtify'd himſelf, but the Commiſſary beginning to rail at him, all the Captains of the Regiment reſolv'd to uſe him ſo ſcurvily that he might be an Example to the whole Regiment. They order'd *Grimaldi*'s Quarter-maſter, and Two other Troopers they could confide in, to take him out of the Ranks as ſoon as the Muſter was over, and to handle him ſo that he might have Cauſe to remember that Day as long as he liv'd. Mr. *de Lucinge* was conſenting to this Puniſhment, ſo that when the Regiment march'd off,

off, the Quarter-master, in pursuance to his Orders, drew out the poor Fellow, and dismounting him cut off one of his Ears, after giving him an Hundred Strokes of a Cudgel. The unfortunate Wretch went away to *Arras*, where he was cur'd, and having told his Misfortune to some Troopers there, some of them advis'd him to go lay himself at the King's Feet, and in order to it made a Collection to the Value of a Pistole among themselves to bear his Charges. Being come to Court, he watch'd his Opportunity to speak to the King, and having told him he had been long in his Service, gave an exact account of his Misfortune; at which the King seem'd to be concern'd, but would not promise him any thing till he was inform'd of the Truth of his Relation. He order'd order'd *Monsieur de Louvois* to write about it immediately, and subsist the Trooper in the mean while, lest Want should oblige him to be gone. *Monsieur de Louvois* being satisfy'd from very good Hands that the Trooper had deliver'd nothing but the Truth, acquainted the King with it, who presently order'd the Council of War to sit, commanding them not to have any Regard to *Monsieur de Lucinge*, or any other Person whatsoever, but to do that poor Man all the Justice he could expect from Men of Honour. The Council of War being met, proceeded according to the King's Directions, and after examining all the Points with Deliberation, gave Sentence, that the Quarter-master who had cut off the Trooper's Ear should be sent to the Galleys, and the Captains of the Regiment should pay the Trooper down 6000 Livres upon the Nail for Damage; and besides, they were to guard him down at their own Charges into *Piemont*, and to be answerable for

him Body for Body till they left him ſafe at his own Home. The King approv'd of the Sentence; but that all his Forces might be ſatisfy'd, he expected the Colonels ſhould ſee the Articles of War, and all Martial Laws, ſtrictly obſerv'd, he diſcarded Monſieur *de Lucinge*, and gave his Regiment to another.

I ſhall now ſay ſomewhat of the Orders or Proclamations put out by Generals in the Army, and of their Severity in ſeeing them ſtrictly obſerv'd. Theſe are ſometimes call'd Bans, and Notice is given of them at the delivering of Orders, after which every Major reads them to his Regiment, that they may be known to all Men. It is no leſs dangerous to infringe any ſuch Orders, Ban, or Proclamation, than the very Articles of War; on the contrary, Generals are more Severe and Expeditious in the Puniſhment; for they preſently hang up the Offender upon the Spot, without troubling themſelves to call a Council of War. There are ſeveral Occaſions for making theſe Bans or Proclamations; as for Inſtance, to forbid Plundering in a Country that is under Contribution; to prevent Robbing of thoſe that bring any Proviſions to the Camp; to hinder ſetting Fire to any Place; and ſometimes to Prohibit any going beyond the Guards. It is a Capital Crime to infringe any of theſe Orders given by the General. I have ſeen Exemplary Puniſhments, even in ſome Caſes where one would have thought ſo much Rigour ought not to have been us'd. When Mareſchal *Schomberg* Commanded in *Catalonia* the whole Army was Two Days without Bread, ſo that all Men cry'd out for Mercy. The General fearing leſt Want ſhould make them commit ſome Diſorders, made Proclamation that none ſhould Pillage any-

anywhere upon pain of Death, which curb'd moſt of the Soldiers. However, a Corporal of *Teſſe*'s own Troop, in his Regiment of Dragoons, overcome by Hunger, and finding a Flock of Sheep in a By-place, took One of them, hoping he ſhould not be found out. He had the ill Fortune, as he was returning to the Camp, to meet with *Schomberg*, who ſeeing the Sheep behind him, order'd a Provoſt to be call'd immediately, and him to be Hang'd on the next Tree. Monſieur *de Teſſe*, who was one of *Schomberg*'s Intimate Friends, hearing the News, came in all Haſte to beg of him to Pardon the Dragoon, alledging he had in a manner forc'd him into the Army, being the Son of a Servant of his Mother, who would never forgive him ſhould the Man come to ſo Unfortunate an End; and offer'd to give an Hundred Piſtoles to the Owner of the Sheep. *Schomberg* heard him unconcern'd, and anſwer'd him very coldly, That he was ſorry he could not grant his Requeſt, and would have his Orders punctually obſerv'd. This ſaid, without any more Words the Dragoon was Hang'd on the next Tree.

During the Campaign in *Holland*, the Count *De Chamilli*, a Lieutenant General, and a very Nice Man, commanded a Body of Men about *Maeſtricht*; he having iſſued a Proclamation for the Security of thoſe that brought Proviſions to the Camp, it happen'd that a Soldier ſtopp'd a Peaſant who had a Basket full of Bread, and took from him a Loaf, which might be worth Two-pence; this done, he return'd to his Regiment, and meeting with his Comrade, who was as hungry as himſelf, gave him half of it, telling him how he came by it: The Countryman ſoon came up where the Two Soldiers were, and knowing the Man that took his Bread, fell upon him,

him, calling upon the Officers to assist and do him Justice. The Officers knowing the ill Consequence if it came to Monsieur *De Chamilli*'s Ears, offer'd him a Skilling for his Loaf, which was almost Four times the Value; but the hard-hearted Peasant refus'd it, and going his way to Monsieur *De Chamilli*'s Tent, made his Complaint. The General came himself to the Regiment, and compell'd the Officers, who had hid the Soldiers, to deliver them up to him, and making them cast Lots for their Lives, tho' only One was really guilty, the Lot fell upon the Innocent, and he was hang'd immediately without being heard. I told the Prince of *Conde* this Passage, who, after disapproving of it as too severe, was pleas'd to inform me, That he was once very much puzzled about a Soldier, who was taken beyond the Guards, after he had forbid it; for the Soldier prov'd he was actually there when the Proclamation was made, and therefore he could not know any thing of it. The Prince, that he might not put an Innocent Man to Death, nor give an ill Example to the Soldiers, who might think there was no Danger in transgressing of Orders, bethought himself to have him hang'd just at Night-fall, and the Rope to come under his Arm-pits, after which he sent him Three Leagues from the Army, with express Command never to appear there any more. This was a good Expedient to satisfie Discipline and Justice at once; for to believe a Man may do any thing, because he is accountable to no Body, is the way to draw Guilt and Hatred on himself.

The Officers are not exempt from Punishment when they transgress the General's Bans. The Marshal *De Rochfort* having forbid all Persons going beyond the Camp Guards, sent the Provost and his Men to scoure about the Army, with Orders to seize all

all they found beyond the Guards: Among the Priſoners he brought was a Lieutenant of Foot, who having a ſick Horſe, was gone to put him into a Meadow; which did not ſatisfie Mr. *De Rochefort*, who call'd a Court Martial to ſit upon him, where he was ſhamefully broke.

Not long after a Colonel of Foot had like to have paid dear for having too great a Conceit of his Power; for believing that Men in his Poſt were not ſo ſtrictly oblig'd to the Letter of the Law, he went about to force a Captain of Horſe that was upon Guard, and would oblige him to obſerve the Order. The Colonel drew his Piſtol againſt him, the Captain ſtood upon his Defence, but was ſhot dead upon the Spot. This made a great Noiſe in the Army, and the King reſolving a thing of that Conſequence ſhould not go unpuniſh'd, appointed a Court Marſhal to ſit upon him, where the Colonel had been condemn'd to Death had not his Kindred pleaded that when he offended he was in Drink, which gain'd him ſome Favour; however he was Broke, and oblig'd to pay the Captain's Widow 10000 Crowns.

This is the Difference I have ſeen made betwixt an Officer and a Soldier when they tranſgreſs'd the Bans; the latter ſuffers Death, and the other is ſhamefully Caſhier'd. Not but that I am ſatisfied a General may uſe more Rigour if he pleaſes; but generally they will not uſe the utmoſt of their Power, for fear of being thought too ſevere.

Monſieur *De Ville*, in his Book of Martial Juſtice, gives an Account of a Light-horſeman of the King's Guards, who had his Head cut off for Aſſaulting a Corporal upon his Duty. This is not a Violation of an Order or Proclamation, but Subverting all

that

that is Sacred in an Army; for when a Guard is once Poſted, it is an heinous Offence to inſult any that belongs to it; and tho' a Man has never ſo juſt Cauſe of Complaint againſt one of them, he muſt defer his Revenge till another Time. I ſaw a very remarkable Paſſage of this Nature at *Perpignan*: A Lieutenant of Horſe of the Regiment of *Bret*, who was Son to the Major of the ſame Regiment, had ſome falling out with a Countryman of his who had liſted himſelf in the Militia of *Languedoc*. It happen'd that as he was going to the Army he unfortunately met his Enemy upon Guard at the City Gate, and not being able to govern his Paſſion, he drew his Sword upon him, and purſu'd him into the *Corps de Gard*. The other ſeeing himſelf preſs'd, took Courage, and puſhing forward upon the Lieutenant, run him through, ſo that he fell ſtone dead. The Man was preparing to make his Eſcape, fearing to be puniſh'd; but *La Ribertiere*, the Town-Major, coming in opportunely, told him, if he was to blame for any thing, it was for not having fir'd as ſoon as he was attack'd. In ſhort, as ſoon as Marſhal *Schomberg* was inform'd of the Matter, he was ſo far from proceeding againſt him that kill'd the Lieutenant, that he caus'd the Dead Man to be formally try'd for a Terror to others.

Chap. V. *What a young Captain is to obſerve upon a March, whether he be going to the Army, or to Garriſon; and where Orders are to be receiv'd, either in paſſing through Frontier-Towns, or when come into Garriſon.*

ONE that has never been in Service, but has got a Troop or Company, either through the Recommendation of ſome Powerful Perſon, or on Account of his Quality, to prevent committing very groſs Miſtakes, muſt be acquainted with what I am here going to deliver. In the firſt place, if it be a new Troop, or Company, which he has rais'd upon his own Lands, he muſt not ſuffer any Trooper or Soldier to leave his Ranks upon a March on any Account whatſoever; becauſe raw Soldiers believing 'tis lawful for them to do any thing, never fail to Plunder on the Right and Left, which brings them into much Trouble: Therefore as he Marches at the Head he muſt place Officers in the Rear and on the Flanks, to ſee the Men do not diſperſe; and in caſe they ſhould have ſuch urgent Neceſſity as ſhould compel them to go out of the Ranks, he who gave them leave muſt make them return to their Place immediately, that they may not ſlip out to do Miſchief on Pretence of Neceſſity. At the beginning of the *Dutch* Wars I ſaw many Young Captains who repented they had not taken this Care; for the People who had been plunder'd had ſent up Complaints againſt them, and when they thought to receive their Pay, they found the Paymaſter had an Order from the King to ſtop as much

much as would satisfie those that had been plunder'd. Besides, it is ill Management to give Cause to have such Complaints made; for what Conceit can the Sovereign or a Minister of State have of a Man whose First Exploit is Robbing of the Country People? A Captain must not allow his Men to Talk loud, or to Sing as they March; that does not at all become Soldiers; not but that upon some Occasions they may be permitted to Talk to one another, but it must always be low, thereby to show the Respect they bear their Officers, and that they are always in readiness to hear their Commands. When a Captain is within Two Leagues of the Place where he is to Quarter, he must detach his Quarter-master, or a Sergeant, with his Orders, that the Billets may be ready when he comes. But when he comes near the Frontiers he must send him away before he sets out; because there being abundance of Troops, the Magistrates must have timely Notice of his coming, that they may have leisure in that Confusion to provide for all. When he comes before the Town-House he must draw up his Men facing the Town-House; for it would be Ridiculous to turn his Back upon it, which I have seen done more than once by Young Officers for want of being forewarn'd. Then the Magistrates, whose Business it is, are to come down to view the Number of Men, and deliver the Billets. If the Magistrates delay, which is very prejudicial to all, but especially to the Horse, they must be civilly put in Mind of their Duty; but if it appear they take no Notice, or do it Maliciously, then would I advise an Officer to enquire where any of them has ever a Meadow, and to turn all the Horses in there. I always did so, whilst I serv'd, where-ever I found

found Magiſtrates that were ill-affected, and as ſoon as ever I was there, they would ſend after me, and deliver me my Billets. When the Captain has his Billets he marches to his own Quarters, and drawing up his Men in a Line before his Door, makes the Quarter-maſter, or Sergeant, deliver them, taking a Note of every Man's Quarters, for otherwiſe no Body could tell whom to Blame if there were any Fault committed. There are to be Two of theſe Liſts, one the Quarter-maſter, or Sergeant, keeps, the other he delivers to the Captain. When the Men are once quarter'd, the Magiſtrates cannot remove any of them without the Captain's Conſent. I am not ignorant it is daily done, but only thoſe Captains permit it who do not underſtand their Duty. If the Soldier commit any Diſorders in his Quarters the Captain is to make an Example of him; and if he kills or hurts any Man he is to be deliver'd up to the Magiſtrates to do themſelves Juſtice. Thus a Captain is to behave himſelf on his March till he comes to a Garriſon Town, and then he muſt ſend to receive Orders; for if he does not he will ſoon be compell'd. I have ſeen a great Conteſt on this Point between conſiderable Officers, ſome alledging that only the Garriſon was oblig'd to go for Orders, and others that no Body was exempt; but it was decided, that an entire Troop or Company lying in a Garriſon Town could not avoid it; and that if Recruits were not ſubject to it, the Reaſon was becauſe for the moſt part they had not Quarter-maſters, or Sergeants, with them; and if they had, ſtill they had enough to do with their Men to prevent their Deſerting. Yet it was added, that it only depended on the Will of the Governours of Garriſons to oblige the Officers

of thoſe Recruits to ſend to receive Orders, and all ſubmitted to this Opinion; ſo that I would adviſe all Men to ſend, that it may appear they know their Duty.

When there is a Lieutenant General, or a Major General, in a Garriſon, they muſt ſend to none but him for Orders, becauſe they would be laugh'd at for being ignorant of their Buſineſs. A General Officer Commands in all Places whereſoever he comes, which is above all Diſpute, and I have ſeen it practic'd upon ſeveral Occaſions; and yet I have ſeen a Governour of a Garriſon who did not know it, or at leaſt ſo Vain as to give the Orders in Derogation of Monſieur *de St. Lieu*, who was a Major General; but he was laugh'd at by all that heard of it; and what is worſe, another Commandant was ſent in his ſtead in the Heat of the War, which was a ſufficient Teſtimony that he was not look'd upon as a Man of great Experience. In the Year 1674 I ſaw a Thing which I could never ſince be reconcil'd to. Mareſchal *Schomberg* ſent Monſieur *de Mornas*, a Brigadier General of Foot, to *Perpignan*, to take Care of the Convoys that were to go to the Army, with a Commiſſion of Commandant. *Mornas*, by Virtue of this Commiſſion, would have the Garriſon to receive Orders from him, and *Chatillon*, the King's Lieutenant, or Deputy Governour of the Place, and Lieutenant General of the Province of *Rouſillon*, ſaid it was his Right. No doubt but *Chatillon* had all the Reaſon on his Side; for being the King's Lieutenant, or Deputy Governour of the Province, no Commandant could be put over him by any but by the King himſelf; and yet *Schomberg* ſiding with *Mornas*, gave it againſt him. I cannot imagine why *Schomberg* ſhould give it againſt

againſt *Chatillon*, for he very well knew that the King's Lieutenants, or Deputy Governours of Provinces in *France*, do not only Command Brigadiers, but even Lieutenant Generals of the Army, within their own Provinces; unleſs when an Army is upon the Spot, for then the Lieutenant General of the Army Commands the Deputy Governour of the Province, in all other Caſes the ſaid Deputy Governour Commands the Lieutenant General, even though there be a Body of Men under a Lieutenant General ſent to Winter in the Country. An Officer before he ſends for Orders ought to know who he is to ſend to; not that it is his Buſineſs to decide any Bodies Pretenſions; but if he underſtands his Buſineſs well it will be fit he ſhows he underſtands it. However, upon ſuch a Controverſie as is mention'd above, between an Officer of the Army, and a Governour of a Province, I would adviſe him rather to ſide with the General Officer of the Army; not that he has moſt Right, but becauſe he is likely to Live under him, and perhaps he may never ſee the Governour again. It is enough for him to know that a Deputy Governour of a Province Commands a Lieutenant-General, within his own Province; but it would be Abſurd to make his Court to him, rather than to one that may Prefer him.

When any Perſons of great Quality come into a Garriſon, Governours by Way of Compliment will ſometimes have them give out Orders. In this Caſe the Majors muſt do as the Governour Commands them; but it would be a great Fault in them to do it of their own Accord. It is not their Part to do that Honour to any Body; and they muſt own none but thoſe whom they are to Reſpect for their Commiſſion.

A Deputy Governour of a Province in any Garriſon within his Government gives Orders, though the Governour of the Place be a Lieutenant Gene al in the Army. The Reaſon of it is, becauſe the Deputy Governour Repreſents the King's Perſon in all Parts of his Government; and none can pretend to Command where the King is, or he that Repreſents him. This I have ſeen practis'd in *Artois* and *Picardy*; and for inſtance, the Duke *d' Elbeuf* gave Orders in St. *Quintin*, and Monſ. *de Pradel*, Governour of the Place, and Lieutenant General, obey'd him. Nay more, had the Mareſchal *de Crequi*, when he was Governour of *Bethune*, been in his Government, though he was a Mareſchal of *France*, he muſt have obey'd the Duke *d' Elbeuf*, for then his great Poſt would not avail him. However, we muſt make this Diſtinction, which is very Remarkable, *viz.* that when an Army is gathering in a Province, he who has the King's Commiſſion to Command that Army Commands in all Places.

Thus we ſee that all Deputy Governours of Provinces Command Lieutenant Generals, within their own Province; and therefore when any Troops come into their Government they are to Salute them, the Horſe with the Sword, and the Foot with the Pike. Yet in *France* the King's Houſhold is not oblig'd to Salute them, for they are not bound to do it to any but the King himſelf; and though they do it to Generals, that is only a Condeſcenſion to make their Court. When the Mareſchal *d' Albret* Commanded the King's Gendarmes, I have ſeen Monſieur *de la Salle*, who was Sub Lieutenant, Beat a Trumpet for ſounding a March, ſeeing the Mareſchal come up to the Squadron; and he forbid the Gendarmes drawing their

their Swords; yet the Mareſchal did not complain, becauſe he knew it was not his Due. Monſieur *de la Salle* and he were then at Variance, for otherwiſe I believe Monſieur *de la Salle* would not have obſerv'd all that Formality.

Chap. VI. *What an Officer is to obſerve in an Enemy's Country.*

I Do not here pretend to preſcribe Rules in all Caſes, that is abſolutely impoſſible in any Condition, and chiefly in War, where the Nature of the Place for the moſt part decides what is to be done, and the Number of the Enemies muſt preſcribe what Courſe to take upon the Spot. However, there are ſome certain Things that are always to be done, whatſoever the Nature of the Place, or the Number of the Enemies, may be. For Example, when a Man is at the Head of a Troop, or Squadron of Horſe, it would be want of Judgment to keep along the edge of a Wood; he muſt keep as far off as he can, becauſe the Strength of the Horſe conſiſts in keeping the open Plain, and the Strength of the Foot in keeping a Wood. A Foot Officer in my Opinion is harder put to it in a March; for if he keeps too near to the Wood, it is to be fear'd that the Enemy may lye in Ambuſh there, and cut him off; and if he keeps too far off, there is as much Danger that a Party of Horſe may fall upon, and bear him down, before he can make to a Place of Safety. Therefore an Officer of Foot, when he marches in a cloſe Country, muſt be ſo Diſcreet as not to March

in

in the midſt of the Plain, nor too near the Wood, which will give him Time to take the beſt Courſe, and prevent his being Beaten; or at leaſt if he is Beaten, it will be in Form. If he is attack'd by Horſe, he muſt Retire to the Wood, and Skirmiſh all the Way, till he is got into it; for if once he can get in he is ſure they will not Attack him there. If on the other Hand he has to do with Foot, and is not the Strongeſt, he muſt endeavour to recover the laſt Defile he paſs'd, and drawing up within it, muſt maintain his Ground as long as he is able; but if he perceives he cannot withſtand long before he is forc'd, then ſhall he Retire to another Defile, ſacrificing ſome few Soldiers to favour his Retreat. The Cavalry, when hard ſet, muſt uſe the ſame Method. When they March in an Enemy's Country they muſt do like Travellers, who obſerve what Places they paſs by, that they may not miſtake when they come back; and one may ſay, that when a Man has a little Judgment, and knows the Country, it is almoſt impoſſible for him to be Beaten. He muſt as he Marches ſend out Scouts before, and direct them what they are to do. It is not the Duty of Scouts to Ride full Speed towards the Enemy, as many very indiſcreetly do; but if they diſcover any thing they muſt ſend an Account of it to him that Commands the Party, and march on gently a Foot Pace till they receive his Orders. When they have Orders to Charge, they muſt go upon a Trot, becauſe that chears the Heart, and rouzes the Courage. When the Scouts come to a Village, they muſt not paſs through without examining it, for the Enemies might lye conceal'd there, and let them paſs to have the better Opportunity of falling upon the main Body. In this Caſe he that Com-

Commands the Scours muſt take One or Two of the People of the Village, and enquire of them what News? If they ſay none, as is very uſual, he muſt not relye on their Word, but carry them away beyond the Village as Hoſtages, which is the Way to make them ſpeak the Truth, and therefore he muſt not diſmiſs them till he ſees all his Party out of Danger, and in order to it muſt wait for the Troop or Squadron about a Muſket-ſhot from the Village; and if it happens that they have deceiv'd him, he may, according to the Law of Arms, kill them upon the Spot. He who Commands a Party muſt take Care he Detaches a Diſcreet Man to Command the Scouts. If the Scouts are but Twelve or Fifteen, they Detach but Two before them, and theſe Two muſt look out to the Right and Left; if any thing appears they Ride upon a Trot, and not on a Gallop, to ask who they are for? The Scouts ſupports them, and the Party ſuſtains the Scouts. The ſtrongeſt generally make the weakeſt anſwer firſt; but there are ſome Obſtinate Perſons that will not ſpeak a Word, which has given occaſion to ſeveral of the ſame Party to Charge one another.

It is better to Encamp in an Enemy's Country, than to Quarter in a Village, becauſe the Soldiers find no Conveniency to Debauch under the Hedge, as they do in a Houſe; and they will rather venture Hanging than forbear Drinking; ſo that there is little to be expected from them, if any Surprize ſhould happen; and therefore they are not always to be well provided for when it may be, for they are more Serviceable under ſome Want than in Plenty.

When they come to the Place they deſign to Encamp on, the Men muſt be drawn up, and after the

the Guards are posted, the Horse are permitted to dismount, and the Foot to rest them. They must always face the next Town of the Enemies; and if possible, there should be a Defile in the Front, and another in the Rear, and both of them Guarded to prevent Surprize. If the Danger be Imminent they are to be under Arms all Night; and for the more Security, Parties Patroul about every half Hour. At break of Day the Scouts are sent out again, who go farther than those in the Night, and when they return the Party may march on. I would advise the Foot to lye in the Woods when they are to march Two or Three Days through an Enemy's Country, because it is much safer. The Horse may do the same to prevent being discover'd; but both of them must cause the Wood to be search'd before they venture into it, because an Ambush might be laid there, and they would fall into it on a suddain.

I have known Officers defeated for want of these Precautions. Nor must a Captain suffer his Men to disperse, because he is near the Place he is bound for, because there the Enemies often lay their Ambushes, hoping, as it too often happens, that there the Men thinking themselves in Safety, will be found in Disorder. But besides the Danger of permitting the Men to quit their Ranks, it is a very shameful Sight to come up to the Gates of a Town with half one's Party, and to be oblig'd to go in without them, or to wait till they come up. The Officer that does so can never expect to gain much Reputation, nor to be the better belov'd by his Soldiers; for tho' the Liberty he allows be pleasing to them, yet they despise him, seeing he has so little Regard to his Duty.

An

An Officer muſt be ſure never to be alarm'd without good Grounds; I mean, he muſt not fancy he ſees Enemies, when they are only Cattle or Trees; for tho' this may be the fault of the Eyes, yet People being generally apt to take things in the worſt Senſe, they attribute it to Fear, and there is nothing more difficult than to efface theſe Impreſſions. Therefore before he affirms any thing, he muſt be ſo ſure that he cannot be deceiv'd. Yet have I ſeen Officers that commanded Scouts, who have ſent Word they diſcover'd Enemies, and when the Commander went up to them to ſatisfie himſelf he found no Enemies but in their Imagination. When an Officer has once done this he is laugh'd at as long as he lives, and muſt never expect it will be forgot or forgiven him. No Man muſt ever report a thing he has not ſeen himſelf, or truſt to the Relation of another, for it would be a ſorry Excuſe after giving a falſe Alarm to lay the fault upon another.

A Lieutenant of the Regiment of *Chau*, who was apt to ſee Double, one Day commanded a Detachment that was to ſuſtain the Scouts, and was himſelf ſupported by a ſtronger Party than that he commanded. The Country through which he march'd was all enclos'd with Ditches and Hedges, ſo that there was no going far without paſſing ſeveral Defiles. There fell ſuch a Storm of Rain at the ſame time, that a Stream over which it paſt hapned to be ſo ſwell'd, that he had like to have been drown'd going into it. He made a Halt to draw up his Men on the edge of the Stream, and looking beyond it, fancy'd he ſaw the Enemy Charge and Rout the Scouts. The Rain ceaſing a little, he perceiv'd at a Diſtance a Shep-

herd's Cote and Sheepfold, as alſo Two or Three Carts loaded with Corn in the Straw, which was carrying to the Barn. He taking the Carts for as many Squadrons, and the Sheepfold for a Battalion, ſent Word to the Officer who ſuſtain'd him that all the Scouts had been either kill'd or taken, and therefore it was the ſafeſt Courſe to retire ſpeedily, becauſe the Enemies were ſtronger than they. He who commanded the Party was a young Man of no Experience, ſo that relying altogether on him, he turn'd back without examining any farther. When he came to the Camp he told the General what had happen'd to him, and gave ſuch a plauſible Account of the imaginary Danger he had been in, that every Body thought he had great Luck to eſcape. But as every Body was talking of the Misfortune of the Scouts, whom they thought Dead, they were much Surpriz'd to ſee them return ſafe to the Camp, and every Body ran to them to enquire how they could eſcape ſo great a Danger; but they anſwering they knew of none, it appear'd that all the Fault was in the Officers; ſo that the General coming to hear of it, he caus'd them both to be put in Arreſt in the Cuſtody of the Provoſt, reſolving to bring them to their Trial. Some Friends interceding for them, they were taken out of the Hands of the Provoſt, and brought to a Court Marſhal, where the Captain and Lieutenant were both broke, and the latter had like to have come off worſe, becauſe in affirming that the Scouts were beaten, he had reflected on the Cornet that commanded them, who was a Young Man of Quality, and reſented the Matter. In ſhort, a Man muſt be careful, not only of what he does, but what he ſays, becauſe he will not be ſuffer'd to go unpuniſh'd if he takes away another Man's Honour by his ill Tongue.

As

As dangerous as it is to be frighted, or take an Alarm without good Cauſe, it is no leſs ſo to run into Danger indiſcreetly, becauſe Indiſcretion ſullies the Beauty of Brave Actions. An Officer is no more to place a Brutal Confidence in his Valour, than to ſuffer himſelf to be ſeiz'd with a pannick Fear of the Enemy. Both Extreams are equally blameable, as will appear by the following Example. The Marquis of *Genlis*, Colonel of Horſe, coming to *Tongres* in the Year 1663, had a Convoy granted him to go to *Maſeyk*. He had Fifty Horſe, commanded by a Captain, a Lieutenant, a Cornet and a Quarter-maſter. When the Troop was out of the Town the Captain detatch'd his Scouts, under a Cornet who was very Brave, but had not ſo much Conduct as Courage; ſo that never regarding what he run himſelf into, he got himſelf into a Cauſeway, without diſcovering on the Right and Left. He had not march'd 200 Paces on it when he diſcover'd a ſtrong Squadron on his Left, and before him a Party of Fifty or Sixty Men, who lying flat on their Faces, ſtarted up as ſoon as he was got on far enough on the Cauſeway. He halted, and deſign'd to turn back, but ſaw the like Number of Foot behind him with their Pieces preſented. In this Extremity he follow'd the Dictates of his Courage, which was to charge thoſe that were before him, and Fortune ſeconding his Boldneſs, he rode over them, and kill'd the commanding Officer with his Piſtol. This done, he held on his Way to *Maſeyk*, whilſt the Marquiſs *de Genlis*, who had been Witneſs to the Action, and did not think fit to face ſo great a Number of Enemies, return'd to *Tongres*, where giving an account of what had happen'd, the

Cornet's Valour was applauded, and his Indiſcretion blam'd.

It is fit, as I obſerv'd above, ſpeaking of the Lieutenant *de la Chau*, who had like to have been puniſh'd for accuſing a Cornet of not doing his Duty, that an Officer forbear Detraction, becauſe it is odious to all Men; not but that we are well enough pleas'd to hear our Neighbours ill-ſpoken of; but it is moſt certain that he who rails is never belov'd; and beſides, he brings himſelf into a Thouſand Quarrels by it. It is the General Deſign of thoſe who leſſen the Reputation of others to raiſe their own upon its Ruins; but they do not reflect that the Event is quite contrary; for inſtead of gaining Eſteem, they give Cauſe to ſuſpect their own Virtue. Men do not uſually beſtow their Eſteem on Words, which is for the moſt part to be acquir'd by commendable Actions. I have always obſerv'd they are the beſt Men who never ſpeak ill of their Neighbours. Marſhal *Turenne* could not endure to hear any one ill-ſpoken of; and I have heard him an Hundred times take the Part of thoſe he knew but little of, and reprove thoſe that ſpoke ill of them. When an Officer had the ill Fortune to be beaten, to prevent his being accus'd of Cowardice, he would give him the Command of another Party, and if he hapned to be worſted a Second time, he would detach him again till he had got his Revenge, and then taking a Pleaſure in juſtifying him, he would relate the Particulars of his laſt Action in ſuch Manner as remov'd all the ill Opinion that had been conceiv'd of him before. He us'd to ſay, a Man ought not to be valu'd the leſs for having been beaten; and if they muſt all loſe their Reputation who

who had been defeated, he muſt have loſt his long ſince.

Chap. XIII. *What a new Officer is to do when firſt he comes into the Army.*

WHen a young Man who has never been in the Army comes into the Camp he is in a Maze. He hears a ſort of Language ſpoke he was never us'd to before, and ſometimes it is long before it becomes familiar to him. The Camp Guard, the Picket, the Standard Guard, the orderly Duty, the General's Guard, the Main Guard, the Bivac, are new Words to him, and he would not underſtand them, unleſs they were explain'd to him. The Camp Guard is that on which all the Army relies; it has its ſeveral Poſts by Day and by Night. The Poſts by Day are very remote from the Camp, and on the Way the Enemy may come, to the end, that if any thing appears the Army may have timely Notice, and be under Arms. Its Poſts by Night are near the Army, that it may not be cut off by the Enemy. In the Day-time this Guard generally diſmounts, and detatches a ſmall Party beyond it, and that little Guard Poſts Vedets, either One, Two or more, as there is Occaſion. This little Guard alſo diſmounts, and only the Vedets ſit a Horſeback, and are reliev'd every Hour. There is alſo a Vedet poſted next the Army, which only ſerves to take notice whether the Generals come; for then all the Guard is oblig'd to mount, and to receive

them with Sword in Hand, unleſs there be expreſs Orders not to do it. The General, Lieutenant Generals, Major Generals, and Generals of the Horſe, are all to be ſaluted with Sword in Hand. In the Night the Guard is not to diſmount, yet keeps a ſmall advanc'd Guard, beyond it, as in the Day; but a Vedet muſt be poſted betwixt it and the ſmall Guard, with Orders to liſten carefully if he can hear any thing, and to make haſte to the Guard to give an Account of what it is. He who commands the ſmall Guard is to give Information of what he diſcovers to the Commander of the great Guard, and he to the General of the Horſe. Some Officers, to eaſe both Men and Horſes, keep but one Rank a Horſeback, and relieve it every Hour; but that ought not to be done, eſpecially if the Enemy be near. He that commands the ſmall Guard muſt not ſuffer any Man to diſmount on any Account whatſoever. The Vedets that are poſted at Night muſt be double, becauſe being Two together they will not ſo eaſily fall aſleep. They are reliev'd every Hour; but before they return to the Squadron they are made to go out upon Diſcovery, and then they have a Word and a Signal given them, that no Diſorder may happen if they chance to meet. There are very nice Accidents that ſometimes happen to Officers when they are upon Guard. I have known Vedets in *Flanders* deſert to the Enemy, who was but a quarter of a League from us. In this Caſe the Word before given muſt be chang'd, and the General of the Horſe muſt have Notice given him of the Deſertion, for then they ſeldom fail of being attack'd, the Enemy endeavouring to make their Advantage of the Word they have got. The ſame Precaution muſt be

us'd

us'd when they happen to take any of the Scouts, becauſe it is to be fear'd they may extort the Word from him, and then contrive all Ways to ſurprize the Guard. The Officer that commands the Guard muſt never diſmount, but muſt viſit his little advanc'd Guard and his Vedets every Quarter of an Hour, to ſee if all things are as they ſhould be. But if he cannot overcome Sleep, he muſt deſire the Officer next in Command to have a ſharp Eye whilſt he takes a little Reſt, and to awake him in caſe any thing happens. It is generally about break of Day that the Enemies make any Attempt, and then as ſoon as any thing appears he muſt ſend the General Notice; but he muſt never quit his Poſt tho' he be never ſo eager to fight; for the Guard is plac'd only for the ſecurity of the Camp, and it will ſhow he knows not his Duty if he offers to fight, unleſs he is attack'd. However, if the Enemy attacks any ſmall advanc'd Guard he muſt haſte to ſuſtain it; the Reaſon is, becauſe we are attack'd when the Poſts we are to Guard are ſet upon. Yet if there be Two little advanc'd Guards, and one of them be attack'd, the other is not to ſtir, for fear leaſt whilſt they go to Succour the other, the Enemy may paſs that Poſt; therefore they muſt wait for Orders from the Commandant of the Guard, and he is to decide what is to be done.

There being commonly more than one Guard for the Security of the Camp, if one of them is attack'd the others are not to concern themſelves to relieve it, for the ſame Reaſon before alledg'd. The ſame is to be obſerv'd when any Alarm happens; and tho' every Man is oblig'd to be under Arms at the Head of the Camp, he muſt take Care not to run where he hears the firing. We

muſt not ſuffer our hot Temper to make us march without Orders; and it is enough for every one to be in a Readineſs to do what he is commanded. In *France* the King's Houſhold did not uſe to Mount the Camp Guard, but now they do all Duty, like the other Troops, to enure them to know the Fatigue. When an Enemy appears, and the General is going to Charge them, the Guard may demand its Due, which is to Charge firſt. Thus much of the Camp Guard, which is reliev'd every Twenty Four Hours; and the Officer that relieves it has always his Sword in his Hand, and takes the Right Hand of him that is reliev'd.

As for the Picket, they are Detachments that remain in the Camp, and are always ready to march where they are commanded. Therefore thoſe of the Cavalry are always Booted, and their Horſes Saddled. Theſe are abſolutely neceſſary in a Camp, where Alarms may happen every Moment, for by this Means there are always Men in a Readineſs to run where there is any Need, and a General cannot be ſurpriz'd. The Buſineſs of the Picket when the Army Decamps is to look to the Ways, and to ſee ſuch Care taken of them that the march of the Army may not be retarded.

The Standard Guard is at the Head of every Regiment of Horſe, to guard the Standards. The Troopers on it are to be Booted with Sword in Hand when upon Duty, tho' they are afoot. The Duty of this Guard during the Night is to ſee that nothing be done in the Regiment that is Indecent, and to ſee nothing is loſt. The Colonel has generally a Trooper of the Standard Guard to ſtand Sentinel before his Tent, and he is reliev'd every

every Hour, as the reſt are; yet this is a thing rather Authoriz'd by Cuſtom, than a Rule in War.

Orderly Duty, is a Man detach'd from every Regiment of Horſe, to the General of the Horſe's Tent, to ſtay there and carry Orders. Thus if any haſty Affair occurs, he ſends them back to their Regiments, and thoſe Regiments are under Arms immediately.

The General's Guard is to Honour his Character; there are only Foot on it, and always commanded by a Captain; the Lieutenant and Major Generals have their Guards, but they are mounted by Subalterns. The General always makes the Officer of his Guard dine with him; and tho' there be never ſo much Company his Place is always preſerv'd. This Guard is taken in Courſe like the reſt, and reliev'd every Twenty-four Hours.

The great Guard, and the Guard ordinary, are thoſe that ſerve for the Guard of the Camp. The great Guard is that which is mounted by Regiments, or half Regiments, according to the Number of Men that is requiſite, and the Standards are carry'd to it; but there are never any at the Guard Ordinary, becauſe it is made up of ſeveral Corps. The great Guard; and the Guard ordinary, have ſeveral Poſts during the Day, but at Night they join, and then if there be neither Colonel nor Major, the eldeſt Captain commands them both. A Trooper that offers to deſert to the Enemy when he is upon Guard, or on the Veder, is more ſeverely puniſh'd than if he does it at another Time, if taken. All Deſerters are hang'd, tho' not upon Guard; but thoſe that are have ſome further Puniſhment added. At *Liſle* I ſaw a

Swisser for this Offence condemn'd to have his Nose and Ears cut off, and then to be hang'd. I have seen others run the Gantlet before hanging; that is, to run along with their Back naked between Two Ranks of Men, who have each a good Ozier, or such Rod, in their Hands, and lay them on without Mercy, because the Officers stand by to observe any that shall spare the Criminal, and will punish him severely. This is the Difference betwixt deserting to the Enemy off the Guard, or at another time, for they all suffer Death, as has been said. As for the hanging of Deserters, I saw a remarkable Instance of it during the Campaign in *Holland*, where a Captain of the *Italian* Royal Regiment being taken with his whole Company, which he was carrying over to the Enemy, he and all his Men were hang'd at *Emerick*.

There is another Guard call'd the Brivac, only us'd at Sieges, and when the Enemy is strong, or near us. No Man is exempted from it, but the whole Army mounts it together, or else one half of it, as Necessity seems to require. It does not last Twenty four Hours, like the others, for it mounts at Night, and goes off in the Morning. It is always kept very exactly, especially when there are yet no Lines of Circumvallation; for when they are finish'd there is much more Rest. There being no need of so great a Number to lye upon the *Bivac*.

An Officer that desires to understand these Guards, must get a Horseback every Day, and be upon the Parade where they Rendevouz. There he will find a considerable Number of the Army Officers, the General of the Horse, Colonels, Brigadeers, Majors, and Lieutenant Generals. He must

muſt one Day follow the great Guard, and the next Day the Guard ordinary, to ſee how they Mount and Diſmount, that when it comes to his Turn he may know how to do it. When he is commanded on the Guard ordinary, he muſt gather the Men of his Regiment at the Head of the Camp half an Hour before the time appointed, and lead them to the Rendevouz, that the General of the Horſe may find him there when he comes, and obſerve his Readineſs for the Service; beſides, it is fitter you ſhould wait for him than he for you. Such ſmall Precautions as this will gain a Man the Reputation of a good Officer, for very-often exactneſs in Duty is more uſeful than all he can do in Fight. There are abundance of Men that do not want for Bravery, and ſome Conduct, but there are few that will take all the neceſſary Pains to ſee others do their Duty. So whenever an Officer is detach'd for any other Service, he muſt always be the firſt under Arms, becauſe the Soldiers following his Example, ſtrive to do their Duty well, when they ſee him do it. They are ſevere Judges of all our Actions, and if we fail, either in point of Courage or Conduct, they are the firſt that ſhall find fault among themſelves; therefore a Man had need be very exact in all that relates to the Service, for his own Honour and Reputation, and not to bate them an Ace. At other times, when not upon Duty, they may be treated with all manner of Affection, for if they happen to abuſe it, there are ways to reduce them. I have always found by my own Experience, that a little Kindneſs towards them was better than a great deal of Severity, and I never found they grew upon my Eaſineſs.

An

An Officer muſt never ſuffer his Men to rob without puniſhing them; but as ſoon as Complaint is made to him, or Information brought, muſt be ſure to do exemplary Juſtice on them. However, he may well ſpare them the Shame of confeſſing their Crime; and I have often caus'd what was ſtole to be reſtor'd, without any Body knowing who committed the Theft, or that I was acquainted with it. I order'd what was taken to be dropp'd as we march'd; and I was ſo abſolute, that immediately he who had loſt it, found it again in the Rear of the Squadron. This is convenient in the Horſe particularly, where the Men ſeem to have a little more Senſe of Honour than the Foot; and therefore we ſee the Troopers are otherwiſe treated than the Foot Soldiers; the latter are often Caned, but the former never are, or at leaſt ought not to be. The Practice is to ſtrike them with the flat of the Sword; and I would adviſe an Officer to uſe even that as little as may be; becauſe a Man that has never ſo little Honour cannot bear to be ſtruck, and that often makes them Deſert. I have known a Trooper complain to the General that his Officer had Can'd him, and the General reprimanded the Officer, bidding him be better Temper'd for the future. I never ſtruck a Trooper, and yet I never fail'd but twice of making them reſtore what they had taken.

The beſt Thing an Officer can do when he enters upon the Service is to expreſs great Averſion for Thieves, and uſe much Severity in puniſhing them. This curbs a Soldier; and tho' he have never ſo much Inclination to ſteal, he goes about it with a Dread; when he knows his Officer will not connive at it. Some Officers think they can never have

have a good Troop unleſs they allow them ſome Liberty in this ſort; but we muſt make this Diſtinction, that when we are in an Enemy's Country ſomething may be allow'd them, but in all other Places we are anſwerable before God and Man for all Robberies committed upon thoſe that are ſubject to us. A Captain, who had ſerv'd long, and was a very upright Man, being ask'd by ſome that were not ſo Nice as himſelf, Why he would not ſuffer his Men to take ſo much as a Fowl? Anſwer'd, Becauſe I have Sins enough of my own, without burdening my ſelf with other Mens. In ſhort, the Captain that ſuffers the Widow and the Orphan to be plunder'd muſt make Reſtitution either in this World, or in the next, tho' he had no Share in the Robbery. The Prince of *Conti*, whoſe Converſion all *France* had Reaſon to admire, caus'd all the Damages done by the Army he commanded in *Catalonia* to be repaid. We cannot be too cautious in this Particular, on which Salvation depends; and ſince, as I ſaid elſewhere, all Men have ſome Dread of God's Judgments, an Officer is concern'd to ſee his Men do not go upon Service loaded with Guilt, leſt they go with Fear; he is to conquer or die with them; and what can he expect if they have a Dread upon them before they ſee the Enemy?

An Officer muſt never ſuffer his Men to rob without puniſhing them; but as ſoon as Complaint is made to him, or Information brought, muſt be ſure to do exemplary Juſtice on them. However, he may well ſpare them the Shame of confeſſing their Crime; and I have often caus'd what was ſtole to be reſtor'd, without any Body knowing who committed the Theft, or that I was acquainted with it. I order'd what was taken to be dropp'd as we march'd; and I was ſo abſolute, that immediately he who had loſt it, found it again in the Rear of the Squadron. This is convenient in the Horſe particularly, where the Men ſeem to have a little more Senſe of Honour than the Foot; and therefore we ſee the Troopers are otherwiſe treated than the Foot Soldiers; the latter are often Caned, but the former never are, or at leaſt ought not to be. The Practice is to ſtrike them with the flat of the Sword; and I would adviſe an Officer to uſe even that as little as may be; becauſe a Man that has never ſo little Honour cannot bear to be ſtruck, and that often makes them Deſert. I have known a Trooper complain to the General that his Officer had Can'd him, and the General reprimanded the Officer, bidding him be better Temper'd for the future. I never ſtruck a Trooper, and yet I never fail'd but twice of making them reſtore what they had taken.

The beſt Thing an Officer can do when he enters upon the Service is to expreſs great Averſion for Thieves, and uſe much Severity in puniſhing them. This curbs a Soldier; and tho' he have never ſo much Inclination to ſteal, he goes about it with a Dread; when he knows his Officer will not connive at it. Some Officers think they can never have

have a good Troop unleſs they allow them ſome Liberty in this ſort; but we muſt make this Diſtinction, that when we are in an Enemy's Country ſomething may be allow'd them, but in all other Places we are anſwerable before God and Man for all Robberies committed upon thoſe that are ſubject to us. A Captain, who had ſerv'd long, and was a very upright Man, being ask'd by ſome that were not ſo Nice as himſelf, Why he would not ſuffer his Men to take ſo much as a Fowl? Anſwer'd, Becauſe I have Sins enough of my own, without burdening my ſelf with other Mens. In ſhort, the Captain that ſuffers the Widow and the Orphan to be plunder'd muſt make Reſtitution either in this World, or in the next, tho' he had no Share in the Robbery. The Prince of *Conti*, whoſe Converſion all *France* had Reaſon to admire, caus'd all the Damages done by the Army he commanded in *Catalonia* to be repaid. We cannot be too cautious in this Particular, on which Salvation depends; and ſince, as I ſaid elſewhere, all Men have ſome Dread of God's Judgments, an Officer is concern'd to ſee his Men do not go upon Service loaded with Guilt, leſt they go with Fear; he is to conquer or die with them; and what can he expect if they have a Dread upon them before they ſee the Enemy?

Chap. XIV. *What an Officer is to do when the Command that was his Due is given to another, or he is commanded out of Courſe.*

THere are ſeveral Sorts of Commands in War; in ſome of them there is Honour to be gain'd, in others nothing to be had but Trouble. Theſe laſt every Man avoids as much as may be, and cares not to go upon them out of Courſe, the others are earneſtly ſought after, and never refus'd. Howſoever, if an Officer is commanded upon a Guard of Fatigue he muſt not refuſe to obey, becauſe the Service muſt not be retarded; when he is reliev'd he may complain, and then he that put him on wrongfully is check'd.

Yet I would not adviſe him to trouble his Superiour Officer with it the firſt time, eſpecially a young Man, who ought to be always ready, becauſe he may be thought ſlothful; and therefore unleſs he perceives he is often put upon, he had better only adviſe the Perſon who does him the Wrong to let every one do his Duty in his Turn, or elſe he will complain to the Colonel. As for Commands of Honour, an Officer cannot be put by them without doing him great Wrong, and therefore he is not to put it up when an Adjutant, who knows it his Turn, ſends another in his Place. He muſt complain, and can never fail of having Juſtice done him. But ſometimes there are poſitive Orders from the General to ſend another, which is a great Misfortune, and ſhews no great Account is made of him that is put by.

How-

Howſoever, it is to be obſerv'd, that if he who is commanded be a known Partizan, that is no Detriment to another, becauſe it is now grown cuſtomary to make choice of them before all others, their Profeſſion of Partizans being Ground enough to ſatisfie all Perſons that they know ſomething more than others. Every Man, if he pleaſes, may follow their Example, and ſettle himſelf on the ſame Foot in the Army; but in my Opinion it is a very Nice Employment; for beſides that, it requires much Prudence and Conduct; a Man muſt be fortunate; and I dare affirm that a Partizan is more valu'd for the Succeſs of his Undertakings, than for the Method he uſes.

Yet, as I have ſaid, a Man may ſet up for a Partizan when he pleaſes; but I do not find he is likely to get much Honour, or to advance his Fortune, unleſs he be very lucky; for we muſt ſuppoſe that the Generals do not value a Partizan any further than he is uſeful to them, and brings many Priſoners, otherwiſe he is deſpis'd, and perhaps laugh'd at. Nevertheleſs he who is reſolv'd to riſe in a very ſhort time muſt not be ſtartled at theſe Difficulties; for if he ſucceeds he may ſoon make his Fortune; and whatever happens he is ſure to make himſelf known; but in this Caſe he muſt be ſure to Charge, whether he is ſtrong or weak; becauſe as he is an Adventurer he muſt leave much to Fortune; and every Body would laugh at him ſhould he let the Enemy go off without Fighting. I know one that is now a great Lord, who when he firſt came into the Service had ſome Jeſts put upon him for not obſerving this Rule. He had commanded Two or Three Parties, and done nothing, and the Fourth Time meeting the Enemies ſomewhat ſtronger than himſelf, he retir'd

tir'd into a Wood, and ſent to Marſhal *Turenne* to deſire ſome Foot to bring him off. Monſieur *de Turenne* ſent him Word, That a Partizan muſt not ask for Aſſiſtance, eſpecially when he had been Three Times before abroad without drawing his Sword; that he might do as he pleas'd, but he would ſend him no Relief. He who gives the firſt Onſet in the Night for the moſt part gets the better, becauſe the Darkneſs hindring the Enemy from diſcerning what Number he has with him, he is ſuppos'd to be ſtronger than he really is. When a Man meets a Party abroad he muſt take heed of being impos'd on by fair Speeches; ſometimes the weakeſt pretend to belong to the ſame Army with the others, and by that Means eſcape out of their Enemies Hands, and ſometimes they make a better Advantage of our Credulity. Therefore tho' at firſt they ſay they are of the ſame Side, the Officer muſt ſtill ſtand upon his Guard till what they ſay appears to be true; for as the Proverb ſays, *Miſtruſt is the Mother of Security.* In the Year 1668 an Officer of Horſe being abroad with 40 Horſe, met a Party of the Enemy of about the ſame Force. The Scouts asking, Who they were for? They anſwer'd, For *France.* Which the *French* taking for granted, they dropt their Carabines, and came up friendly to them; but the Enemy firing on them when they leaſt thought of it, ſome were killed, and the reſt taken.

This ſhows that an Officer muſt never be too credulous, but always upon his Guard, and not quit his Arms as ſoon as they ſay they are for his Side, but enquire what Regiment they belong to, what Brigade, their Officers Names, and put ſo many Queſtions that the Truth may be known from Falſhood. Some there are that make uſe of other

other Mens Paſſes to compaſs their Deſigns, which is a ſubtle Artifice, and nicely to be look'd after, for fear of being deceiv'd; for a Paſs may fall into the Enemy's Hands, and who knows but they may make uſe of it to enſnare thoſe they have to do with. The following Example will make it appear that this is not impoſſible, and by it every Man may take Warning. A Lieutenant of a *Swiſs* Regiment that was in Garriſon at *Maeſtricht*, being ſent abroad with a Party in the Year 1675, met another Party of the Enemy, which he put to Flight, killing the Officer that commanded it. Among other Papers found about the Dead Man they brought him his Paſs, which he put into his Pocket, without conſidering it might be of any Uſe to him, and went away to lye cloſe in another Place; but as he was marching he met a Party of Horſe of the Garriſon of *Luxemburg*, and finding himſelf too weak, had Recourſe to Artifice, ſaying he was of their Side, and ſhewing the Paſs he had to gain Credit. The Enemy's Officer believing all was true, put up his Arms, and ſuſpecting nothing, they both march'd friendly along together to a Village, where the Horſe Officer deſign'd to refreſh his Men. He put all the Horſes into the Church-yard, and having poſted his Vedets, went himſelf, with moſt of the Troopers, into an Inn, as if all had been ſafe. The *Swiſs* perceiving he had a good Opportunity to make a good Hand of him, left Part of his Men in the Church-Yard, and went away with the reſt to the Inn; where finding the Officer and his Men at Dinner, he took them all without any Oppoſition, and return'd with many Horſes and Priſoners to *Maeſtricht*, where he got great Reputation by this Action.

The

The Troops that are in Garriſon, and go abroad upon Parties for ſeveral Days, always take Paſſes with them, otherwiſe they might be look'd upon as Robbers. However, theſe Paſſes are but for a certain Time, and when that is expir'd they muſt retire, unleſs they will run the Hazard of being hang'd; for if they fall into the Enemy's Hands, they do not look upon them as Regular Troops, but as Stroulers, that would abuſe their Character, and make their Advantage of it. As for Parties detach'd from the Army they have no need of Paſſes, unleſs they go very far into the Enemy's Country, for then they will need it as much as if they were in Garriſon. The Reaſon of it is, becauſe when they go very far, they are generally but very few, as 5, 7, 9, or the like, and without they had a Paſs it would be a hard Matter to know whether they were Robbers or Enemies.

Chap. XV. *Of Parties, and the neceſſary Precautions to be us'd upon them.*

HAving ſpoken of Parties in the laſt Chapter, I will in this conclude the Obſervations I have made on that Point. He that would make a good Partizan muſt of Neceſſity be acquainted with the Ways and Places of Ambuſh; for when a Man muſt truſt to a Guide he is in Danger of being beaten. Guides are generally Natives of the Country where the War then is, and what Confidence can be plac'd in them when they ſee all their Country ruin'd? Beſides, when a Partizan marches he muſt never go the ſtrait Way, but winding

winding to the Right and Left, to deceive the Enemy; the only way to be ſure being to ſuppoſe they have always Spies abroad, and to uſe the ſame Precautions as if he were purſu'd. An Ambuſh muſt never be laid but in the Night; and the Place muſt be firſt well examin'd, to prevent many Inconveniences that may otherwiſe happen. When Vedets or Sentinels are plac'd, it muſt be ſo that the Enemy may not diſcover them; and they muſt always be double. If they are Vedets, they muſt never be permitted to Diſmount upon any Account whatſoever. The reſt of the Party, if they are Cavalry, muſt alſo keep Mounted, becauſe if an Enemy were near, it would take up too much Time to Mount; and beſides, the Noiſe they muſt make would give the Enemy Notice to get off. If they are Foot they muſt continue under Arms; for if the Soldiers were permitted to reſt they would fall aſleep, and it would be troubleſome waking of them upon Occaſion; beſides that, the Senſes being aſleep as well as the Body, they are the more ſuſceptible of Fear. Stone-horſes are of no Uſe upon Parties; for whereas it is abſolutely requiſite that the Enemies do not diſcover an Ambuſh, the neighing of Stone-horſes may diſcover what ought to be conceal'd.

Whilſt an Officer is in Ambuſh he muſt ſee that ſtrict Silence be kept; he muſt often march through the Ranks, to ſee his Men be awake; he muſt not ſend out Scouts to diſcover in the Night, but do it in the Morning before he breaks out of his Ambuſh; it is commonly done before Sunriſing, unleſs upon contrary Orders, or if he is not ſo ſtrong, but he has Cauſe to fear. The reaſon of it is for fear, if the Party ſtaid longer, the Enemy

Enemy might have Notice given them, and cut off its Retreat, and therefore, as has been ſaid, it is beſt not to return the ſame Way they came. They muſt march very cautiouſly till they are in the Camp; for as the Enemy often place their Ambuſhes juſt by the Gates of a Garriſon, ſo they do juſt at the Entrance into the Camp, imagining the Nearneſs will make Officers the more careleſs of their Duty. When an Officer has Orders to get ſome Intelligence at any Rate, he riſes out of his Ambuſh upon the firſt that comes, otherwiſe he would be in the Wrong to run after One, Two or Three, for it might be ſaid of him that he deſign'd to go upon Parties without any Danger; and there muſt be a greater Number to gain Honour, and ſome Blood muſt be ſhed to purchaſe Reputation. Not that I mean he muſt not fall upon a ſmall Company, but generally after taking ſome Priſoners it is the Method to return to the Ambuſh, and wait a more favourable Opportunity of doing ſomewhat honourable. He muſt not Salley out till the Enemies are ſo near that they cannot poſſibly eſcape; for if he ſhould ruſh out as ſoon as he ſees them, it might happen to be ſaid of him that he had no great Mind to fight.

No Man that would be look'd upon as a good Partizan muſt come home twice without bringing ſome Priſoners, for it would be a Diſgrace to him to deſire Parties only to range the Country. In my Opinion it is better to go out with a ſmall Party than a great one; and the Reaſon is, becauſe a great Body cannot well march without being diſcover'd, whereas the March of a ſmall one is eaſily conceal'd. Beſides, being a Man is not to fall on but when he pleaſes, he ſo times it that he is not to expoſe himſelf to any Inconvenience,

ence; and in caſe he is purſu'd, it is much eaſier to retire, becauſe it takes up no long time to paſs a Defilee, or to form his Squadron. For this Reaſon Marſhal *Turenne*, when he deſir'd to have certain Intelligence of the Enemy, never ſent above Seven Officers upon a Party, and ſometimes they would go 30 Leagues from the Army, and never return'd without Priſoners. It is a common Fancy that an odd Number is fortunate, and therefore all ſmall Parties are made up accordingly. Upon theſe Occaſions an Officer muſt carry a Carabine as well as the Troopers; for beſides the Diſadvantage of being worſe arm'd than another, he expoſes himſelf to the Danger of being kill'd the firſt, and by his Death defeating his Party. Soldiers do not always fight for Honour's Sake; and if their Officers were not Witneſſes of their Behaviour, they would not act altogether ſo Bravely upon all Occaſions.

He who is detach'd with a Man that is in Repute muſt be ſure to obſerve his Conduct, that being the only and ſure Means to learn his Trade; but as all Men are ſubject to Failings, it is his Part to diſtinguiſh betwixt Good and Bad. I know a Famous Partizan, who when he cannot draw the Enemy out of their Walls, never fails to put down his Breeches, and ſhow them his Backſide. I would never adviſe any Man to follow his Example, it looks too mean, and there are many other Ways to expreſs a Contempt of them. Our own Judgment is to decide whether a Man does well or ill in ſuch Things where the Service is not concern'd; and tho' it were, yet a young Officer may ſee when another is in the right, or in the wrong, becauſe in War all Undertakings are grounded on Reaſon, and Fortune is only concern'd

cern'd in the Execution. Not but that there are ſome Things which bear a double Conſtruction, and which are very hard to be decided, becauſe the Praiſe or the Blame depends on the Succeſs. Some are for preferring the ſafeſt Methods before the more honourable; for my Part I ſhall not preſume to deliver my Opinion, becauſe when the latter meets with Succeſs, the Glory of it is much the greater. What I have here ſaid may ſeem to ſome a little difficult to be underſtood without the Application, and therefore I will give and Inſtance that will make it eaſie. When Monſ. *de Rochefort* commanded the Forces at the Blockade of *Maeſtricht*, he receiv'd Orders to break it up, and he fearing the Garriſon, which conſiſted of 10000 Men, ſhould fall upon his Rear, gave Orders that all ſhould be ready to march at Midnight without Beat of Drum, or firing the Camp, to prevent the Enemy's having Notice of his Deſign. This Action was diſcreet, for the Enemy were ſtronger than thoſe that had block'd them up, and it was to be fear'd they might diſcover their own Strength, and the Weakneſs of the *French*. Yet all Men did not approve of it, and Monſ. *de Chazeron* having Orders Two Days after to take upon him the Command of thoſe Troops, and to join Monſ. *de Turenne*, he on the other Hand continu'd Two Hours drawn up in Battalia, within Cannon-ſhot of *Maeſtricht*, to draw out the Garriſon. Theſe Actions were oppoſite, and yet both had their Reaſons for what they did. Monſ. *de Rochefort* thought he could never be too ſecure as Matters then ſtood: Monſ. *de Chazeron* on the other Side thought it convenient to carry it very high for the Honour of his Nation, which at that time had done great Things, and ſtruck a Dread into its Enemies. It is not my

Part

Part to decide the Controverſie betwixt ſuch great Men; all I ſhall ſay is, that there were more that applauded Monſieur *de Chazeron* than Monſieur *de Rochefort.*

Chap. XVI. *How an Officer is to Behave himſelf in Fight.*

THERE are Two Sorts of Bravery, the one knows no Danger, the other knows and deſpiſes it. The firſt is call'd Raſhneſs, and the other true Valour. It were to be wiſh'd the Soldiers had the former, and the Officers the latter; for they ſtanding in Need of Judgment to direct others, would thus have the Diſcretion never to Engage them but upon good Grounds, and not to require any thing of them but what was Practicable. Thus an Army would become invincible, having all the Qualities requiſite to puſh on a Victory when an Opportunity was offer'd, and to avoid engaging when too Weak. Judgment is one of the moſt neceſſary Qualifications in an Officer, and that is generally known by his knowing how to Govern himſelf, eſpecially in Fight; for if a Man is of a Hot and paſſionate Temper, what good Conceit can he give others of himſelf? Will not they be apt to believe it is Fear that produces thoſe uneaſie Effects? Neither muſt he affect ſo much Calmneſs as to have that Thought, the Conſequence of Dread; for, as has been ſaid before, Soldiers are ſuſceptible of the leaſt Impreſſion, and they eaſily partake of the Cowardice of their Officers. In exhorting them to Behave themſelves well, a Man muſt ſhow them

them a Pleaſant Countenance, and encourage them in ſuch manner that it may appear he has Preſence of Mind to Command, and Courage to lead them on. At this Time he may lay aſide his uſual Gravity, and be Facetious with them; for nothing is a greater Proof of being void of Fear than this Eaſineſs of Raillery in Danger. I know one of the greateſt Lords in *France* who got much Reputation by his frequent Raillery in the Army. His Family was reckon'd to be more fond of the Court than of the Army; and therefore he being one Day in the Trenches with ſeveral Perſons of Quality, he deſir'd them to bear Witneſs that he was the firſt of his Houſe that had been in Service, and that he ſhould be oblig'd to them if they would give *Mezerai* an Account of it, that he might not forget him in his Hiſtory. It may be objected that ſuch Jeſts as this will rather gain a Man the Reputation of a Pleaſant Companion, than of a Brave Soldier; but I muſt anſwer, there are few of that Opinion; and when a Man is ſo far his own Maſter, as to Rally in Danger, it is a certain Sign that his Soul is not in Diſorder.

When the Men led on to the Charge, are forward of themſelves, they muſt rather be incourag'd by Diſcourſes that put them in Mind of Honour and Glory, than of Shame and Diſgrace. Theſe Reflections are only fit for Cowards, Brave Men will wonder they ſhould be ſuſpected of Cowardice, when they have given no Tokens of it, either in their Words or Actions. Beſides, moſt Men being full of Vanity, cannot endure to be told of their Faults; therefore it is much better not to Talk to them of any thing, but the Confidence that is repos'd in their Valour; for they believing all that is ſaid to them is really meant, for the moſt

part

Part endeavour to keep up that Reputation which has not coſt them any thing gaining. But if in Fight they ſhould make any Show of quitting their Ranks, then all other Methods may be us'd, either of Threats or Reproaches; for either may contribute much towards working a Change on them. There are many Inſtances of this Nature in Hiſtory, but having promis'd to give none but Modern Examples, I will not trouble the Reader with thoſe which are known to all Men. However, ſometimes the Soldiers Fear is above all Threats and Reproaches, and then, as has been ſaid elſewhere, rather than ſhare in their Infamy, an Officer muſt ſuffer himſelf to be taken Priſoner.

A Horſe Officer on the Day of Battle muſt take Care to be well-mounted; but I am of Opinion that the beſt Quality which belongs to a Horſe on that Occaſion is a good Mouth, for without that he can never govern him; and it is too much to be at once charg'd by the Enemy, and have his own Horſe to ſtruggle with. Beſides, his Horſe may run away with him into their Squadrons, and then his Life or his Liberty lyes at Stake. Honour is no leſs in Danger, for if the Horſe take the contrary Way, who will be able to hinder ill Tongues from laying this Accident to the account of Cowardice? Does every Body know he had an unruly Horſe? And tho' ſome did, will the reſt believe it? *Landreſſe*, Major of the Regiment of *Chau*, loſt his Life for want of this Precaution, for his Horſe being hard-mouth'd, and taking after ſome Soldier that ran away againſt the Major's Will, he found himſelf contemn'd by all the Army, ſo that to recover his Reputation he was oblig'd to expoſe himſelf too much upon the firſt Opportunity, and

had not the good Fortune to come off. And the worſt in theſe Accidents is, that a Man is not ſure by his Death to recover his Reputation; ſome aſcribing that Reſolution to Deſpair, and others to ſomething worſe.

An Officer muſt alſo take care not to ride the Fleeteſt of his Horſes on a Day of Battle, for there being many that take a Pleaſure in Expounding things in the worſt Senſe, they will ſoon give out that he choſe that Horſe to run away the faſter, and no Occaſion ought to be given for theſe Jealouſies. Yet this does not imply that he muſt not Ride a Fleet Horſe on the Day of Battle, but that he does not appear more particular in it that Day than another; for if he always rides ſuch a one at other times, why ſhould he not then? He may as well do it to purſue the Enemy as to run away.

An Officer muſt never be far before his Troop, but on the contrary, muſt be ſure to have his Horſes Buttocks within the firſt Rank, and the Ranks ſo cloſe that they may not be broke, for the Strength of the Squadron or Battalion conſiſts in keeping cloſe. In purſuing the Enemy the Squadron muſt be kept in Order of Battle, and when it comes to a Defile, make a Halt till all are paſt, and then form it again. Battalions and Squadrons are generally form'd by Files; but when it is done in the Face of an Enemy the beſt way is to form them by Ranks, becauſe a Rank is more proper to make Reſiſtance than a File; and whilſt the firſt Rank ſtands faſt, the others may be drawn up behind it without Hindrance. This is the Method always practis'd in Battles or Rencounters, and they that do otherwiſe are in the Wrong. Where there are Ditches or Hedges an Officer of Horſe muſt

muſt take Care how he goes too far from the Foot, for if he ſhould want their Aſſiſtance near him, the Enemies Foot would give a good Account of him, and therefore there are always Pelotons plac'd betwixt the Squadrons. When the Enemies are defeated, and fly full Speed, the Men muſt not be allow'd to ſtay to Plunder, for that gives the Enemy Leiſure to gain Ground, and get off ſafe. He that loves his Honour muſt conſider the publick Good depends on the entire Defeat of the Enemy, and not on a little Plunder the Soldiers get. There is a Seaſon for all things, and it is no time to Plunder when the Enemy is before them. Beſides, it is the Cauſe of many Diſaſters, for whilſt the Men are thus diſpers'd, why may not the Enemy rally, and change the Face of Affairs? Nor are we ſure their Flight is any other than a Stratagem to gain the eaſier Victory; how many Armies have forſaken their Waggons and Baggage to amuſe the Enemy, and fall upon them when they thought themſelves ſecureſt?

To conclude this Chapter I muſt add, that beſides the Reaſons abovemention'd, why Soldiers ſhould not be permitted to quit their Ranks, there is one more, which is, leſt an Officer be left quite alone. There are Rules for Plundering as well as for every thing elſe; there are generally Detachments appointed for it, whilſt the reſt make Head againſt the Enemy; they need only wait the time; but ſuch is the Greedineſs of the Soldiers, that unleſs an Officer ſtops them they will not have ſo much Patience. Thus the Army is ſecur'd; for ſhould the Enemy make any Attempt whilſt they are Plundering, thoſe that remain in order receive them, and give time to the Pillagers to come up.

Neither do they thus loſe their Booty, for they leave one of their own Men to ſecure it till they have repuls'd the Enemy. The ſame thing is to be done in regard of the Priſoners taken in the Battle, who are put into the Hands of ſome detach'd Men to ſecure them. This Article never fails; but the other being harder to keep by reaſon of the Soldiers Covetouſneſs, which is ſometimes ſo great that they mind no Command, therefore at that time nothing muſt be omitted that may make them obey, even ſo far as to kill one to bring the others to their Duty; for tho' in the laſt Chapter I ſaid Fair Means was better than Foul, yet there are ſome times when Mildneſs is very Prejudicial. And the Soldiers themſelves have the more Value for an Officer, being ſenſible when they come to themſelves, that he was in the Right, and that they oblig'd him to do as he did.

Chap. XVII. *That an Officer is to underſtand his Duty in Garriſon as well as in the Field.*

WHen the Campaign is over the Army goes into Winter Quarters. Some are put into Frontier Garriſons, and others march farther from the Enemy. Theſe laſt ſeem to have the better of the others, becauſe having no Duty to do, their only Buſineſs is to recruit themſelves, whilſt the others go on ſtill to ruin, being kept under Arms all the Winter, ſometimes for Convoys, ſometimes for Guards. However, thoſe that remain

on

on the Frontiers learn their Trade much better than the others, for there happens ſomething daily that turns to their Advantage. This proves beneficial upon many Occaſions, becauſe when any Difficulty occurrs, he is much more exact at it who has ſeen the like before, and knows the Courſe he is to take.

There are Two Sorts of Garriſons, the one on the Frontiers, and the other more Remote in the Heart of the Country; and tho' the latter ſeems not to require any great Experience, yet ſometimes Difficulties ariſe, that a Man would come off very ill, ſhould he altogether fail in them. I ſhall give ſome Inſtances of them, after ſpeaking a Word of what is to be done in Frontier Garriſons. Service is done in Frontier Places in the ſame Manner as in the Army, excepting Orders, which are not always given by the ſame Perſon, whereof I have ſaid enough before, and it is needleſs to repeat it. Every Man there is detach'd in his Turn, either to mount the Guard, or for Parties, and they go a Patroul every Night, which is rather going upon Diſcovery; but it is call'd a Patroul becauſe perform'd by Foot. The greateſt Trouble is not in ſuch Garriſons, for there they do not fear the Enemy; or if they do, all the Care lyes on the Governour; and a Man has no Care upon him, but to obey him, and do his own Duty. If any Alarm happens, the Foot run to the Ramparts, and the Horſe to the Market-Place, or to the Eſplanade, after the Town-Major has given Orders; for till then it is enough for every Officer to gather his Men, and keep them ready to march at Command. But there being often Troops poſted in Villages, or in Caſtles, which are ſo advantageouſly ſeated that there is a Neceſſity of keeping

them, it is then a Man muſt know how to behave himſelf, becauſe he has no Body to rely on. If he is poſted in a Village, he muſt ſecure all the Avenues, and fortifie himſelf in the Church, if there be any, or elſe in ſome Houſe that may be Tenable. There muſt be a Guard by Day as well as Night at the end of the Village, unleſs in be in Danger of being cut off, in which Caſe it ſhould be poſted at the Barrier. This Guard muſt be viſited every Moment, eſpecially by Night, becauſe it is generally by Night that the Enemies execute their Deſigns. Sometimes there are Orders to advance a Guard in the Day-time Five or Six Hundred Paces from the Village or Caſtle, more or leſs, according as the Country is enclos'd with Hedges or Bottoms; then muſt he take heed not to poſt it before he has ſent out to diſcover. The Scouts that go upon Diſcovery are detach'd from the Guard that is to be poſted, which continues under Arms whilſt they are abroad, as does all the reſt of the Garriſon. The Garriſon at this time is to advance to ſome convenient Place, where it continues drawn up, leaving only thoſe that are upon Guard in the Church or Caſtle, and thoſe under Arms till the Garriſon returns, which they are not to do till the Guard that is reliev'd be come back. The advanc'd Guards are always drawn off at Sun-ſetting, and the Guard in the Church or Caſtle is under Arms when it returns. There is leſs Cauſe to fear in ſuch Places than in weak Towns, becauſe the Encloſure being ſmaller, there is generally no Danger of the Enemy but on one Side; and provided a good Guard be kept there it ſeems to be ſafe enough. In weak Towns there muſt always be ſome Place to retire to in Caſe of Surprize, either to the Church, or ſome good

Houſe,

Houſe, about which all the Men muſt be quarter'd, to the end that if the Enemy ſhould ſcale the Walls they may hold out there ſome time, and obtain Articles.

I forgot to give notice that in ſuch Garriſons as theſe there muſt always be a Sentinel or Two placed in the Steeple, and Two is better than One; becauſe having the Liberty to talk together upon ſuch a Poſt, there is no Danger they ſhould fall aſleep, as One alone may do. This is what may be ſaid in Subſtance of Frontier Garriſons, for I ſhall not ſpeak of the Signals to be made to one another for Succour in time of Need, for that is according to the nearneſs of Quarters, or to the Orders an Officer has, who muſt never of his own Head quit his Garriſon upon any Pretence whatſoever. As for Garriſons or Quarters which are remote from the Enemy, and in the Heart of the Country, I ſhall now ſpeak of them; for tho' they ſeem to require no great Experience, yet they ask more than one would think, becauſe there often ariſe Conteſts between the Officers and the Inhabitants. Sometimes the Inhabitants will have the Soldiers pay like other Men, and ſometimes the Officers are for paying nothing; but the General Rule is, that where Prizes are not ſettled, the Soldiers are to pay a ſaving Price for their Proviſions; that is, not as they are generally ſold by Retail, but ſo much as they coſt by Wholeſail, that the Seller may neither be a Gainer or a Loſer. An Officer muſt take Care that his Men live frugally, and that the People do not give them whatſoever they demand; for the Soldiers Pay being ſmall, they muſt be treated according to their Purſe, and not according to their Fancy. The Inhabitants are oblig'd to truſt them till their Pay comes, and then the

Officers are to discharge the Quarters. If the Soldiers are to remove their Quarters before they are paid, then the Commanding Officer is to give the Inhabitants Billets, which are good upon the Paymaster, and stopt out of the next Pay.

Chap. XVIII. *Of the Power of Commissaries.*

THE Duty of Commissaries does not only consist in Mustering of the Forces, it also belongs to him to take an Account of Quarters of Forrage, and of all Disorders that happen upon Marches. However, an Officer who designs to do his Duty as he ought, does not trouble himself to court them, and only those do it who intend to get by it; not that I would advise to be uncivil to them, but rather that they be respected; for since they are appointed to see every Man do his Duty, it would be a Disrespect to the Prince to slight those he has made Choice of. Therefore we must not look upon their Birth, which may sometimes incline us to make small account of them, but on their Character, which deserves to be regarded. But at the same time, as the Officers are to be Courteous to the Commissaries, so they have more reason to be so to them. They must not take upon them because it is in their Power to oblige the Officers; for they cannot oblige any Man without failing in their Duty, wherein they ought to be very Nice. The Commissaries are sometimes apt to forget themselves, and think themselves

themſelves greater than they are; and there are Officers that uſe them ill, for which they bring themſelves into Trouble. *Monſieur de* St. *Simon*, a Colonel of Horſe at *Ath*, being inform'd that the Hay in the Stores was naught, went and Cudgell'd the Store-keeper, and the Commiſſary coming to take his Part, he told him, That Thieves always ſided together, which made him ſtand by the Store-keeper. The Commiſſary anſwering, He would complain to *Monſieur de Louvois*, St. *Simon* gave him other hard Words, and lifted his Hand as if he would ſtrike him; whereupon the Commiſſary knowing him to be a fiery Man, went Home, and immediately ſent his Complaint to *Monſieur de Louvois*, who order'd St. *Simon* to be confin'd for a Fortnight, and then to beg the Commiſſary's Pardon before the Head Officers of the Garriſon, which St. *Simon*, notwithſtanding all his Haughtineſs, was forc'd to ſubmit to. It is therefore beſt to have no Difference with them, for I have ſeen Officers of great Worth very near being broke for abuſing them. St. *Andre*, a Brigadier of Foot, and Lieutenant-Colonel to the Regiment of *Saux*, a Man very Brave, but extraordinary Paſſionate, Cudgell'd a Commiſſary, becauſe having ſeen him at *Perpignan*, he muſter'd his Regiment which lay in the Country about without giving him Notice of it. St. *Andre* was Suſpended for it, and had certainly been Broke, but that he had great Friends who interceeded for him, and pleaded his long Service. Theſe Extravagancies are very dangerous, and the wiſer ſort of Men forbear being guilty of them, not only towards the Commiſſaries, but towards any Perſon, tho' never ſo mean. The *Marſhal de la Ferte*, who was always of a Haughty Temper enough, deliver'd himſelf

very well to this Purpoſe. He then commanded the *French* Army in Conjunction with *Marſhal Turenne*, and they Two being at Variance, *la Ferte* one Day hapned to beat one of *Turenne*'s Guards, either to vent his Spleen, or for ſome Fault he had committed. The Guard went and complain'd to his Maſter, repreſenting the Action in the heinouſeſt Manner in hopes of Revenge, but *Turenne*, inſtead of being angry, told him he muſt needs have given *la Ferte* ſome great Provocation to uſe him ſo ill, and calling the Captain of his Guards, order'd him to carry the Man to *la Ferte* to deal with him as he thought fit. *La Ferte*, who expected to hear how *Turenne* would expreſs his Reſentment, was much ſurpriz'd at his Moderation, and coming to himſelf, turn'd to thoſe that were about him, and own'd he was much in the Wrong; that *Monſieur de Turenne* would ever be as wiſe as he himſelf had been fooliſh. He could not have better expreſs'd how much he was concern'd at his Paſſion; and whenever we do any thing we ought not to do, we ſhall never fail condemning our ſelves, if we reflect but never ſo little on it. In *France* the Commiſſaries have an Abſolute Power as to Quarters; and it belongs to them to ſee that the Magiſtrates do not ſpare their own Friends and Kindred, and that the Officers commit no Violence. There they may make Billets themſelves, which are as good as if made by the Magiſtrates. The Commiſſaries are alſo to have an Eye to the Forrage that it may be good, that the Men may have their Due, and that the Store-keepers may commit no Frauds. In the Year 1674 the Store-keeper of *Joinville* was Hang'd for giving out of rotten Forrage, and under Weight, and in 1676 a Commiſſary, who was accus'd of combining with the

the Store-keeper of *Dunkirk*, had much ado, with the help of many Friends, to avoid the ſame Fate, but loſt his Employment. Sometimes the Commiſſaries and Store-keepers agree among themſelves to cheat the Troops; but if an Officer complains he is ſure to have Right done him; and he may if he pleaſes make the Store-keeper ſenſible of his Fault, and oblige him to make Satisfaction for what is paſt in Money, which will be better for the Officer then Hanging of him; for it is no leſs than Death to cheat the Horſes of their Meat, becauſe it renders Men unfit for Service. The Commiſſaries may alſo, as ſometimes they do, combine with the Magiſtrates of Towns to furniſh bad Hay, but then it is the Officers Part to ſee themſelves righted. They have a great Authority as to the Controverſies that ariſe between the Inhabitants and the Soldiers, becauſe their Information takes Place of that of either of the Parties concern'd; ſo that whoever has them on their Side is almoſt ſure to get the better.

THE

THE DUTIES OF GENERALS.

CONTAINING

The Order of Marching, of Encamping, Fighting, and Attacking, and Defending of ſtrong Places; alſo the Manner of Surprizing and Attempting upon Towns, Quarters and Armies.

Chap. I. *The Choice of a General.*

THE Preſervation or Loſs of Kingdoms ſo often depends on the Conduct of thoſe who are entruſted with the Command of Armies, that a Prince can never be too cautious in the Choice of ſuch Perſons as are to fill thoſe great Poſts. Tho' the Malice and Ignorance of Prime Miniſters of

of State may endanger a Monarchy, yet that Miſchief requiring a conſiderable Space of Time to come to a Head, may be fore ſeen and prevented; but if a General be Diſloyal or Unskilful, he may loſe an Army in a Moment, and by one ſingle Fault utterly ruin his Maſter.

Tho' a General be not oblig'd to act himſelf in all Parts of War, yet to be able to give a good Account of his Employ, it is requiſite to ſhow wherein it conſiſts, and how he is to behave himſelf in every Circumſtance. This Knowledge he is to be moſt perfect in, that he may be able to give out his Orders properly to thoſe he pitches upon to ſee them executed. The Principal Points are to order an Incampment, to Poſt the Camp Guard, to March an Army, to Draw it up, to Give Battle, to Attack Enemies Quarters or Towns, to Form a Blockade, and to Lay Siege to a Place. Beſides, a General muſt underſtand what Train of Artillery is neceſſary, in Proportion to the Strength of his Army, and what he is capable of attempting; as alſo he muſt know whence he is to have his Proviſions and Ammunition, and what Money he will be allow'd to pay his Men, to defray the Charge of Works, and for his Proviſions, Artillery and Hoſpitals. But before we ſpeak of the ſeveral Parts of War, it will be convenient to ſhow what Qualities are requiſite in a General, that he may well diſcharge his Duty of Commanding an Army.

Chap.

Chap. II. *Of the Qualities requiſite in a General of an Army.*

A Man who is in Command is oblig'd to expoſe himſelf ſo freely to the Dangers which daily occur in War, and to be of ſo undaunted a Temper in the greateſt Hazards, that Courage, which communicates thoſe notable Parts, ſeems to be the chiefeſt Quality to be ſought after in a General; for tho' ſome Generals, who were known to have little or no Valour, have gain'd great Advantages over their Prince's Enemies, yet it is a thing of a dangerous Conſequence to leave that altogether to Prudence which may chiefly depend on Bravery. It is not always ſufficient for the gaining of Battles to know how to command well; War is a Profeſſion in which a Man muſt very often Act as well as Command; and as the good Orders a General gives cauſe the Forces to fight well and regularly, ſo his Example contributes much more towards it. The Faith the Soldiers have in him their Prince has ſet over them, makes them forward to imitate him; and 'tis from him they generally learn to deſpiſe or to fear Danger. If his Actions make it appear to the Soldiers that he is apprehenſive of expoſing himſelf, he will infect them with Faintheartedneſs; but if they ſee him act with Bravery, they will follow him cheerfully, and will not think Death much to be fear'd, when they behold their General expreſs ſo much Contempt of Life.

His Courage ought to be back'd by Zeal; for this noble Paſſion ſtrengthens him, and makes amends for other Defects in Nature; it makes the greateſt

greateſt Fatigues ſeem eaſie, and readily overcomes the greateſt Difficulties; it rouzes up the General to find out the Means of attempting ſomething extraordinary againſt the Enemy, and makes him employ all his Thoughts upon being ſerviceable as Occaſions offer. In fine, it makes a Subject do all that for his Prince's Service which Love cauſes a Lover to perform to gain his Miſtreſs's Favour.

But tho' Zeal and Courage are ſuch Noble and Neceſſary Qualities in a Soldier, that he can never have too much of them, yet a General muſt take Care that they do not lead him too far. It is very dangerous to have blind Guides; and there is no following them among Precipices without manifeſt Danger of falling. As much as it is to be wiſh'd that a Private Soldier blindly follow the Dictates they inſpire, no leſs Dangerous is it for a Man in Command to be adviſ'd by them. When they act according as the Judgment directs they always produce good Effects, but if they have the entire Command of the General, Courage will perſwade him to run into ſuch mighty Dangers, till he will ſoon periſh in them, and his Prince reap no Advantage by his Death; and Zeal will oblige him to attempt ſuch Difficulties that he will never be able to perform them. He muſt therefore make uſe of theſe Paſſions no otherwiſe than as a Wiſe Pilot makes uſe of the Wind, who gathers no more in his Sails than he thinks neceſſary to carry his Ship ſafe.

A natural Inclination for War muſt attend the aforeſaid Qualities for the making of a great General; and we daily ſee Men of great Courage, Zeal and Judgment, ſpend all their Days in an Army without ever becoming capable of commanding

manding it. It is hard for a Man to become perfect, who goes to the War either out of Complaiſance, or by Force; he who does not delight in it, never labours to make his Advantage of the Actions he is preſent at, nor to gain the neceſſary Light into Affairs, that he may one Day be capable of the greateſt Employs. Tho' his Courage and Zeal furniſh him with ſuch Generous Thoughts, as to put him upon ſeeking the Opportunities of gaining Honour, yet he is ſatisfy'd with doing that well which he is commanded, and never reflects whether he who commands gives Prudent Orders, or whether he fails in Point of Conduct. Natural Inclination muſt contribute towards making a Commander, and muſt make uſe of all the good Qualities there are in him to ſucceed. It is that inward hidden Impulſe which leads us to follow that Profeſſion we are fitteſt for; and its Power is ſo great that it appears even in the leaſt Actions of our Infancy, long before Reaſon has taken the Government of our Senſes. Theſe Noble Qualities are moſt dangerous for the Publick Good, when they concenter in the ſame Perſon, and have Probity to accompany them; but unleſs they adviſe with this laſt in the execution of all their Deſigns, they are almoſt as much to be dreaded as wiſh'd for. It is this Virtue which informs a General that he is not to employ the Forces his Prince truſts him with any otherwiſe than for the good of his Country; and that he muſt not make uſe of them to commit Rapine and Violence on his Subjects, nor even on his Enemies, unleſs it be for his Prince's Advantage. But it often happens that Generals who prefer their own Intereſt before their Maſters, leave part of their Country expos'd to the Enemy, to enrich themſelves with

the

the Booty they gather at the ſame time in another Place, or elſe they Ruin an Army in an Enemies Country through Covetouſneſs of Plunder, or raiſing Contributions. In ſuch Caſes they are anſwerable for all the Harm the Enemy does in their Country, and for all the Loſs their Army ſuſtains; and they ought to conſider, that ſince it is the Benefit of their Country, which gives them a Right over the Lives and Fortunes of their Prince's Enemies, therefore when his Intereſt is not concern'd they cannot take any thing from them, without deſerving the Title of Robbers, or put any to Death, without being look'd upon as Murderers.

To be Knowing in the Map of the Country, to be well Read in Hiſtory, to be well Diſcours'd, to have a good Mien, to live Amicably among the Soldiers, and to have a good Conſtitution of Body, are all Parts that contribute towards making a Perfect General; yet they are not abſolutely neceſſary. However, the Man on whom Nature has beſtow'd Part of thoſe Advantageous Qualities here mention'd, who by his Induſtry has acquir'd thoſe who are not in the Gift of Nature, and whom Virtue has adorn'd with the nobleſt of its Dictates, is well qualify'd to make a Perfect General; and yet all theſe Noble Qualities will make but an imperfect Work, if Experience does not give the laſt finiſhing Strokes. It is that which ſettles a Solid Judgment, to make a good Choice amidſt the variety of Thoughts the Imagination preſents. It is that which muſt be conſulted with Reaſon in the moſt Important Affairs; for having been Witneſs to ſome Faults committed, and to ſome Brave Actions perform'd, it can give us a true Knowledge drawn from thoſe ſeveral Events.

Tho-

Tho' I am of Opinion that the neceſſary Inſight to make a Man fit to command an Army be the only Gift of Experience, yet it is moſt certain that ſome Perſons have rob'd it of Part of the Honour of having inſtructed them, and without having any Recourſe to it, have in a ſhort Time gain'd all the Knowledge they could have got from it in ſeveral Years. And as moſt great Warriours have made themſelves capable of Command by the Precepts they receiv'd from it, thoſe who have made it their Buſineſs to obſerve their Conduct, to dive into their Diſcourſes, and to learn by the Hiſtory of their Lives, have had the Benefit of making an Advantage of their Labours, and to ſhare with them in thoſe Goods which coſt them ſo much Blood and Toil in acquiring.

It is therefore neceſſary for the ſhortning of ſuch a long and toilſome Road, that he who deſigns to raiſe himſelf to the greateſt Commands in an Army, do not only inform himſelf by practiſing the Duties of thoſe Poſts he aſpires to, but that he endeavour to gather from Books, and from the Diſcourſes of thoſe who ſpeak well of War, all thoſe Lights and Inſtructions which may direct him how to behave himſelf in all the Diverſity of Accidents which daily occur. Thus will he ſee many Battels fought in a ſhort time, many Towns defended and attacked, and be preſent as often as he pleaſes in the greateſt Feats of War. And if then he makes his Obſervations on the good or bad Conduct of thoſe that Command, he will inform his own Judgment, and acquire ſuch Knowledge as will make him capable of the greateſt Commands.

Chap. II. *Of Incamping.*

THE Major-General, whoſe Day it is, almoſt always goes to mark out the Camp, and the General but very rarely, unleſs it be intended for a Place to ſtay in. For the well ordering of it he muſt know the Strength and Poſt of all the Troops the Army is compos'd of, and what a Train of Artillery and Proviſions there is. He is to take along with him the Quarter-Maſter-General of the Army, the Quarter-Maſter-General of the Horſe, the Quarter-Maſters of each Regiment of Horſe, the Majors of Foot Regiments, and their Quarter-Maſters, a Commiſſary of the Artillery, and One for the Proviſions. The Head Officers of the Army muſt alſo each of them ſend One of their Guards to take up their Quarters, and the Provoſt-Marſhal, or his Lieutenant, with Part of their Men, muſt attend the Major-General, to be the firſt upon the Quarters, to hinder any Body Forraging.

The Major-General is to have a ſufficient Guard with him to conduct him ſafe to the Camp he is to take up; and if he fears meeting any Oppoſition in making his Lodgment, he muſt go ſtrong enough to make himſelf Maſter of it, carrying Horſe and Foot with him, if need be. He generally leaves the Army a good League from the Place where he is to mark out the Camp, provided he has not Cauſe to apprehend the Enemy; but if they are near and ſtrong, he muſt not part from the Army but half or a quarter of a League from the Place. If he knows not the Way perfectly well he muſt take good Guides with him, and ſome Officers of the Train, with a Cart-load of Tools, and Pioneers,

to

to make the Ways eaſie for the Army to march; and where he finds much Work to do that will take up Time, he muſt leave a Guard to ſecure the Pioneers. He muſt detach a Party before him to go view the Ground; and if he has any Cauſe to be apprehenſive of an Enemy, he muſt alſo detach ſome out on the Right and Left, and appoint them to rendevouz again near his Quarters, which is generally on the next riſing Ground, the Way he comes to them, if ſome particular Reaſon be not againſt his ſhowing himſelf.

If the Parties are not return'd when he comes to the Place of Rendevouz, he muſt halt there till he hears of them, and muſt at the ſame time ſend other Parties out that Way which they ſhould come that are miſſing. He muſt not take the Ground till he has heard News of them, or at leaſt till he has caus'd it to be nicely view'd. If the General has left it to the Major-General to take up the Ground to encamp where he thinks fit, he is to know what Way the Army is to march the next Day, and to get the beſt Information he can of what convenient Places there are for encamping by the Way, where he is to conſider the Advantageouſneſs of the Situation, if there be any thing to fear; if not, he is only to regard the Conveniency of Forrage, of Springs, Brooks, Marſhes, of Encamping, of Wood, the Goodneſs of the Way, the Conveniency of filing off to march the next Day, the Diſtance from the Place where the Army ſets out, that the March may neither be too long, nor too ſhort.

Sometimes General Officers encamp Armies on ſuch Ground where they find moſt Covert, or other Advantages for themſelves, tho' the Forces have but ſmall Conveniencies; but it is the Duty of

of their Posts not to regard any Interest but their Prince's, which consists in the Preservation of his Army.

If the Major-General cannot be so fully inform'd by his Guides, or others about him, as he could wish, to make a good Choice of the Ground to encamp on, he must send such Persons as he shall think capable of making a Judicious Report; and when he has fixt his Resolution, he must send Part of his Guard beyond the Place of incamping, to continue there upon Guard till the Army be come up, and they be reliev'd. They shall be in one or more Bodies, as the Major-General shall direct, or he who commands the Guard shall think convenient, and he shall send out several Scouts to examine all Parts about the Guard.

If the Major-General has more Troops than are necessary for the Guard of the Quarters till the Army comes up, he shall cause them to Dismount in the most convenient Place for their Horses to graze.

He shall leave a slender Guard on that Side by which he came to the Quarters, and shall then himself ride over all the Ground, unless there be some such convenient Eminency as discovers all round the Quarters, and in the mean while the Quarter-Master-General shall mark out the Ground, and divide it to the Quarter-Masters. When the General Officers have their Ground, if any remains it is given to the Officers of Regiments for their Baggage, they being oblig'd to encamp with their Corps.

The Quarter-Master-General is to make his Report to the Major-General, that he may lodge the General's Guard by his Quarters, and the others that are to be about him. When

When he has well conſider'd the Ground, he ſhall ſhow the Majors of the Brigades the Spot that belongs to each of them, and the Quarter-Maſter-General of the Horſe where he is to Incamp. He ſhall alſo appoint the Place for the Cannon, and the Park for the Train of Proviſions. He muſt encamp as near as poſſible upon ſome River or Brook; and if the Enemies are near and ſtrong enough to be apprehended, he ſhall Incamp the Troops all on one Side. If the Enemies are beyond the River, with reſpect to the Army's March, he ſhall not venture to paſs it in the Face of them till he has well lin'd all the Paſſes with Cannon and Muſqueteers, and made them as eaſie as may be, that the Army defiling in a ſhort time may not be engag'd by Piecemeal. Nor muſt the Paſſage be attempted, unleſs there be Day-light enough for all the Army to paſs. Howſoever, if the paſſing were of great Conſequence, and there were Cauſe to fear that if the Enemies had the Advantage of the Night they would come and intrench themſelves on the Bank of the River, and ſo render the paſſing the next Day the more difficult, then no Time ought to be loſt, but to paſs as faſt as the Troops came up; and then in chuſing a Poſt to Incamp, it ought rather to be look'd upon as an Advantageous Field of Battle, than a Convenient Lodgment. If the Strength and Nearneſs of the Enemy do not obſtruct the Major-General's ſeeking the Conveniency of the Forces in Incamping, that muſt be his only Care in the Choice of the Ground. If the Enemies are not far off, he ſhould cauſe the Cannon to be poſted on the Side next to them, if not at the Head of the Road they are to march the next Day.

The

The Park of the Train is generally near the Cannon; but where there is any Cauſe to fear, I ſhould rather think it ought to be in the ſafeſt Place about the Camp, becauſe an Army may be routed by loſing its Ammunition. The Horſes of the Artillery are alſo to Incamp near the Park.

The Proviſions are for the moſt Part near the Train of Artillery, and commonly the Bread Carts are drawn up in a Ring to encloſe their Horſes; but in a Camp where there was an Enemy to fear, I would make uſe of them to encloſe the Ammunition, if I thought not any other Place in the Army ſafe enough.

The Cavalry is encamp'd the neareſt to Water that may be; and if there are any Orchards or Hedges they ſhall Incamp near them, that they may not be ſurpriz'd, but may have Time to mount in Caſe of an Alarm; and they muſt be order'd to cut Ways acroſs Hedges and Ditches, both towards the General's Side, to receive their Orders, and towards the open Plain, that they may march out to the Field of Battle.

The Camp of the Horſe is frequently cover'd by that of the Foot, leaving the Space of at leaſt 50 Paces betwixt them for the Horſe to draw up.

If the Army ſhould be ſo weak in Foot that they could not cover the Camp of the Horſe, then the Foot ought to be encamp'd on that Side which is moſt oppos'd to the Enemy, becauſe the Foot are ſooner ready upon Alarms than the Horſe.

The Troops are always to have their Backs towards the Quarters, and to face outwards. The Foot begin their File or Row of Huts Three Paces from their Arms, which are always in the Front. The Sergeants have the Front Hut; the Captains encamp quite in the Rear. If there be reaſon to fear

fear any great Parties of Horſe, the Officers and Sutlers may be p'ac'd at the Head of the Camp, that their Tents and Carts may give a Stop to the Enemy.

In an Incampment for a Night, there are generally 50 Paces, in Depth of 3 Foot to a Pace, and 4 Paces in Breadth allow'd for every Company, for the Soldiers Huts, and for the Streets between every 2 Files of Huts. If the Company does not exceed 70 Men, it is to be allow'd Ground but for One Row or File of Huts.

The Officers take up as much Ground in the Rear of their Companies as is requiſite for them, the Subalterns next the Huts, and the Captains behind them, the Field Officers behind the Captains, as the Ground will allow. A convenient Interval for a large Street is left clear between every Two Regiments.

A Troop of 60 Horſe has 50 Paces in Depth, like the Foot, and 14 Paces in Breadth for 3 Rows of Huts; if there are Hedges they have as much Space allow'd them as is requiſite to tie their Horſes according to the Strength of the Troop.

If the Major-General fears the Army may be attack'd in the Camp by the Enemy, who is ſtronger in Horſe than himſelf, he muſt ſo order it, if he can, that there be Hedges, Ditches and Trenches, in the Way the Enemy may come upon them, both to hinder their coming up to the Charge in good Order, and to gain his Foot the Opportunity of engaging upon an Advantage. If on the other Hand he is weaker in Foot, and ſtronger in Horſe, than the Enemy, he muſt encamp on the edge of the Plain, that his Horſe may draw up there, and that the Enemies Foot may be afraid to engage in a Place where it can have no Advantage againſt the Horſe.

When

When the Major-General rides about the Ground he muſt make choice of the moſt convenient Place to draw up the Army in Caſe of an Alarm, and there the Forces are to rendezvous. But beſides the general Field of Battle, every Regiment muſt have its particular Ground to draw up on, whence it muſt never march till it has form'd the Battalion or Squadron, otherwiſe a ſmall Number of the Enemy's Forces having gain'd the Field of Battle, would defeat a great Army, ſhould they find it divided into ſmall Bodies, and thoſe ill form'd. I am of Opinion it would be dangerous to appoint but One Field of Battel for all the Forces, unleſs they are certain the Enemies cannot poſſibly come upon them any other Way than that One; becauſe ſhould all the Avenues to the Camp be left unguarded, it ought to be fear'd they might give a falſe Alarm in One Place to draw the Army thither, and then attack it in another; ſo that it would be convenient to appoint the beſt Field of Battle for half the Army, and Two or Three others for the reſt of the Forces, there to expect the General's Orders. I grant if we only regard the Safety of the Troop themſelves, it is better to have but One Field of Battle, but if we conſider the Loſs of the Baggage, ſomething may be hazarded to ſave the whole. In this, as in all other Warlike Actions, he who commands muſt proceed with much Circumſpection, and carefully weigh all the Reaſons that may move him to divide his Forces, or to keep them together, to hazard all to ſave his Baggage, or to expoſe that alone. And ſince an Army divided into ſeveral Bodies might be eaſily routed by a ſmaller that ſhould be well united, therefore when there is any Cauſe to fear ſuch an Attempt, the beſt Way is to encamp in Battel;

that is, in the ſame Order the Troops are to engage, ſo that every Battalion and Squadron drawing up before their own Tents, will be there in the general Order of Battle.

If the Enemy is very near, and has no Defilee to paſs to attack the Army, the Troops ſhall continue in their Squadrons and Battalions form'd ſomewhat looſe, and ſhall reſt upon their Arms.

If the Fear of the Enemies does not oblige the Major-General to keep his Army cloſe together, he may take up ſeveral Quarters near one another, and in ſeparating the Troops muſt take Care to ſend the Horſe where there is moſt Water and Forrage.

If the bad Weather obliges him to ſeek ſome Shelter for the Foot, or that they muſt be lodg'd in the Quarters of the Horſe for their Security, he ſhall diſpoſe of them as he finds moſt expedient.

He muſt always Incamp the eldeſt Regiment in the Army, the Artillery, the Proviſions, and a great Part of the Foot, near the General's Quarters, if there be the leaſt thing to fear.

When the Major-General ſeparates the Army into ſeveral Quarters, he only makes the Incampment for the General's Quarters, and orders what Troops he will have to go to all the others, whither the Majors, or Quarter-Maſters of the ſaid Troops go to ſee them lodg'd.

He muſt take Care to Incamp thoſe Troops that are to have the Van the next Day on the moſt advanc'd Part of the Camp on the Way they are to march; or if the Quarters are divided, he muſt in like manner obſerve to poſt them in the moſt advanc'd Quarter the Way the Army is to march.

When an Army is to Incamp for any Time in one Place, for the moſt Part the General goes him-

himſelf to order it. He is then to conſider what Proviſions there are in the Place, or about it, what Conveniency of ſecuring and bringing them to the Army; and if there be Corn, how it may be made into Meal. If there be no Proviſions, he muſt conſider what Methods there are for bringing them, and be ſure it may not be in the Power of the Enemy to cut them off. He muſt alſo reflect on the Conveniency of Forrage, of Water, of Shelter, of Wood, and of the Wholeſomeneſs of the Air, to prevent Diſeaſes; if he muſt Intrench, he is to ſeek out a convenient Ground for Intrenching.

The manner of Incamping the Troops ſhall be according to the Method of the Intrenchment, and the Head of the Camp ſhall be at leaſt 100 Paces from it, without extending the Camp too far. Experience has often ſhown that when an Enemy is before an Intrenchment, there is ſcarce ever Ground enough to range the Troops that are to oppoſe them in Battel; and if the Huts are near the Lines, and the Enemy having forc'd any Part, put the Troops that are to maintain them into the leaſt Diſorder, they will be all broke by the Huts, and it will be a difficult Matter for them to rally to return to the Charge.

The Intrenchment is to be made as near as can be on the higheſt Ground all about the Camp, provided it be not at too great a Diſtance; and though it ſeems, when of the greateſt Extent, to require the greater Guard, yet it is moſt certain fewer Men will Maintain it, than when it is ſmaller, and the Enemy has the Advantage of the Ground.

The Ditch of the Intrenchment muſt be at leaſt Nine Foot over at the top, and Three or Four

at the bottom, and Six in depth; and I am of Opinion there might be more Hopes in Fighting in open Field, than behind a leſs Intrenchment than we Repreſent, though with a weaker Army than the Enemies. Experience has given us many Examples of this kind, and our own Senſe ſhows us ſeveral Reaſons for it; and though we have often ſeen very weak Armies Defeat great ones in open Field, yet we never heard, or could believe, that ever an Army Fighting behind an Intrenchment defeated that which attack'd it, though much ſtronger than the Aſſailant. The Advantages this has above an Army that is Defenſive are, that if but One Attack of many it makes ſucceeds, that is ſufficient to make it Maſter of the Enemies Camp; that for the moſt part the Soldiers who Fight behind an Intrenchment, placing moſt of their Hopes in it, whenſoever they ſee one Part forc'd, Diſmay and Abandon the reſt; that on the other Hand, the Aſſailants being perſwaded that all the Difficulty conſiſts in forcing the Intrenchments, as ſoon as ever they are paſt them, do not think that any thing can ſtand before them; and with this Confidence they increaſe in Courage, and value not their Enemies.

But if they that Attack are Repuls'd, they can eaſily Rally, and renew the Charge as often as they think fit; and when they perceive all their Efforts are in vain, they Retire whither they pleaſe.

In ſhort, the greateſt Succeſs of an Army Fighting within an Intrenchment is not to be Beaten; but it can never have the Honour of entirely Defeating its Enemies, or ever gain any conſiderable Advantage, without coming out of its Intrenchments, when it perceives the Army which Attack'd is

diſ-

diſabled by the Loſs it has ſuſtain'd in the Attacks.

This Intrenchment is good, when the Ditch is Twelve Foot wide at the top, Four at the bottom, and Eight in depth; and when the Earth is thrown up out of it, makes a Proportionable Parapet, with a Banket behind it for the Musketeers to Stand on.

There muſt be Redans, or Indented Works at every Eighty Fathom diſtance; and it is obſervable that Twenty Shot flanking do more Execution than Sixty right forwards. There the Cannon is to be plac'd, which makes great Havock among the Enemy when they come up to force the Line. No Redoubts are to be made there, becauſe if once the Enemies Poſſeſs them, it were hard to Diſlodge them; and they may be of Uſe to them to force the Line; and ſince none are ever to be made but only in Places very Remote from Quarters, for ſmall Guards to be there in Safety, it is uſeleſs to make any to Camps that are Intrench'd, becauſe the Troops are everywhere near the Lines.

It is alſo very dangerous to make any Forts, unleſs they are extraordinary good ones, becauſe the loſs of a Fort opens the Enemy a Way into the Inſtrenchment, and it is very hard to Beat them out. Howſoever, if there ſhould happen to be any high Ground near the Camp, that might Command it, or any Advantageous Place within the Camp, which might Facilitate the rallying of the Forces in caſe they were routed, there Forts may be made; but they muſt be ſo good that there may be no fear of loſing them. The Ditch of them muſt be Fourteen or Fifteen Foot over at the top, and Five or Six at the bottom, and Nine or Ten in

depth. It muſt alſo be Palizado'd on the edge of the Ditch, fac'd with Sods, and Fraiz'd where there are no Sods; the Earth muſt be held together with Faſcines, and well beaten down.

Opinions differ very much about the placing of Palizado's. If they are plac'd in the Ditch they may ſerve to hold up Planks to come at the Parapet, and there may be *Ponts Volans*, or Flying Bridges laid on them, ſo that the Ditch will be uſeleſs. But as it has this Diſadvantage, it has another Advantage, which is, that the Enemy cannot break it with their Cannon, as they can that on the edge of the Ditch. Therefore where there is more Danger of Surprize than of a Regular Attack, I would place it on the edge of the Ditch; and in the bottom of it, where they apprehend being Attack'd in Form.

Chap. III. *Of the Camp Guard.*

WHEN the Major-General has given his Orders for the Incamping of the Forces, the Quarter-Maſter General of the Horſe, and the Majors of Brigades of Foot, divide their Ground. For the better regulating of it, they are to conſider the Strength of the Army, as well in Horſe as Foot, the Situation of the Camp, and what Enemies can come to Attack them.

If the Enemy is not extraordinary near, the 8th Part of the Army is generally upon Guard, which is diſpos'd according to the Eaſineſs or Difficulty, or the Conſequence of the Avenues, for the Guard of Horſe. During the Day-time, if the Enemy is fear'd but one Way, one Half, or Two Thirds

Thirds of thoſe that are to Mount the Guard ſhall be poſted on that Side, about a quarter of a League from the Camp, or ſomewhat farther, if it be a Champaign Country. About another Eighth Part is detach'd from that Guard, which advances about Seven or Eight Hundred Paces farther upon ſome Eminence, if there be any, which ſmall Guard Detaches One or Two Vedets, which are alſo poſted on the moſt Advantageous Ground for Diſcovery.

All Guards are to be ſo poſted, that the Main Guard may not be cut off from the Camp, nor the Small Guard from the greater, nor the Vedets from the Advanc'd Guard.

If the Country be enclos'd, the Main Guard muſt be ſo near the Camp that it cannot be cut off; but yet at ſuch a diſtance that it may give timely Notice of the Enemy, if any appear; and to prevent the Army's being ſurpriz'd, they muſt ſend out little Guards of Five or Six Troops each, on the Right and Left, and theſe ſhall place Vedets before them, as the Commander ſhall think requiſite for the Security of the ſame Guards.

He ſhall from Time to Time Viſit the ſaid Advanc'd Guard, and ſee whether the Vedets are well poſted. He ſhall alſo Relieve them, and ſo divide the Time of his Guard, that every Man may in his Turn be upon the Advanc'd Guard, which ſhall never Diſmount, unleſs it be in an extraordinary open Place; but the Horſes muſt never be unbridled. The Main Guard may unbridle half the Horſes, the other half keeping in readineſs.

If the Country is enclos'd, he muſt ſend out Scouts from Time to Time, ſome to go ſtrait forwards, and others to go acroſs from one ſmall

Guard to another, to ſee the Enemy does not ſlip in between Two Guards.

When the Main Guard is order'd, the reſt of the Cavalry ſhall be divided into Two or Three other Guards, which ſhall be diſpos'd of about the Camp, and they muſt be ſtronger or weaker, as Occaſion ſhall require.

As for the Guards of Foot they are generally at the Head of their own Battalions; but if there be any Steeple, Tower, or ſtrong Houſe, very near the Camp, there ſhall be a Guard of Foot ſent to it. So if there be any Paſs upon a River, or any deep Valley at a reaſonable Diſtance from the Camp, that is, about half a quarter of a League, there ſhall be a Guard of Foot there at Night only, un'eſs the Country be very much enclos'd. If the Paſs be at ſo great a Diſtance that the Guard may be cut off, ſome Foot may be ventur'd there, according to the Conſequence it is of, for the Security of the Army, which may be ſupported by a Guard of Horſe; and if the Place be too dangerous for the Foot, it ſhall ſuffice to Place ſome few Horſe there to give Advice of the Enemy, or to ſend out Scouts thither very often.

Every Regiment of Foot is to have about Fifty Men, according to its Strength, every Night upon Guard at the Head of the Camp, Commanded by a Captain and a Lieutenant, or at leaſt by one of them, if there be the leaſt Cauſe to fear any thing.

When the Camp of the Foot does not cover that of the Horſe, and it is encompas'd in Places enclos'd with Hedges or Ditches; there is generally a Guard of Foot poſted at the Head of them to give them Time to Mount in caſe they are attack'd.

When

When there are ſeveral detatch'd Guards, the Camp Guard is leſſen'd, provided the others cover it. The Major-General is alſo to appoint the Guard of the Artillery as ſtrong as he thinks fit.

As ſoon as he has given his Orders, he goes away to meet the General, and ſhows him the diſpoſition of the Camp and Guards, and in the mean while the Quarter-Maſter-General ſhows the Majors of Brigades of Foot, and the Quarter-Maſter-General of Horſe, the Places where they are to be Poſted, and what Force each of them is to conſiſt of.

As for other Particulars of the Guards, or from what Regiments they are detach'd, the Major-General, or Quarter-Maſter-General do not concern themſelves, but it is left to the Quarter-Maſter-General of Horſe, and the Majors of Brigades.

When the Major-General appoints the Guards for the Day, he is to ſhow the Place to which they are to retire at Night, which is generally within Two or Three Hundred Paces of the Camp.

He is to Viſit them once in the Night, to ſee whether they are poſted as he order'd; whether the Officers are there, and what Number of Men they have; whether they are in good Order; that is, the Detach'd Guards all a Horſeback, and half the Main Guard, and the reſt in their Ranks, and Horſes Bridled, whether the Neceſſary Number of Vedets for the Security of the Camp be Poſted, and whether they from Time to Time Detach Scouts.

If the Guards are at ſuch a Diſtance from one another that there is any Poſſibility of ſlipping in between them and the Vedets, there are Scouts ſent from one Vedet to another; or elſe the Vedets being coupled, as they ought to be at Night,

one of them goes as far as the others on the Right; and when he is come back to his Comrade, the other goes as far as the Vedets on the Left, and ſo from Time to Time till it be Day.

There are alſo Scouts continually going about the Camp from one Guard to another.

The Guard of an intrench'd Camp is quite different from that of an open Incampment; the Intrenchment is divided among all the Foot, who Poſt Sentinels on it, ſo that there may be no paſſing betwixt any Two of them; and the Guard of Horſe is weaker than when the Camp is open. It is poſted within the Intrenchments in Two or Three Bodies, near the Barriers that are upon the great Avenues, and only ſend a ſmall Guard Fifty Paces without the Lines, continually ſending out Scouts on the Right and Left, and ſtrait forwards.

Chap. IV. *Of Marching an Army.*

WHEN the General reſolves the Army ſhall March, he gives his Orders to the Major-General, who is that Day on Duty, who lays out the Order of Marching.

For the well doing of it he muſt know the Number and the Strength of the Regiments of Horſe and Foot the Army is compos'd of; how many Battalions and Squadrons they can make; what Enemies may be met in the March; whether in Front, on the Right, or on the Left, or in the Rear; what ſort of Way the Army is to March; whether it be a Plain, or Woody, or entangled with Hedges, Ditches, Marſhes, or Rivers; whether there be one or ſeveral Roads or Defiles; how

how many Men, Horſes, or Waggons can March Afront; which is the Soundeſt and the Eveneſt Way for the Artillery. When he is inform'd of all theſe Things the beſt that may be, he muſt order the March of the Forces according to what he has learnt.

If the Enemy be in Front, and the Country a Campaign, he muſt March in order of Battle, with the Cannon in Front, the Horſe on the Wing, and the Foot in the Centre; then the Second Line, and after the Two Lines the Train of Artillery through as many Defiles as he can, that they may be the leſs Time in paſſing; next the Train of the Artillery, the Proviſions, and all the Baggage of the Army, oppoſite to its Regiments upon the ſame Line with the Train of Artillery; that is, the Baggage of the Firſt Line foremoſt, and in the Rear the Baggage of the Second Line, then the Baggage of the Rear Guard, or *Corps de Reſerve*, which Rear Guard ſhall March after all the Baggage, for fear the Enemy ſhould ſend any Troops to fall upon the Rear; and when they take up a Field of Battle, then the *Corps de Reſerve* ſhall March up before the Baggage, leaving only One Squadron in the Rear of them to prevent any Diſorder, or running away.

If the Enemy be in Front, and the Country Wooded, or enclos'd with Hedges and Ditches, Advanc'd Parties of Scouts ſhall March before, ſupported by a Peloton of Musketeers, and then by a Squadron, or a Regiment of Horſe, if the Country be not altogether unfit for the Horſe. If the Country be ſo enclos'd that the Horſe cannot come to do Service, a Battalion Marches after the Firſt Squadron, and ſo all the Horſe and Foot are mix'd; and as there are generally more Squadrons than Bat-

Battalions, the Squadrons ſhall be equally divided among the Battalions, and each Squadron muſt have a Peloton of Muskereers; and in this manner all the Vanguard and Main Body ſhall paſs, then the heavy Cannon, the Ammunition, Proviſions and Baggage. The Field-Pieces ſhall March with the Vanguard, and the heavier Pieces with the Main Battle, and many Pelotons in the Intervals between the Baggage, for fear the Enemy ſhould cut it off in the Woods; then the Rear Guard ſhall March. It is dangerous placing the heavy Cannon between the Battalions and Squadrons in a Country that is enclos'd, becauſe if they were to draw up in Battel on a ſudden, and the Vanguard ſhould be Attack'd, it might hinder the March of the Troops, and can do them no great Service in a Country that is enclos'd. However, if the Country ſhould happen to be enclos'd in ſome Places, and open in others, and the Enemies near at Hand, then as ſoon as they come into a Plain they muſt draw up in Battel, and turn to their former Order of marching when they are paſt it.

If there be ſeveral Roads, they muſt March in Two or Three Columns, and at the Head of every one of them a Cart loaded with Tools, and a Number of Pioneers and Soldiers. It is not to be apprehended that ſtopping to mend a Paſs will retard the March of the Army, for a bad Defile loſes much more Time than is ſpent in repairing the Ways, and they cannot be too Careful in this ſort of Work.

The better to regulate the March, ſome General Officers ſhall keep in the Rear of the Baggage, each according to his Poſt, except among the Foot, where the Baggage of the Rear-Guard Marches according to the Antiquity of the Regiments, and thoſe

thoſe of the Elder Regiments March foremoſt, though they be making a Retreat. The Sutlers, and other Trades, who do not belong to any Particular Regiment, March after the Baggage of the Main Battle. Every Regiment of Foot ſends a Man out of each Company to Guard its Baggage, under the Command of a Sergeant, and each Troop of Horſe One Trooper. The Provoſt Marſhal, and all the other Provoſts, are to March there with their Men, to make all Men keep their Ranks, and prevent Diſorder.

There is often a Captain, or Conductor of the Baggage appointed, who takes Care to be upon the Field of Battel to put the Baggage into the marching Order, and to make them obſerve it as they March. And to conclude, that the Baggage of every Regiment may the better keep together, and know one another, they are oblig'd to put up a Flag of the ſame Colour and Shape. The Captain of the Guides is to carry ſome of them to the Major-General, whoſe Day it is, to be plac'd at the Head of every Column of Troops and Baggage.

If the Enemy be on the Right Wing, and the Country Plain, the Troops ſhall March in Three Columns; that is, thoſe which are to Compoſe the Vanguard in the order of Battle are to be on the Right of thoſe that are to Compoſe the Main Battle, the Main Battel on the Left of the Vanguard, and the *Corps de Reſerve* on the Left of the Main Battel; each of thoſe Bodies making a File with the Horſe at the Head and in the Rear, and the Foot in the Centre; ſo that the Army halting, and each Line facing to the Right, the Order of Battle will be form'd, provided the Vanguard obſerve its due diſtance in marching, and the Troops of the Main Battle always keep oppoſite to the Intervals of the Vanguard. The Troops that

are

are to Guard the Baggage muſt be on the Left of all the reſt, making the largeſt Front they can, that their File may extend almoſt as far as thoſe of the Army, and they ſhall have but one Squadron on the Left.

In this Order of Marching, all the Cannon muſt march on the Right of the Vanguard, that it may be at the Head of the Army, in caſe of a Battle.

If the Country is enclos'd, or cut with Trenches, and the Enemy on the Right, they muſt march almoſt in the ſame Order as in the Plain, provided there be Roads enough for it, or they can be made without much Labour, as in Summer, when all Lands are enclos'd. All that is then alter'd from the Manner of marching in the Plain, is, that the Column on the Right, which is to compoſe the Vanguard, ſhall be ſtronger in Foot than that which compoſes the Main Battle, and each Squadron of the Vanguard ſhall have a Peloton of Muſketeers. The Cannon muſt march between the Two Columns, becauſe in a Country that is enclos'd it can do no great Service, and were it on the Right of all it might be taken, or nail'd before the Troops could come up to relieve it.

If there be but Two Defiles, all the Troops ſhall march through that on the Right, and the Baggage through that on the Left. Part of the Field-pieces in the Intervals of the Vanguard, another Part with the Main Battle, and ſome few with the Rear Guard. The heavy Canon muſt march in the Column of the Baggage, but not quite at the Head of it, for fear the Enemy ſhould ſend ſome Troops to attack it, but after the Baggage of the Vanguard, that it may be the better cover'd by the Troops.

The

The Vanguard is to file off firſt, then the Main Guard, and next the *Corps de Reſerve.*

If there ſhould happen to be but one Defile, then all the Vanguard muſt march firſt, then the Artillery, Proviſions, and the General's Baggage, then the Main Battle, and all the other Baggage, and then the *Corps de Reſerve*; but this is a very Dangerous Way of marching if the Enemy be near; becauſe the Lines being divided by the Baggage, cannot come to Succour one another; and on the other Hand, ſhould all the Troops march together, and the Baggage after them, it would be too much expos'd, and the Loſs of it would ruin the Army as much as the Defeat of a conſiderable Part of its Troops. In marching near the Enemy, Care muſt be taken to make the Baggage march through another Defile than that the Troops march through, tho' it were a League diſtant; and in this Caſe they muſt have a Guard of the Sixth or the Fourth Part of the Army, according to the Force might be ſuſpected the Enemy would detach to attack it.

In ſuch a March it is neceſſary to have abundance of ſmall Parties of Horſe, if it may be, if not of Foot, to coaſt along the Army on the Right, to diſcover whether the Enemy comes to attack it on its March, at which time Surprizes are moſt dangerous, becauſe it is almoſt impoſſible for Troops once put into Diſorder in a Defile to Rally.

Parties are to be ſent out every now and then towards the Enemies, to the End, that if any one of them ſhould happen to be entirely cut off by the Enemy, as often happens in encles'd Countries, another might give notice of it.

If

If the Enemy be in the Rear, it is only inverting the Order preſcrib'd when they are in the Front; but above all, when there are Defiles in the Way, greater Care muſt be taken to make them eaſie, that the Troops may ſuccour one another, in caſe the Rear be attack'd.

The Field-pieces muſt be lodg'd on the edge of the Defile, when the Troops are enter'd, to favour the Retreat of the hindmoſt; unleſs it were a Wood where Cannon is of no Uſe; otherwiſe abundance of Field-pieces are at this time more ſerviceable than at any other.

When there is little Cauſe to fear the Enemy upon the March, and the Country is Champaign, the Vanguard is made to march in Two Columns, then the Main Battle, and the *Corps de Reſerve* after it in the ſame Order, the Baggage between the two Columns, with the Artillery and Proviſions in the Front, or elſe the Vanguard may march in Three Columns, the Main Battle in the ſame Manner, and the Artillery, Proviſions and Baggage, after the Main Battle, and laſt of all, the Rear Guard, or *Corps de Reſerve.*

If the Country be not extraordinary open, all the Troops may be made to march in Two Column, on the Side next the Enemy, tho' there be no Reaſon to fear, and the Baggage in another Column.

If the Country is enclos'd, and there is but one Defile, then the Vanguard and Main Battle ſhall be made to march next the Artillery, Proviſions and Baggage, and then the Rear Guard. If there are ſeveral Defiles, the Vanguard and Main Battle may march in as many Columns, then the Baggage after them, and the Rear Guard laſt; or elſe the Troops and Baggage may paſs through ſeveral Defiles.

When

When the Major-General has reſolv'd upon the Order of Marching, he is to acquaint the General with it, to know whether he approves of it.

Chap. V. *Of the Order of Battle, and how to bring up the Forces to Fight.*

IN this, as in all other Warlike Actions, it is neceſſary to know the Number, Names, Strength and Poſt of the Troops the Army is compos'd of. Next the General muſt know the Ground he is to fight on, and his Enemies; that is, what ſeveral Nations make up their Army, what Strength they have in Horſe, Foot and Cannon, and their Manner of Fighting.

Battles are fought either in Plains, when both Armies meet by Conſent, or in order to Form a Siege, or to prevent the Forming of it, or Attacking Lines when Form'd, or Defending them, or Aſſaulting a Camp that is Entrench'd, or making it good. There may alſo be an Opportunity of giving Battle upon entring an Enemy's Country, when an Army comes to drive another Army out of one's own Country; either upon attempting to force a conſiderable Paſs, or ſtanding to defend it; when both Armies at the ſame Time deſign to make themſelves Maſters of ſome Town, or other Advantageous Poſt; when being almoſt ſtarv'd in a Camp where there is no Attacking of you, you are forc'd to fight, rather than die for Hunger; when you would join Two ſeparate Armies,

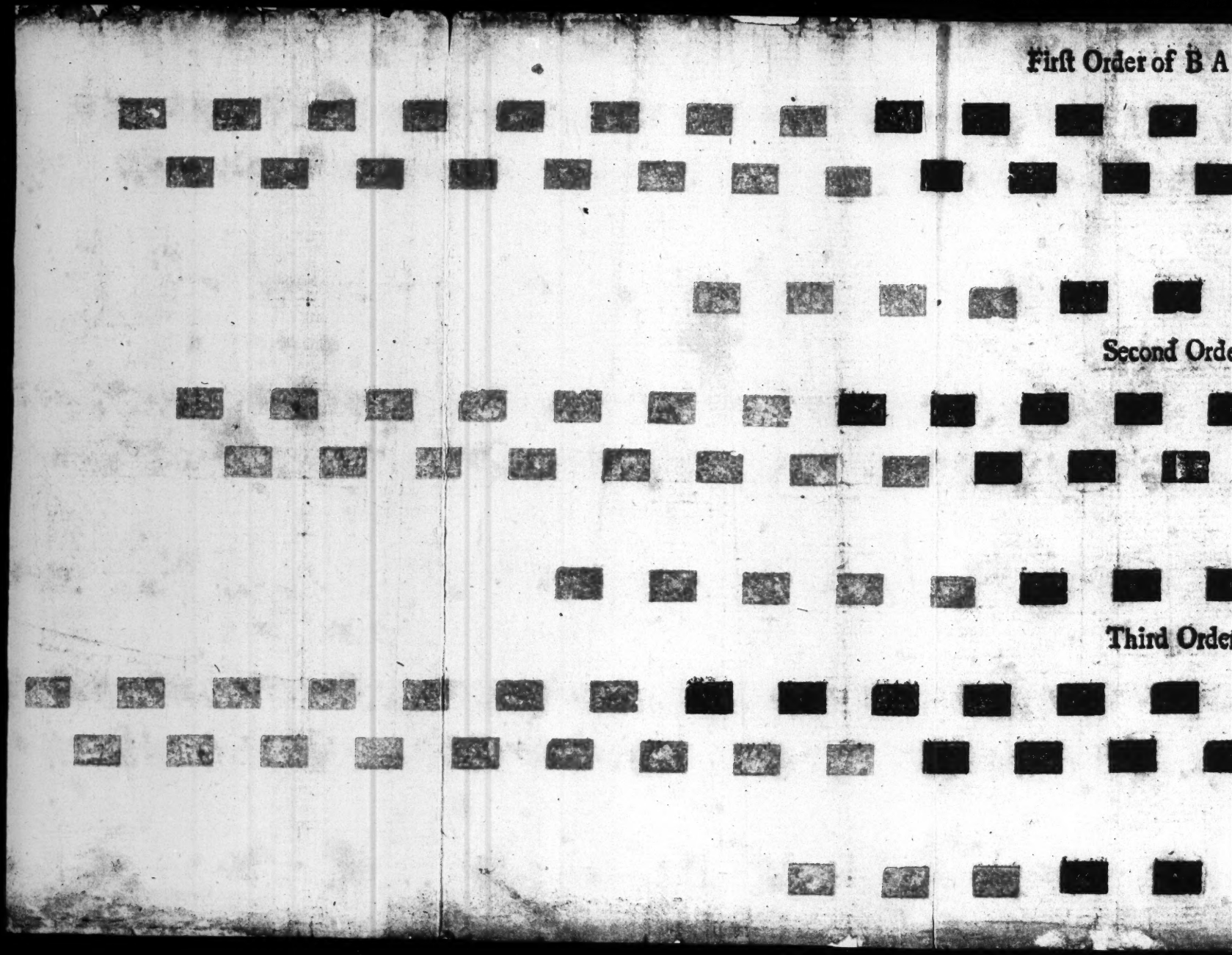
or

or hinder the Conjunction of them; when you will paſs through ſome Enemy's Country upon a Deſign, or would hinder the Enemy from croſſing yours. In ſhort, you fight either Deſignedly or Accidently, or through Compulſion.

As for Battles fought upon an Appointed Day, or by Conſent of both Parties, when you know the Condition of your Army, and the Number of Battalions and Squadrons you can make, the Order of Battle muſt be ſo contriv'd that all the Troops may ſupport one another without Confuſion, that when one Body is broke, it may not bear down another; and that they make the largeſt Front that may be, as well to prevent being outflank'd by the Enemy, if they are in more open Order, as to encloſe them if they are too cloſe. Yet they muſt not be ſo very much extended, that when one Body is broken, there ſhall be none left behind it to oppoſe them that have routed it; or that the Battalions and Squadrons ſhould be ſo far from one another, that if Two of the Enemy's happned to join to fight one of yours, thoſe on the Right or Left of it, which were not attack'd, could not come to its Relief before the Enemies had time enough to break it.

To keep a due Proportion, the Army is drawn up in Three Lines, the firſt of which is call'd the Vanguard, the Second the Main Battle, and theſe Two are almoſt of equal Force, and the Third the Rear Guard, when it is near the Force of one of the others, and the *Corps de Reſerve*, when much weaker: The Foot are plac'd in the Centre, and the Horſe on the Wings. The Squadrons muſt be at leaſt of 80, 100, or 120 Men, and of 200 at moſt, and but Three deep.

The


First Order of B A
Second Orde
Third Orde

cond Order.

ird Order.

research
publications

Fourth Order of B A T T

Fifth Order.

[redacted]

[redacted]

der.

[redacted]

[redacted]

The Battalions are of 5, 6, 7, or 800 Men, and he moſt 1000, the Pikes in the Centre, and the Muſqueteers on the Wings, and are generally 6 ep.

If the Army conſiſts of 40 Squadrons and 18 attalions, there may be 16 Squadrons and 8 Batalions in the Vanguard, 16 Squadrons and 7 Batalions in the Main Battle, and 8 Squadrons and 3 attalions in the Rear Guard, or *Corps de Reſerve*, s may be ſeen in the firſt Draught.

Or elſe 14 Squadrons and 9 Battalions in the anguard, 16 Squadrons and 5 Battalions in the ain Battle, and 10 Squadrons and 5 Battalions in e Rear Guard, as in the Second Figure.

Or elſe 16 Squadrons and 10 Battalions in the anguard, 17 Squadrons and 6 Battalions in the ain Battle; and 7 Squadrons and 2 Battalions for e Rear Guard, as in the Third Figure.

Every Man may add or diminiſh according to is own Fancy, provided he does not depart too r from this Proportion. The eldeſt Corps has e Right, the next the Left, and ſo on according the elderſhip to the Centre, which is always the ſt Place.

The firſt Line, which is the Vanguard, is more onourable than the Main Battle, and the Main attle than the Rear Guard. The Guards are alays in the Line of Battle, and never in the Van r Rear Guard, becauſe that is their fixt Poſt.

The Carabiniers, Fuziliers and General's Guards, e on the Wings, ſomewhat advanc'd before the ther Troops.

A Space of 100 Paces is allow'd between the anguard and the Main Battle, and 200 between e Main Battle and the Rear Guard.

The

The Battalions and Squadrons of the Main Battle are plac'd oppoſite to the Intervals left betwixt thoſe of the Vanguard, that they may march through them to the Enemy, and thoſe of the Vanguard, if broken, may paſs through the Intervals of the Main Battle, without bearing of them down.

The Interval is to be the full Breadth of the Front of the Battalion or Squadron that ſtains, and Eight or Ten Paces more on each Hand.

A Squadron of 120 Horſe, which has Forty in Front, and is Three Deep, will have 200 Foot in Front; that is, Five Foot for every Man, and a Battalion of 1000 Men Six Deep, and 165 in Front, muſt have a Pace of Three Foot for every Soldier; yet when they cloſe for Fight they make a leſs Front by one Third.

The Battalions and Squadrons of the Rear Guard are generally oppoſite to the Intervals of the Main Battle. There are ſeveral Ways of drawing up theſe Three Bodies, each of which has a particular Name, as the Croſs; the Checker, the Cinque or Fifth, the Sixain or the Sixth, and ſeveral others which have no Name; but the moſt uſual is that of the Croſs, and it is the cloſeſt Order becauſe the Troops of the Rear Guard are oppoſite to thoſe of the Vanguard.

Some will have the firſt Line to be much ſtronger than the Second, and do not fill up all the Intervals, eſpecially with Horſe, as the Figure demonſtrates.

I would have the Firſt Line the ſtrongeſt, and moſt extended, that it may not be outflank'd, the Second a little weaker than the Firſt, and the Third much weaker than the Second. I am

plac

cing almoſt all the Foot in the Two firſt Lines, being near uſeleſs in the *Corps de Reſerve*, beſe they cannot come time enough to relieve the oops that are bore down.

I would place more Foot in the Firſt Line than the Second, and ſupply its Place in the Second h ſome Squadrons of Horſe, which would do eat Execution, coming up to charge betwixt the o Battalions after they had ſpent their Fire; ſides it would much encourage the Foot, who e to be ſuſtain'd by the Horſe; and the rſe go on better to charge after the Muskeers have given their firſt Volleys; and the Fire Battalions has much more Effect, when the ſt Troops give the Onſet, than when they are xt, and in confuſion; and it very often happens at the Battalions of the Second Line do not end half their Volley, being come up to ſh of Pike, before they can make their Diſarge.

The Cannon is always plac'd before the Vanard; that is, the heavieſt Cannon in the Centre, d the ſmaller Pieces oppoſite to the Invals of the Battalions fartheſt on the Wings. If there be any little riſing Ground, either in ont, or on the Right or Left, the utmoſt Efrts muſt be made to gain it, in order to plant e Cannon there, and prevent the Enemy tang the ſame Advantage of it; and ſometimes an vantageous Spot of Ground has chang'd a Gene- Battle into Engagements of Regiments againſt giments, fighting one after another, to poſſeſs emſelves of the Advantage; and every one hong to gain it, retards the General Engagement one is Maſter of it. Thus the Time is ſpent Night, which often obliges One of the Two Parties

Parties to draw off, and ſometimes both, each finding their Troops much weakned, and not knowing the Damage done to the Enemy.

When your Army is drawn up you muſt endeavour to be beforehand with the Enemy, and to charge them before they are in Order of Battle. If they are ready as ſoon as you, and the Ground is equal, you muſt fall on firſt, becauſe that encourages the Soldiers; but if the Enemy's Ground is any way advantageous, as having ſome Riſing Ground to mount to come at them, or ſome Brook, Ditch, Hollow, or other bad Way to paſs, you had better expect than go to attack them, unleſs you are much ſtronger in Number than they, or ſome other preſſing Neceſſity obliges you to Fight; as for Inſtance, if your Cannon be very advantageouſly poſted; but if you think it will do great Execution on the Enemy as they draw towards you, then you muſt expect them as long as you ſhall think convenient.

When your firſt Line or Vanguard advances towards the Enemy, you muſt make the Second move almoſt the ſame Pace, leaving but a ſmall Interval between them, for fear the Firſt ſhould be broke before the Second can come up to Succour it; or if it ſhould break the Enemy's Vanguard, their Second Line may relieve it before your Second Line can come up to ſuſtain your Vanguard.

The *Corps de Reſerve* muſt not advance toward the Enemy too haſtily, but move on gently, that the broken Troops may have time to rally; and muſt never engage all at once, but ſtill leave One Squadron or Two at leaſt to ſupport it.

Whe

When you perceive your Troops are not well Courage to fall on, you must not be too hay with them, but give them Time to rally well, nd to recover their Spirits.

The General must know what is doing in those arts where he cannot be himself; and if the Disposition of the Ground hinders his Sight, he must nd some Body to hear how Things are, that he ay give Directions to proceed according as he inform'd, either to push on his Advantage, or go himself, or send Succours to these Troops at suffer.

No Prisoners must be taken, unless they are en of Note, before the Victory is certain; nor ust the Horse or Foot be permitted to disperse, plunder the Baggage, which has often caus'd e Loss of Battles.

When you are Master of the Field of Battle u must rally your Men immediately, and send me Squadrons after the Enemy, both to press them, and to take the more Prisoners, and observe whether they rally in order to renew e Charge.

When you are fully satisfy'd of the Victory in'd, and you have suffer'd your Army to disrse for Plunder; if your Forces are not too uch fatigu'd, you must send out a strong Party drive the Enemies to the Gates of their next wn, or to some Defilee, where there are of- as many Prisoners made as on the Field of ttel.

If one Part of your Army has the better of it, d the other is beaten, you must nicely observe ether the Enemies have a greater Advantage o- those of your Men whom they push, than you e over that Part of theirs where you are successful;

ceſsful; and if your Advantage is greater than theirs, you muſt not withdraw any of your Victorious Troops to ſuccour the others till they have entirely defeated thoſe that oppos'd them. But if you perceive that the Enemy preſſes more vigorouſly upon one Part of your Army than your other preſſes theirs, then ſhall you draw out as many of your Victorious Troops as can be ſpar'd to ſuccour the reſt.

You muſt always take great Care that the Troops which give Ground be ſuſtain'd by thoſe behind them, and muſt make them rally as ſoon as poſſibly you can.

As long as there are any Hopes left of gaining the Battle, you muſt charge again with the Forces you have rally'd; but if their Number be ſo ſmall in Compariſon of the Conquerors, that no Hopes remain, you muſt retire in the beſt Order you are able; and if you can rally none on the Field of Battle, you muſt do it the neareſt to it that you can, that you may be in a Condition to oppoſe any ſmall Bodies of the Enemy that ſhall purſue you, and with theſe Remains of your Army you throw your ſelf into the moſt conſiderable Town, and which it is likely they will firſt attack.

Chap. VI. *The Order of Battle for forming a Siege.*

IF the Battle be fought upon forming of a Siege, it will be either before or after the Quarters are entrench'd, or when Part of the Line of Circumvallation is drawn, or when it is finiſh'd, or elſe before

any Intrenchment has been thought of, and the Trenches open'd, which often happens when it is expected to take the Place before the Enemy's Army can come to relieve it, or when the Enemies are reckned so weak, that it is concluded they will not presume to show themselves.

As soon as ever an Army appears before a Town the General Officers are to view all the Ground about it, and especially on that Side the Enemy may come, and always keep Parties abroad to give Intelligence of their March. When they are inform'd of it, they must either resolve to expect their coming in some Advantageous Post, or else to go meet them, which is generally done; for if you expect them in One certain Place, you give them an Opportunity of relieving the Place some other Way, which is not to be done unless you think your self so weak that you have little to hope by fighting.

When you resolve to go meet the Enemy, you must first have view'd all the Way they are to come as far as possibly you can, and have observ'd the Advantageous Places to draw up before them. No certain Rule can be prescrib'd for drawing up the Forces on this Occasion, because that must be according to the Nature and Situation of the Ground; but the Order assign'd for Plains is to be follow'd as near as may be. The main thing to be observ'd is, that if there be a River, a Morass, a Wood, or a Hill on one Wing, then almost all the Horse are to be plac'd on the other; and always to keep the Foot to the Wood, if it is not too close, or along the Ridge of the Hill.

If you are stronger in Horse than the Enemy, and weaker in Foot, you must endeavour to fight them in an open Plain; but if on the contrary, you

are ſtronger in Foot than in Horſe, you muſt endeavour to fight them within Enclosures.

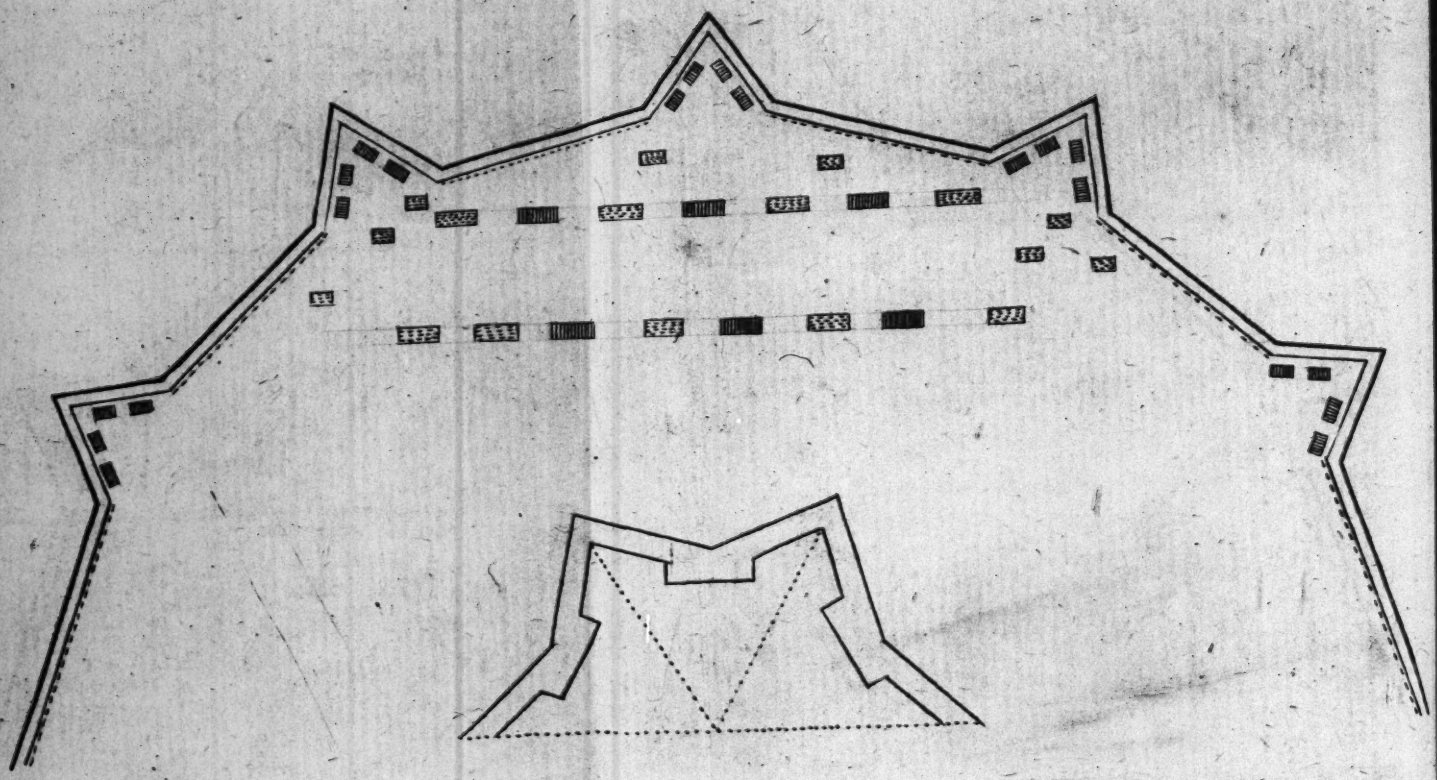
If they that come to the Relief will not hazard a Battle, they will chuſe an Advantageous Poſt, and expect you there to fall upon them; or elſe endeavour to ſteal Succours into the Place by Night, whilſt their Army lyes to countenance it, which is hard to be obſtructed when the Line of Circumvallation is not made; becauſe it is dangerous detaching Forces enough to inveſt the Place, for fear the Enemy come to attack the Army; and if you ſend but ſmall Parties to do it, there is reaſon to fear the Enemy will ſend ſtronger to get into the Place, and their Succours may get in without meeting your Parties; ſo that it is hard to form a Siege, when an Army, which is not very much inferior to yours oppoſes it.

When your Quarters are intrench'd, and the Line of Circumvallation not made, they are of no uſe to you againſt an Army that only comes to relieve the Place; and to prevent it you muſt march out of your Quarters to fight them. They are only ſerviceable to prevent being ſurpriz'd, and to gain Time for your Forces to join, in caſe the Enemy comes on unexpected. They may alſo be ſerviceable, in caſe an Army much ſtronger than yours ſhould come to the Relief before you were inform'd of their coming; in which Caſe you muſt bring all your Forces into the ſtrongeſt of your Quarters, if you have not Time enough to make your Retreat before, and then you muſt draw off in the Night.

If the Circumvallation be partly clos'd, the next thing to be conſider'd is whether it be in a Poſture of Defence, and according to that, either expect the Enemy, or quit it. The Order of Battel be-

hind

Fig: 6.



hind a Line is quite different from the others; for a third Part, or thereabouts, are posted to man the Line, and a third of the Pikes in small Parcels of 30, 40, or 50, which are to be posted for the most part in *Redans*, or Angles Sailant, those being the most considerable Places for Defence of the Line. The rest of the Forces must be drawn up in Two Lines, the first 30 Paces from the Intrenchment, and the second 100 Paces from the first Line; and you must intermix the Battalions and Squadrons, as is represented in the 6th Figure. It would be also convenient that every Squadron had 4 or 5 Files, somewhat detach'd from the rest, to be ready to charge any that begin to pass the Line, when their Number is not sufficient to oblige the whole Squadron to charge them; or else to have small Parties of 15 or 20 Men detach'd for this Purpose.

Pag. 24

Plate 6 in this Place.

All the Forces must never be posted to guard any one Part of the Line, tho' the Enemy appear before it, unless you are very sure that all their Troops are in a Body, and that they have not detach'd any Number to make an Attempt upon another Place.

The Defence of a Camp that is Intrench'd is the same as that of a Circumvallation. The chief thing to be taken Care of is, that they do not fortifie themselves within the Intrenchments; and to prevent it they must be continually charg'd as fast as they enter, and never be allow'd Time to draw up in order of Battle.

There must be also abundance of Tools ready to repair the Line when the Enemies have thrown it down, and are repuls'd, lest they should make a fresh Attack; as also to throw down the Line,

to ſalley out after them, if you find the Attacks they have made have much weaken'd and diſcourag'd their Troops.

Abundance of Cannon is of great Uſe for the Defence of Lines, becauſe there is no coming to handy Strokes ſo ſoon as in a Battle fought where there are no Intrenchments, and therefore the Cannon has more Time to do Execution. It is planted on thoſe Parts which diſcover moſt of the Plain, and in the *Redans*, whence they ſweep all the Length of the Intrenchment.

If the Enemy comes to make you raiſe the Siege of a Place, where you have neglected drawing the Line of Circumvallation, and your Trenches are open'd, in Caſe you are not much ſuperior to them, you muſt draw off all your Men, to bend your united Force againſt theirs; but if you are much ſtronger, you may leave as many Men as may ſecure your Trenches againſt the Town, and meet your Enemies with the reſt; but not go too far, for fear ſome Succour ſhould be put in another Way, which, joining with the Garriſon, might gain your Trenches.

If you are going to raiſe a Siege, and the Circumvallation is not finiſh'd, and you are in a Condition, and deſign to fight the Enemy, you muſt march directly up to the Place; yet with ſuch Circumſpection, that you have always Parties out before you, to give Advice whether they come to meet you; and take heed they do not fight you when you are half paſt a Defilee; neither do you attack them if you find them in any Poſt that is diſadvantageous to you. In this Caſe you muſt either turn to the Right or Left, without regarding them, and march another Way to the Place.

You

You muſt take Care not to paſs ſo cloſe by them that they may have an Opportunity of Attacking your Flank or Rear as you file off, but muſt keep out of their Reach; ſo that if they quit their Poſt to come at you, they may find you in a Poſture fit to receive them.

If you will not fight, and they come to meet you, keep your ſelf in ſome Advantageous Poſt; and at Night you may detach Two or Three conſiderable Parties to relieve the Place, and order them to take the greateſt Compaſs you ſhall think fit; and whilſt they endeavour to throw themſelves into the Place, do you always make Show of intending to fight, that the Enemies may not divide their Forces.

If they keep near the Place, you muſt draw as cloſe to it as you can without fighting, and there detach your Succours to relieve it.

If your Parties ſhould happen to be defeated, and the Place in danger, and you oblig'd ſoon to retire, either for Want of Proviſions, or for any other Reaſon, and that you ſhould fear the Place would be taken, or the Circumvallation finiſh'd before your Return, in this Caſe you ought to hazard a Battle, if the Place were worth it; and to this Purpoſe ſend a Party or Two to give the Enemy a falſe Alarm in the Night, ſo to oblige them to divide their Forces, and then march with your Army that Way you might think you were leaſt expected. Thus it might happen you would not meet the main Body of their Army; or that they being divided, you would be ſuperior to them; or it may fall out, that tho' you meet it entire, charging of it briskly you may defeat it, and ſo get the Place.

If the Enemies have taken up their Quarters about the Place, and are not yet Intrench'd, you muſt endeavour to ſurprize ſome one Quarter, and to put in your Succours that Way, and ſo to weaken their Army ſo much, that after this Shock you may perhaps be in a Condition to fight them.

If their Quarters are Intrench'd, and they will not come out, you muſt clap in between Two of them, and put in your Succours that Way.

If you are much ſtronger than they, you muſt attack a Quarter; or if they all get into one, when you have put Succours into the Place, you may go and Incamp between them and their Country, to ſtarve them; or if they come out, to fight them in their Retreat.

Chap. VII. *The Order of Battle for Forcing of Lines.*

IF the Circumvallation is made, and you deſign to force it, to throw in Succours, you muſt Incamp as cloſe as you can, that is, out of Cannon Shot, and at Night divide your Army into One main Body, and ſeveral ſmall ones, ſo to make Two Attacks; but they muſt not be ſo far aſunder, that if they are repuls'd the Enemy may ſalley out upon One of your Bodies, and defeat it before the other can come to its Relief; and always let your March be in the Night, that the Enemy may have no Notice of your Deſign.

The propereſt Time to attack is half or a quarter of an Hour before Day, becauſe then the Enemy not being able to diſtinguiſh betwixt

Pla

Places where you design to make a true or a false Attack, will not know how to use their Cannon till you are very near; and the Fire of their small Arms does less harm than in the Day, because the Men cannot take so good Aim; and besides, when your first Attack has gain'd you some Advantage over your Enemy, the Day coming on gives you the Opportunity to look about you, and to improve your Success. The Issue of Battles fought in the Night is much more dubious than in the Day; and very often Armies are seiz'd with a Pannick Fear, which makes them run away without any Reason; therefore this Time is very proper for Armies that attack others stronger than themselves, and will put all to the Venture; besides that, making the Attack in the Day is very bloody, by reason of the Cannon, and the small Shot, which is all under Covert, whilst your Men are all expos'd; and if you do not force the Line at first, you have so many Men kill'd that it discourages the rest of your Forces.

The Order observ'd in Attacking of Lines, is first to give Advice to the Town what Hour the Attack will be made, that they may second it by a Salley; and to know which Way they can be most serviceable to you, either by breaking through unexpectedly as far as the Line, to throw down some Part of it, or by seizing some Redoubt, if they are strong enough to undertake it; or if not, by possessing themselves of some Advantageous Spot of Ground the neareſt the Line that may be; yet so that they may not be cut off from the Place, and taking some Field-pieces along with them.

The Advantage hereof is, that the Garrison being so far advanc'd, leave the Enemy less Ground

to continue in order of Battle between them and the Circumvallation; and ſo if one of your Troops enters the Line, and the reſt are repuls'd, as it often happens, the Garriſon will receive thoſe that go to relieve them, who would otherwiſe be in Danger of being cut off betwixt the Line and the Town.

You muſt alſo know which Part of the Line is weakeſt; and there are Four Things that may contribute to make it ſo. Firſt, If the Ditch be narrower and ſhallower, and the Parapet lower than in other Parts, leſs flank'd with *Redans*, or Angles, Salliant, and leſs defended by Forts. 2*dly*, If the Ground behind it be unfit for drawing up of the Forces to defend it, as if there be Vineyards, Woods, or Moraſſes. 3*dly*, If it be ſo near the Place beſieg'd that the Cannon can reach it, and play upon the Troops poſted to defend it. 4*thly*, If it be commanded by any riſing Ground on which you can lodge your ſelf. There is another Advantage you may ſeek for, when you would attack the Lines by Day, which is to find ſome Place that may bring you cloſe up to the Line under Covert.

The Weakneſs of Lines proceeding from the Fault of the Ditch, the Parapet and Flanks, and the Inconveniency of the Ground within, where Forces cannot be drawn up, may be advantageous to you either by Day or Night; and when the Line is too near the Town, or commanded by ſome higher Ground, you muſt not be too haſty in attacking, but rather ſtand ſtill in Battle before the Places where thoſe Faults are; and if the Enemy do not poſt any great Number of Troops there, then force them; but if they do, attack them

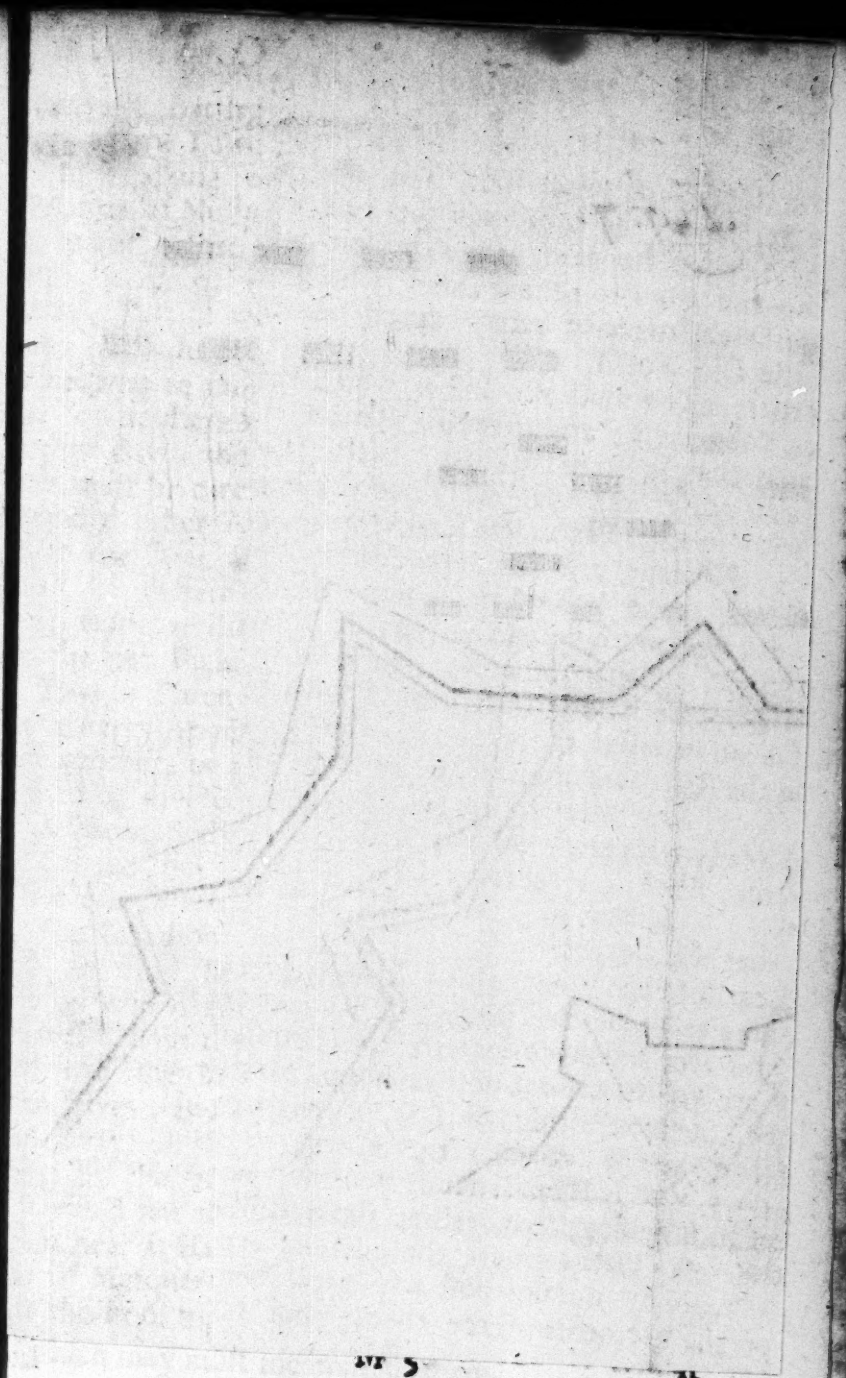
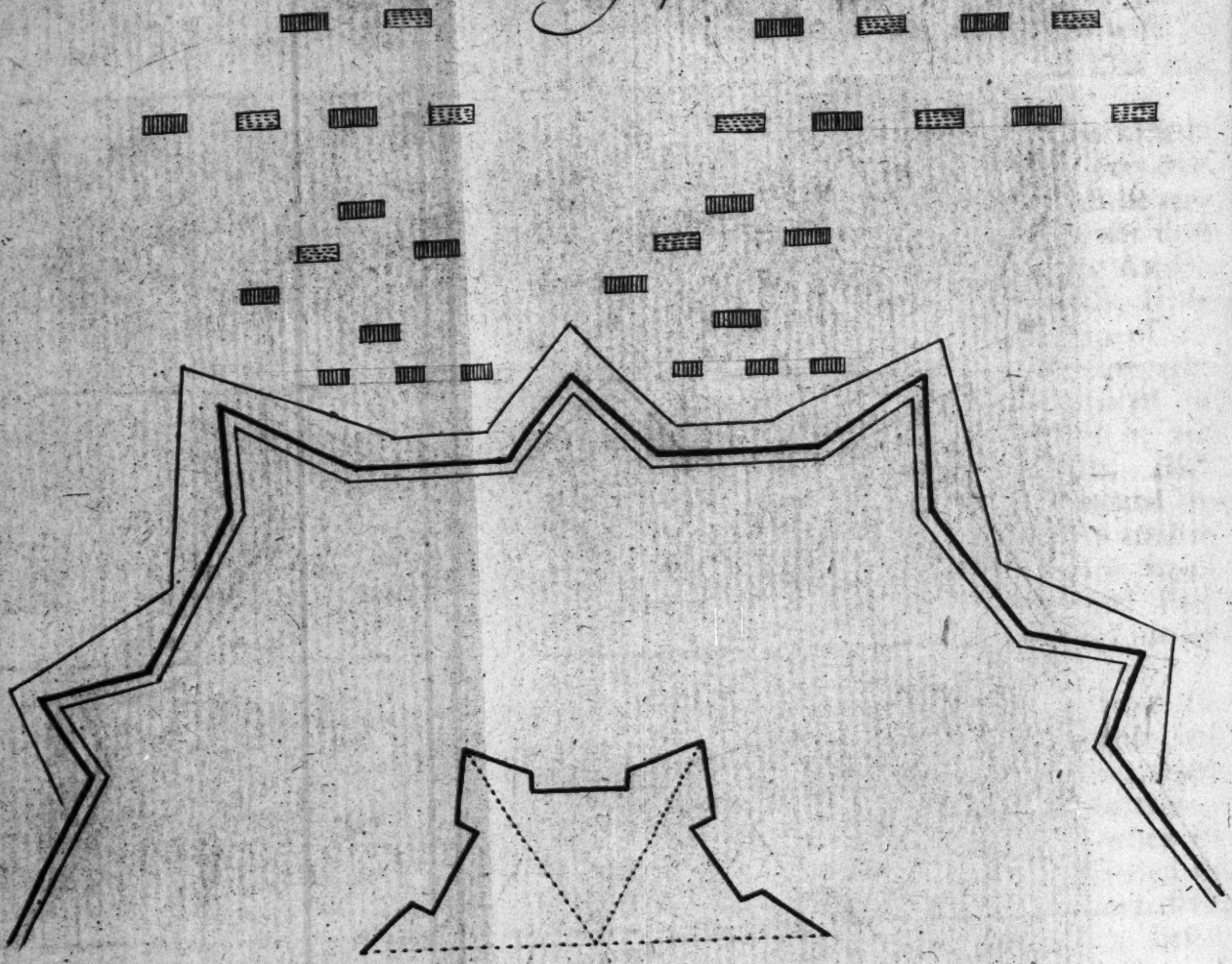


Fig: 7.



them not, but let them be deſtroy'd by the Cannon of the Town and yours.

In attacking of Lines you muſt cauſe ſeveral Pelotons of Muſqueteers, commanded by Serjeants, to march before; theſe to be follow'd by 2 or 300 Men, each of them carrying a Faſcine and his Arms, Part of them Pike, and Part Musketeers; who after throwing their Faſcines into the Ditch, endeavour to mount the Line; and after theſe muſt go 100 Soldiers with Pickaxes and other Tools to throw down the Line, that the Horſe may enter; this muſt be carefully obſerv'd, that in caſe of a Repulſe other Attacks may be made with more Eaſe the ſame Way. All theſe Men muſt be ſuſtain'd by a Battalion, always ficing whilſt the others work, as in the 7th Figure. *Here the 7th Figure.*

Two or Three Thouſand Men may be employ'd upon every Attack, and be order'd to fall on near one another, or at a ſmall Diſtance, and the Horſe are to be divided to ſuſtain them.

A ſtrong Body of Reſerve is to ſtand ready out of Cannon-ſhot; but the nearer the better, if any Place can be found that is under Covert.

The Battalions which are to ſuſtain that which falls on muſt not be directly in the Rear of it, but on the Right and Left, and at a greater Diſtance. Thus they ſee what thoſe do who attack, and can the better judge what they are to do themſelves; and cannot be diſorder'd by ſuch as run away, or the wounded Men that retire, as appears by the 7th Figure.

I would not allow above One Squadron to ſuſtain them near at Hand, and would keep the reſt juſt out of Muſquet-ſhot, cauſing them to advance as I ſaw the Foot make themſelves Maſters of the Line.

It would be convenient that the Regiments which ſuſtain ſhould have ſome Tools; becauſe in Caſe they ſhould perceive the Enemy in a Conſternation quit any other Place than that which was attack'd, they might poſſeſs themſelves of it.

If you enter an Enemy's Country with an Army, either it is to form a Siege, of which we have ſpoken, or to ravage the Country, or to take a Poſt there to ſubſiſt for ſome Time, or to hinder the Conjunction of an Army that is to rendevouz there, or to fight one that is already join'd. If your Deſign is only to ravage the Country, you divide your Army into ſo many ſeveral Bodies as you think may be done with Safety, that none of them may be beaten.

If you intend to take a Poſt to ſubſiſt upon it, you make Choice of one that is commodious for Forrage, has a healthy Air, ſo ſeated that you may have Proviſions from your own Country, in caſe that, where you are, cannot furniſh enough to ſubſiſt your Forces; and you muſt provide that in Caſe the Enemy ſhould come on very ſtrong you may retire; and for the greater Security it is beſt to Intrench.

If you go to hinder the Conjunction of an Army, you muſt make all the Haſte you can into the midſt of their Quarters, to ſurprize all that ſhall not be quick enough in retiring, and purſue the reſt as far as may be.

If you enter the Enemy's Country to fight an Army already form'd, you muſt go about it very cautiouſly, be very well inform'd of its Strength and the Place where it is, leſt you ſhould meet it in your March in ſome Place that might be to your Diſadvantage. There is no preſcribing the Order of attacking it, becauſe that muſt be regu-

lat

lar'd according to the Ground they are on, and their Strength.

When you enter an Enemy's Country you muſt be ſure to conſider the Nature of the Rivers you paſs; whether a great Shower of Rain, or the Sun melting the Snows, may not hinder you repaſſing them.

When an Enemy's Army has entred your Country, and you are to drive it out, you muſt endeavour to deſtroy it without fighting, if poſſible, as if it has ventur'd in too far, or has paſs'd ſome River that is not fordable, or ſome Paſs on a Mountain, or a Moraſs; and this may be done by carrying off the Proviſions that are before them in your Towns, or burning them, and poſting your ſelf between the River, or other Paſſes or Defilees, and their Country, to hinder their getting any Subſiſtence from thence, or returning thither. Sometimes they may be deſtroy'd; if they are in a flat Country, and full of Water, by overflowing the Places where they are incamp'd; either opening the Sluices that keep in the Water, or cutting the Dikes, or ſwelling the Rivers, by ſtopping their Courſe. They may alſo be deſtroy'd by ſecuring ſeveral Poſts, which cut off their Convoys.

If they find Subſiſtence enough in your Country, and will not venture to retire, you muſt go attack them in their Poſt, unleſs it be too advantageous; but if you do not think fit to attack them in it, you muſt intrench ſtrongly as cloſe as poſſibly you can to them, and leaving ſome Troops there, go make another Intrenchment oppoſite to the firſt; and thus keeping them in, hinder their getting any Subſiſtence from your Country; or if you will not divide your Army, for fear they ſhould take that Opportunity to make their Retreat, you muſt incamp on that Ground which may moſt incommode them.

Chap.

Chap. VIII. *The Order of Battle for Forcing a Paſs.*

IF you would Force any conſiderable Paſs, to get into an Enemy's Country, it muſt be a Paſs on the Mountains, or over a River, or a Moraſs, or an Intrenchment, of which Sorts there are many in the *Low Countries.*

Upon this Occaſion all depends on Celerity, eſpecially in gaining Paſſes on Mountains, whence it is very difficult driving of thoſe who have once lodg'd themſelves.

If you could not get thither before them, you muſt endeavour to Surprize your Enemies when they are not very Numerous. If your Attempt does not ſucceed, or that there is no likelihood of ſucceeding by Surprize, and you muſt do it by open Force, you muſt endeavour ſome other Way to Gain an Eminence above them; or if they are not extraordinary Strong, and are ſhut up with Barriers, attack them with Petards, Scaling-ladders and Hand Granadoes.

If it be a Tower or Caſtle that ſecures the Paſs, you muſt endeavour to Petard, or fix the Miner to it; and yet if Men have never ſo little Mind to Defend themſelves in ſuch Mountain Places, it is very hard to Beat them away, eſpecially if they have an Army near them.

In all Enterprizes upon Difficult Places, you muſt always forecaſt how you may Retire; and if any Paſs muſt be left behind, you muſt be ſure to leave a good Guard upon it.

If you are to Force a Paſs upon a River, you muſt Nicely obſerve the moſt Convenient Places to paſs

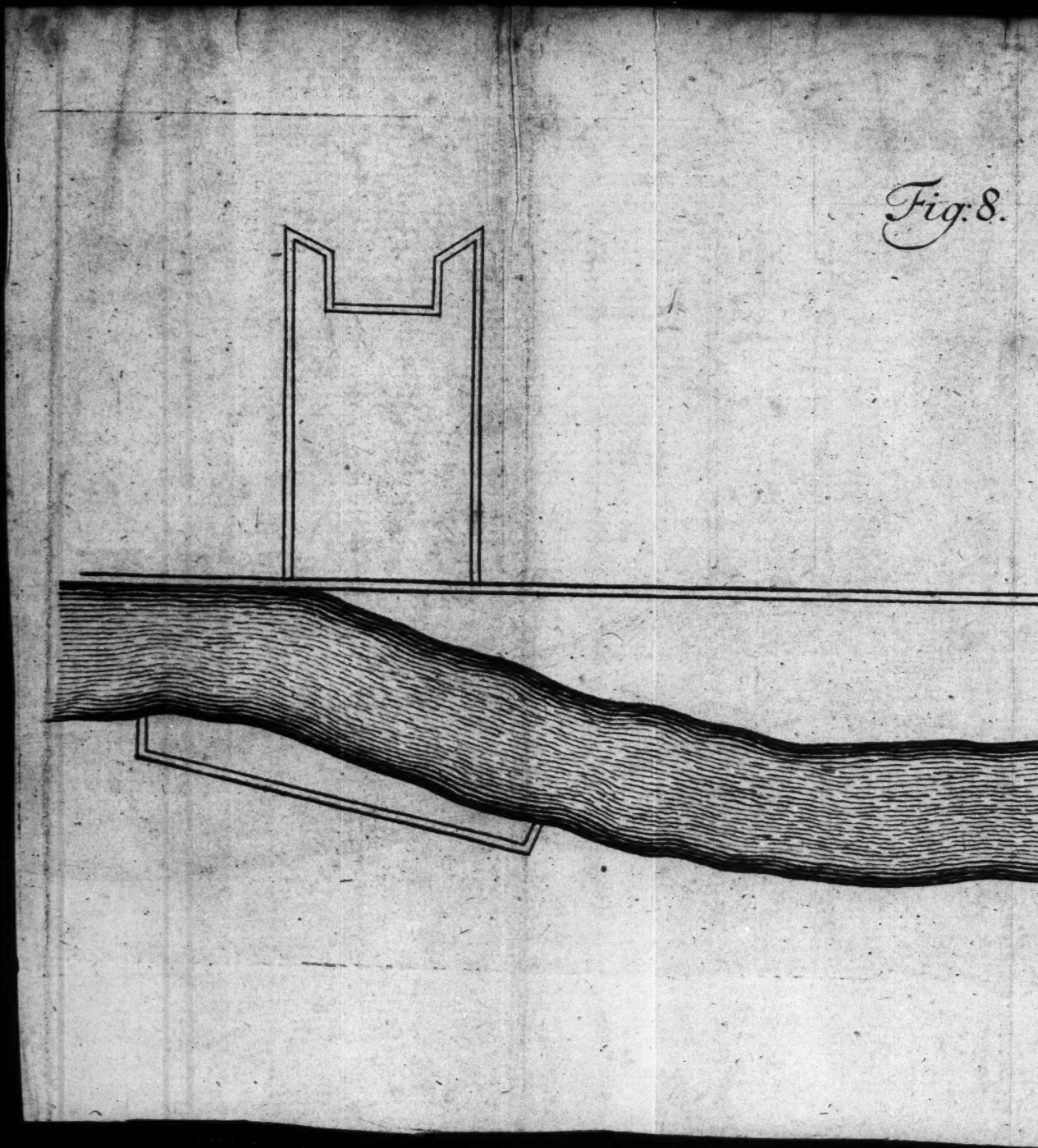
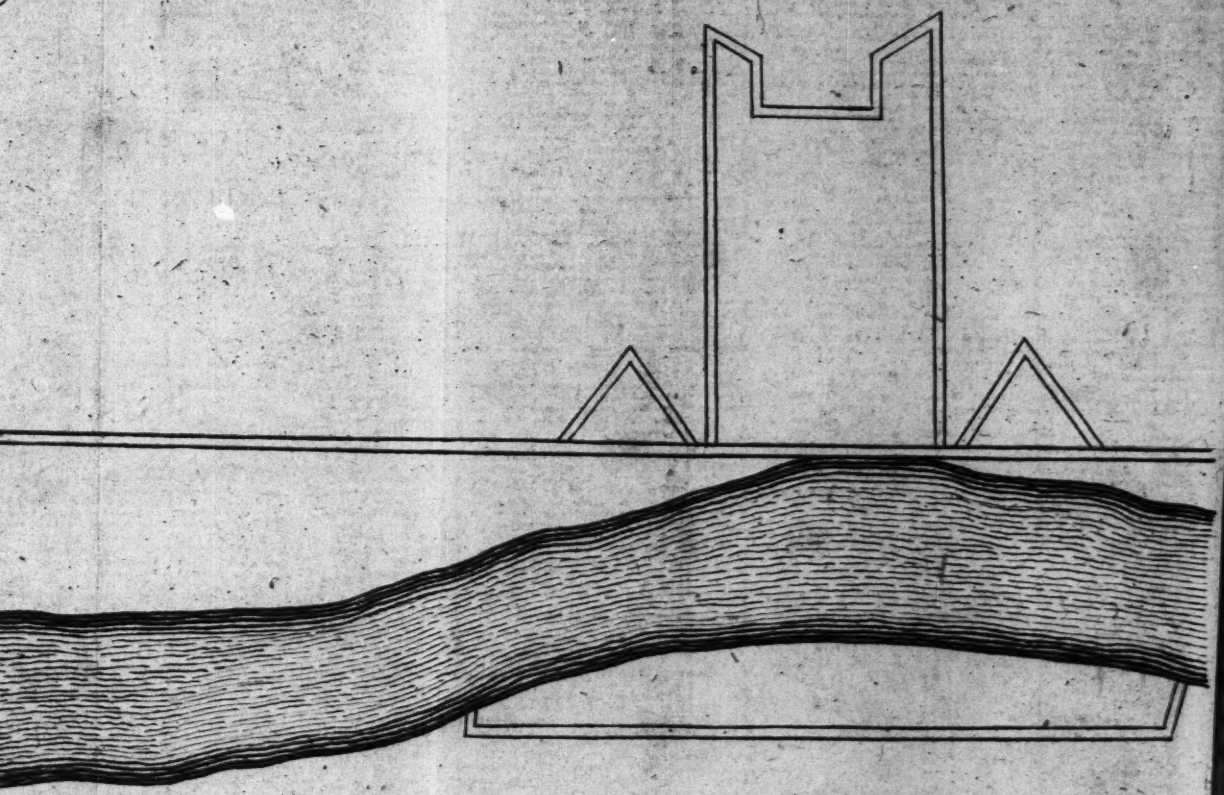

Fig: 8.

Fig: 8.

Pag. 253.



ſs on your Side; and if there be any riſing Grounds for the Purpoſe, that your Cannon may inder the Enemy's Troops drawing up there.

When you have view'd the Place, you may ake a ſhow of paſſing in ſeveral Places; and when our Cannon is planted, throw up a Parapet on the ank of the River about 1000 Fadom in length, acing Musketeers behind it; then put your B ats to the Water, and ſend over ſome Men, part usketeers, and part Workmen, who ſhall throw p a Half Moon. When that is done, ſend over ore to Defend it, in caſe it be Attack'd, and her Workmen to make another Half Moon on e Right, or on the Left of the Firſt, as in Fi- ure 8.

If the Enemies do not preſs upon you whilſt e Firſt Half Moon is making, you ay carry on a Horn Work, the *Fig.* 8. *here.* Vings of it to be flank'd by your irſt Parapet, and the Cannon lodg'd there. If e River is ſo broad that a Musket cannot Defend e Wing of the Horn Work, it muſt be defended the Half Moons made beyond the Water.

It may be objected, that if the Half Moons are ade, the Horn Work is needleſs; but there may Time enough to throw up the Half Moons, and t the Horn Work.

In the mean while you muſt labour hard at the idge, and as ſoon as finiſh'd make the Troops ſs, if the Enemy is not on the Spot; but if they e, the Horn Work muſt be finiſh'd, that they y not fall upon the Forces as they paſs. When e Horn Work is finiſh'd, as ſtrong as ſhall be ought Neceſſary, as many Foot are poſted in it it can conveniently hold, and ſome Field-pieces; n the Cannon that is on the Hill keeping the Enemy

Enemy at a diſtance, the Cavalry may be made t
paſs. Yet this is not done, unleſs it be b
fore an Army much weaker than your own; for
they were near as ſtrong when you were half ove
they would fall in with you, and then neither yo
Cannon nor Musketeers could do them any mo
Harm; and though they could not Force your l
trenchment, yet they would cut off all that wo
without it.

Therefore if their Army were near as ſtrong
yours, you ought to finiſh your Horn Work, a
at the ſame Time making another Bridge, and an
ther Horn Work, at ſome diſtance from the Fir
draw a Line from the one to the other, as in t
8th Figure.

The laſt and ſafeſt Way is to ſecure a Paſs
ſome diſtance from the Place where you lye, t
the Enemy may not preſently have Notice of
and to keep part of your Forces as long as you c
before them, giving them the leaſt Occaſion t
may be to ſuſpect that you have detach'd a
Troops.

If on the other ſide the River where you deſ
to paſs there be any Brook, Moraſs, Ditch, h
low, or Riſing Ground, or other Difficult Paſs,
any Eminence at Hand, on which the Forces m
conveniently Lodge themſelves, and Plant Cann
it will be requiſite ſpeedily to make ſome Redo
on the Paſſes, in caſe the Enemies are not th
already; for if they are much weaker than y
they may come and Intrench there, and ſecu
that Second Paſs, make the Firſt Uſeleſs.

If you are to Guard ſuch a Paſs, you muſt v
all Places along the River that are moſt Proper
that Purpoſe, throw up Forts and Redoubts be
them if you can, and cauſe the Country Peopl

be upon Guard, if you fear to divide your Army too much; and though you cannot Fortifie any Place, yet you muſt not forbear to keep Guard, that you may have Notice when the Enemy comes, and be ready to receive their Army, endeavouring by Spies, or other Means, to get Intelligence when they make any Detachment, to Surprize another Paſs.

If you think the Paſſes ſo Difficult that a part of your Army can eaſily defend them, you may divide the remainder into as many Parts as you ſhall think fit to ſecure the other Paſſes from Surprize. If your Army is ſo far Inferior to the Enemy's, that they Deſpiſe it, and will paſs by main Force, you muſt make the beſt of them according to the Circumſtances.

If they come to draw up with their Field-pieces on the edge of the Water, and have planted their heavy Cannon on ſome higher Ground, reſolving to paſs without any Intrenchment under the Fire of their Cannon and ſmall Arms, which they ſuppoſe will keep you at a diſtance, then in caſe you have no Advantageous Place to Plant your Cannon, you muſt Poſt it a Muſket-ſhot from their Paſſage, either above or below it, that ſo making an Epaulment to cover you againſt their Artillery, you may Fire upon the Paſs without being expos'd. If there be any Trees or Hedges to be found, you muſt take the Advantage of that Covert, becauſe it is very dangerous lodging of Cannon in the Sight of great Batteries. If there is any hollow Way, Ditch, Ridge of Ground, or Hedge whatſoever, you muſt Lodge as many Foot as you can there, and endeavour to ſtrengthen your Lodgment the beſt you can; yet if all your Efforts cannot hinder them paſſing, as ſoon as a Part which is weaker than

than your Army is over, you muſt ruſh in upon them briskly, that in the Confuſion they may not Fire upon you without killing their own Men.

If they make a Parapet on the edge of the Water on their Side, and Detach ſome Men to make a Half Moon, and their Bridge, and that your Cannon and Small-ſhot cannot be ſo well Lodg'd as to hinder them, you muſt, if the Place be Inconvenient for Horſe, ſend down ſome ſmall Parties, yet ſtronger than thoſe that are paſt; for if you ſend great Bodies, they will receive more Damage from the Enemies beyond the Water, than you can receive Advantage by the Defeat of thoſe that are paſt.

If when you come to the Paſs the Enemies have already made a Half Moon you muſt Attack it vigorouſly, provided there be the leaſt likelihood of carrying it, and you think it convenient. If you are repuls'd, you muſt endeavour to obſtruct their throwing up other Works, by poſting your Cannon and Small-ſhot advantageouſly for that Purpoſe. But if once they have a good ſafe Half Moon, and they be not too haſty, it will be difficult obſtructing their Paſſage; becauſe the Workmen they ſend out to make other Intrenchments will retire to the Ditch of the Half Moon, if you preſs upon them: and thoſe that ſuſtain them will force you to Retire with their Volleys, and the Aſſiſtance of thoſe that are beyond the Water, and then the Men will ſoon return to their Work; and as often as you attack them they will kill more of your Men than you can of theirs. However, tho' theſe little Attacks coſt you ſome Men, if by that Means you can Retard the Work till Night, it will be a great Advantage to you; for then, being out of Sight of their Fire, you may go make Lodgments for Muſ-

keteers

keteers, and raiſe Batteries as near their Works as poſſible, ſo that in the Morning thoſe who are Lodg'd in them with their Fire will hinder the Enemies from extending their Works; and to prevent their working by Night, you muſt ſalley out and attack them as often as they go about it; which will not be very dangerous, their Fire beyond the Water being of no Uſe, and that of the Half Moon being but a ſmall Security. And in caſe you cannot hope to hinder their paſſing, it will be much eaſier for you to Retire by Night than by Day.

In caſe you find the Paſs well ſecur'd with Works, or that you cannot hinder it, then if there be a Moraſs, Ditch, or Ridge, or any other Advantageous Ground, you muſt Intrench your ſelf upon the edge of it, to obſtruct their Second Paſſage.

When the Enemy and you have both a Deſign at the ſame Time to Poſſeſs your ſelves of an Advantageous Poſt, it often occaſions a Battle. The Precautions you muſt uſe in this Caſe are, to ſend out Scouts towards them; not to March without a good Number of ſmall Parties out before you, to prevent meeting them in any dangerous Place; to ſend a ſtrong Detachment before you to take Poſſeſſion of the Poſt, and expect you there, in caſe you fear the Enemy ſhould Prevent you, provided your Detachment can Maintain it till you come up. If you know the Enemies have any Difficult Defile to paſs, you muſt ſend thither to Retard their March, either by Spoiling the Ways, or Skirmiſhing with them.

When an Army more numerous than your own has inveſted you, and cut off your Proviſions, and you ſee no Hopes of getting any without hazarding a Battle, you muſt then make an Attempt,

tempt, either in order to get clear out of your Poſt, or to bring in a Convoy.

If you would bring in a Convoy, you muſt order it to come with the greateſt Secrecy that may be that Way you think the Ground will be moſt Proper for you to meet it, without hazarding a Diſadvantageous Battle; and to this Purpoſe you muſt March out to meet it with all your Strength; for though you ventur'd but little before the coming of the Convoy, yet the loſs of it would loſe all, if your Safety depended on its coming Safe.

If you think there is as much Difficulty in bringing a Convoy, as in leaving your Poſt; or that if it ſhould come, though it ſubſiſted you for a few Days, yet there would be the ſame Hazard ſoon after in bringing another, ſo that the Delay would be no Advantage to you, it were better to make your Effort at firſt than to ſtay any longer, becauſe an Army is always declining, and for the moſt part loſes Courage and Strength.

Then in order to Force your Way, you muſt either leave your Baggage in the Place you are to quit with ſome Guard; or if the Place cannot be defended without leaving many Men, you muſt take all with you, for fear of weakning your ſelf; and if you fear your Baggage may Encumber you and hinder the Retreat you hope to make without it, then muſt it be burnt, and only the beſt ſav'd.

You muſt ſet forward at Night-fall, after having well view'd the eaſieſt Way, and at the ſame Time ſend Parties to give the Alarm in ſeveral other Places that the Enemy may be in Doubt which Way you will draw off. If you carry off your Baggage, you muſt always keep betwixt it and the Enemy; that is when the Enemy is in the Rear, the Baggage before you; and on your Left if they are on the Right

Right; and ſo on the Right, if they are on the Left.

If the Enemy is before you you muſt March on Fighting Courageouſly, and the ſame if they attack you briskly in the Rear, or on the Flank; but if they come on but ſlowly to Retard you till all their Forces come up, then you muſt not ſtop at all, but defend your ſelf retreating, never loſing Time to ſuſtain the Troops that are attack'd, tho' ſome of them be loſt; nay, ſometimes it is abſolutely neceſſary to Reſolve to loſe a ſmall part to ſave the greater; but this Reſolution is never to be taken, unleſs in the greateſt Extremity.

When you will bring together Two of your Armies, and the Enemy is in the middle between them, to hinder their Conjunction you muſt appoint the Rendevouz upon the ſame Spot, and at at the ſame Hour, on the Right, or on the Left of the Enemy, that ſo you may endeavour to join before they have got Intelligence of your March; or if there be no paſſing without Attacking them in their Poſt, then both muſt come up and fall on at the ſame Time.

If you can find Means of joining elſewhere, but that there is ſome River or Defile to paſs before the one can come at the other, then the Army that is not to paſs muſt be there firſt to expect the other, and throw up ſome Redoubts or Parapets Expeditiouſly, to Lodge Musketeers in them to ſecure the Paſs in caſe the Enemy ſhou'd offer to come to Fight the other Army ſeparately from yours; and in this caſe you muſt paſs to Relieve it.

If the Enemy Marches to meet One of your Armies, it muſt endeavour to avoid giving Battle till the other is come up, which may be done by ſecuring an Advantageous Poſt. Some-

Sometimes a General is drawn in to give Battle when an Army comes to Beſiege a Place, which he has newly taken, before he Decamps from before it. But if after taking the Place he will avoid Fighting, and prevent its being Beſieg'd again, he muſt furniſh it as Expeditiouſly as he can with Ammunition and Proviſions, Repair the Breaches, and add what Fortifications he thinks fit; and though your Convoy be not quite ready, or ſo compleat as you would have it, yet if there be Cauſe to fear the Enemy may come on before its Arrival, the beſt Way will be to make it come away as it is, and ſend back immediately for the reſt; it is a great Satisfaction to have ſome part, when we cannot have all.

As ſoon as ever you are Maſter of the Place, you muſt only keep that part of the Line of Circumvallation which is moſt Advantageous, joining it to the Town with an Intrenchment, that your Army may not be too far divided, and then throw down all the reſt.

When the Enemy comes to Beſiege the Place, if you have almoſt put it into the Poſture you deſire, you muſt put in all the Proviſions and Ammunition you have for your Army, and Retire into your own Country, leaving ſuch a Number of Forces as you think requiſite for its Defence. Howſoever, you muſt take Care not to leave your ſelf ſo bare of Proviſions or Ammunition, that the Enemy take any Advantage of it, if they purſue you; and that they may not hinder your coming to the Place where you can be ſupply'd before what you have is ſpent.

If they come and Incamp betwixt you and your Country, and you do not think your ſelf in a Condition to give them Battle, you muſt continue in your

your Camp, provided you have Proviſions enough to ſtay for conſiderable Succours. If you will not ſtay, and have Proviſions enough in the Place, you muſt make your Retreat as much unknown to the Enemy as you can, leaving your heavy Cannon in the Town, in caſe you had not Time to ſend it away before.

If the Place is not ſufficiently provided, and yet you have Hopes of doing it, you muſt ſtay in your Camp, to hinder the Enemies forming the Siege; and cauſe the Convoys to come with Secrecy, ſending Parties of your Forces to meet them, ſometimes one Way, and ſometimes another. In this Caſe you muſt conſider which is the greateſt Concern, the Army, or the Place, and venture the leaſt, to ſecure the moſt.

If you are to croſs an Enemy's Country to Relieve a Town of your own, or an Ally's, you muſt March with all poſſible Expedition by Way of Surprize, carrying nothing with you that is heavy; tho' ſometimes there is a Neceſſity of carrying heavy Cannon, where there is ſome Caſtle or Town in the Way, through which you muſt paſs of Neceſſity. And if you are attack'd upon your March, you muſt loſe as little Time as you can, but hold on your Way as much as may be, unleſs you find ſome very Advantageous Time or Place to give Battle.

If you would hinder an Enemy's Army from croſſing your Country, you muſt endeavour to cut off its Van at ſome Paſs, or elſe to fall upon its Rear, when half paſt ſome Defile, ſo to give it a Check till all the Country is in Arms, and all your Forces are join'd; and you muſt endeavour as much as may be to avoid coming to a Battle, unleſs it be upon great Advantage, becauſe Fighting in your own Country, the Loſs of One Battle may loſe all.

Chap.

Chap. IX. *The Order of Battle Retreating.*

A General can never give greater Teſtimony of his Courage and Conduct than in a fighting Retreat. There is ſo little Difference betwixt this, Action and Flying, that unleſs the Commanders Reſolution and Prudent Orders make it known to the Soldiers, they will be apt to miſtake the one for the other.

Retreats may be forc'd, or voluntary; of a ſmall Number before a greater, or a greater one before a leſs.

Voluntary Retreats, are when an Army being Incamp'd before an Enemy, will change its Poſt for Conveniency, or marches to form a Siege, or upon ſome other Deſign. In voluntary Retreats there is ſcarce ever any Difficulty, being no Neceſſity compelling, they are not undertaken when there is any great Difficulty in them.

Forc'd Retreats are when an Army having its Proviſions cut off, or being hindred from Forrage is oblig'd to venture to march off, rather than periſh in its Poſt. It may alſo be forc'd to retire when his Prince ſends the General a poſitive Order to return into his Country, on account of any Diſorder there, as a Rebellion, or an Irruption of ſome other Enemy.

If the Army that retreats is ſtronger than that which purſues, all the Care will be to provide that, at all Defiles it muſt paſs, the Troops in the Rear be not too far divided from the reſt; and

hat in caſe they are attack'd they may be eaſily ſuccour'd. If it is to file off into a Wood, a great Number of Musketeers muſt be poſted on the Right and Left till all the Horſe are paſt. The heavy Cannon and Baggage is to march in the Front, with only One or Two Squadrons, and ſome few Musketeers, as well to diſappoint any Ambuſh, as to prevent the Baggages falling into Confuſion.

If the General ſuſpects the Enemy will detach Parties from their Army, or ſend Troops from their Garriſons or Country towards the Front of his Army, either to cut off his Van in ſome difficult Paſs, or to plunder the Baggage, he muſt detach from his Army ſuch Forces as he ſhall think neceſſary to prevent theſe Inconveniencies, either ſecuring the Baggage, or the Place he is to file off through.

In all Defiles he muſt cover himſelf with his Cannon as much as may be, lining the edges of the Paſs with Field-pieces, and with all his Cannon, if he perceives the Enemy will charge him when he is half through.

If he is in ſuch a Condition as to deſire to come to a Battle, he muſt do his Endeavours to draw the Enemies to it, either by turning back upon them when they have paſt ſome dangerous Defile after them, or elſe by drawing up in Battle behind ſome Hill or Wood with the greateſt part of his Forces, and cauſing the Baggage and the reſt to hold on their March, ſo to take from the Enemy the Knowledge of his Ambuſh, and to fall upon their Flank when they are advanc'd towards the Baggage.

If the retiring Army is weaker than that which purſues, which happens oftneſt, it muſt march with

with all poſſible Expedition, even tho' it ſhould loſe ſome Soldiers that could not keep up with it, and ſhall ſacrifice ſome part of its Troops, if there be no likelihood of ſaving the whole; but the General muſt never come to this Reſolution, unleſs in the utmoſt Neceſſity, no more than to quit all, or any part, of his Cannon; yet as for the Baggage, if the Retreat be not very eaſie, he muſt encumber himſelf with as little as may be, carrying off only the beſt, and burning the reſt. If he is ſo hard preſs'd that there is no avoiding a Battle, he muſt make choice of an advantageous Opportunity for himſelf, endeavouring as much as may be to draw up behind a Wood or Mountain, as was ſaid above, that he may fall upon the Enemies Flank, or elſe as they purſue him, making a quick Countermarch after paſſing a Defile, that he may engage one part of the Enemies Army before it can have time to join all together.

In theſe Caſes of Compulſion there is no Counting the Numbers of Men; for tho' you judge you are but Half, or the Third Part of the Number, yet you may lay hold of ſuch an Opportunity, and with ſuch Reſolution, that you may deſtroy them.

If you ſhould happen to be ſo weak that no Good could be done by fighting, or ſpeedy marching; or if a ſufficient Number of the Enemy to hinder your paſſing were got before; then the laſt Reſolution is to ſave what may be ſav'd, by dividing the Army into Four or Five Bodies, which muſt all go ſeveral Ways to make their Eſcape; and thus the Enemy not being able ſoon to divide themſelves to follow them all,

Fig: 9

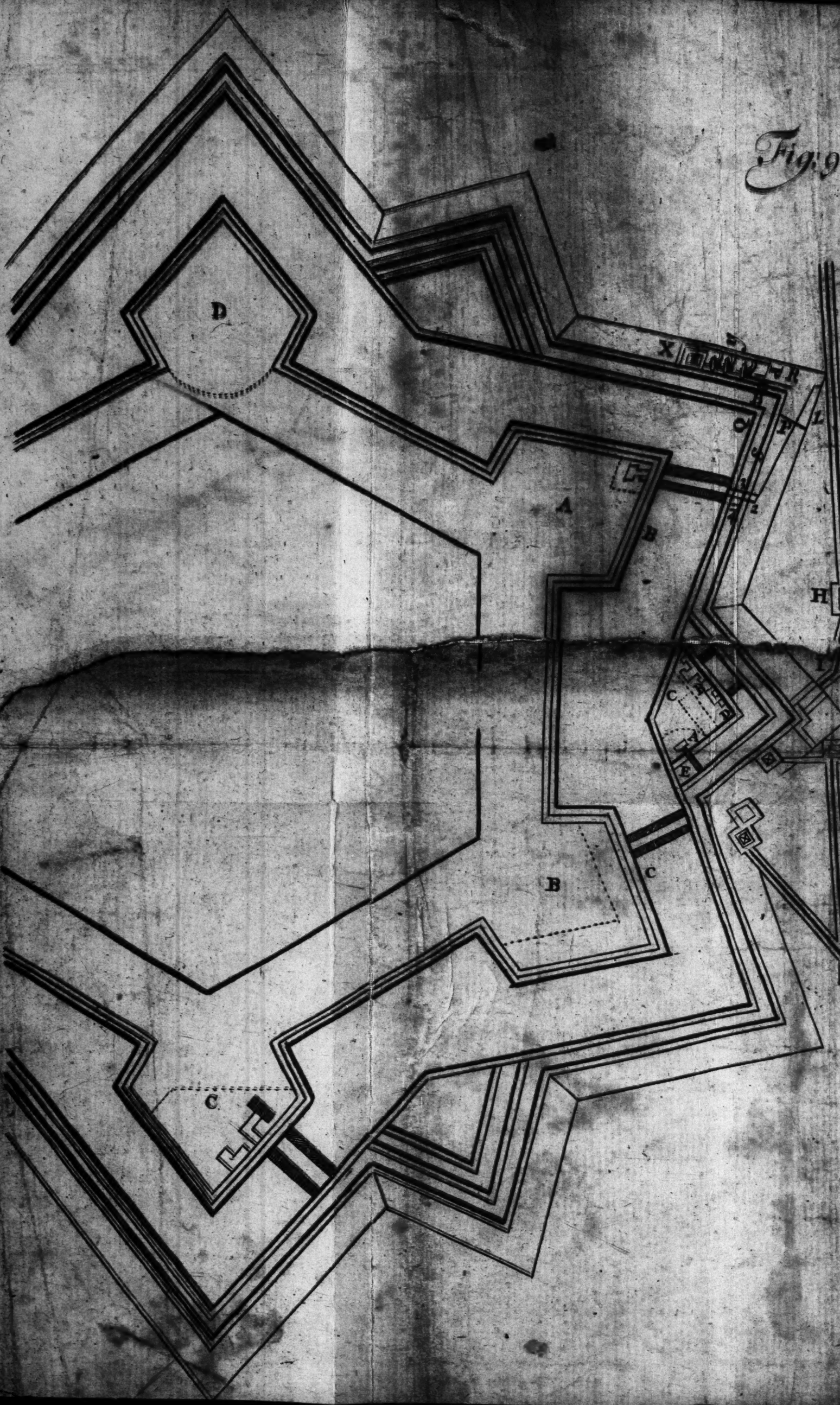
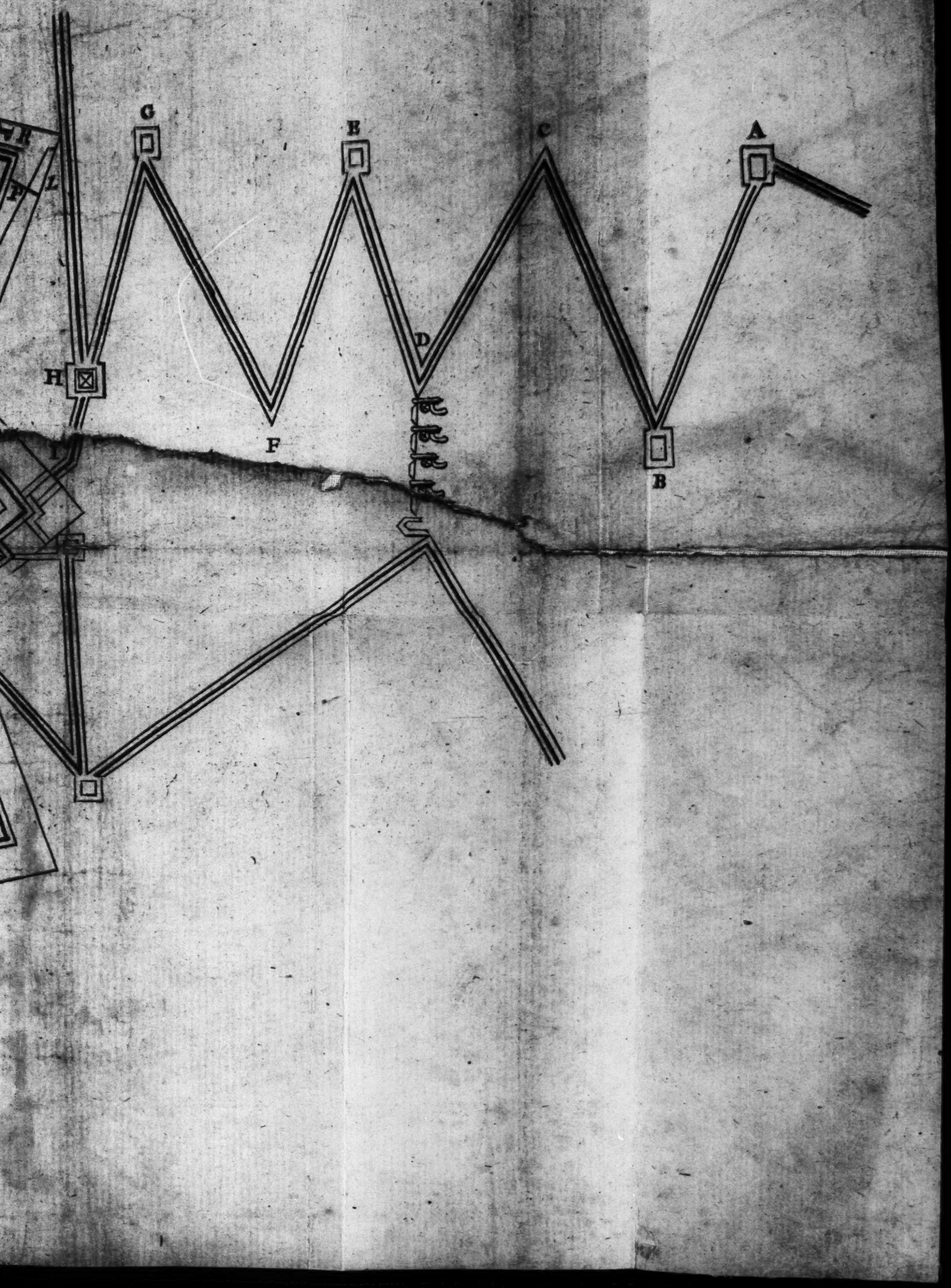


Fig. 9.



ſome of them will have the good Fortune not to be purſu'd, or to make their eſcape if they are.

But if the retiring Army is not above one third weaker than that which purſues, and the General does not think his Troops are better than the Enemies, or elſe will not engage in Battle becauſe he has Orders to the contrary, then ſhall he quit the worſt of his Baggage, as has been ſaid; and if he can leave his Cannon in ſome Place of Safety, only take with him ſuch Pieces as will not retard his march, and then ſet forwards with the greateſt Secrecy he can to gain Time upon the Enemy.

He is to march Day and Night as long as he is able, till the Enemy begins to come up to him, never halting any more than he thinks abſolutely neceſſary, not to ſpend the Men and Horſes outright; but when the Enemy comes up to him he muſt march ſomewhat ſlower, and in the beſt order he can, always ſending before him to mend the Ways; he muſt ſend careful underſtanding Men and ſuch as are in Authority, that the Work may be done with all poſſible Expedition, being the moſt neceſſary thing in Retreats.

If any Party of the Enemy detaches it ſelf too far from the main Body of the Enemy to purſue him, he muſt charge it furiouſly, or if he can, cut it off by an Ambuſh, or by ſome Squadrons ſent about cut off their Retreat whilſt he attacks them with others.

In all ſtreight Paſſes he muſt be ſure to Poſt Muſketeers to Skirmiſh with the Enemy, and retard their march, and in Plains ſhall march in the cloſeſt order he can; and ſhall retire through the Plains, or covert Ways, according as he is ſtronger or weaker than the Enemy in Horſe or Foot.

He muſt always endeavour to make his Halts either by Day or by Night on the edge of ſome Defilee, after he has paſt it, that the Enemy may not be able to fall upon him then. If he perceives his Army has made a very long march in a ſhort time, and has reaſon to believe the Enemy has left ſo many behind which could not keep up with their main Body, that they cannot then be ſo ſtrong as himſelf, or elſe ſuppoſes them to be more haraſs'd than himſelf, he may lay hold of that Opportunity to give them Battle. If he paſſes through a large Wood he ſhall cauſe as many Trees as he can to be cut down acroſs the Wood, for it requires much more time to remove than to fall them.

All Orders of Battel for a Retreat cannot be preſcrib'd, by reaſon of the Diverſity of Circumſtances, which require they ſhould be alter'd as the Enemies Strength or Weakneſs in Horſe or Foot, their Nearneſs or Diſtance, and the Ground; but the General Rule in theſe Caſes is never to draw up in Battle, unleſs compell'd to fight, that being the Incommodious Order for marching. The uſual way of retiring is in Columns, excepting a ſmall Body in the Rear, which retreats in Order of Battle, and in an Army of 15 or 20000 Men uſually conſiſts of 8 or 10 Squadrons, and 2 or 3 Battalions, and theſe to march in a Line in an open Country, only keeping Two Squadrons behind them to amuſe the Enemy.

In an inclos'd Country the Batalions and Squadrons muſt be intermixt, and detach'd Muſketeers muſt bring up the Rear. Since no certain Rule can be given for Retreats, all that can be ſaid is, that Secrecy in ſetting forwards, Diligence in marching, Care of mending the Ways, and Cunning in fighting, are all the Advantages in this Part of War.

Chap.

Chap. IX. *Of Sieges.*

BEfore you inveſt a Place, you muſt be inform'd of its Strength, which conſiſts in the Condition it is in, and that it may be reduc'd to. It may be ſtrong in it ſelf, or by reaſon of the eaſineſs of Succouring it; and if it be ſtrong in it ſelf, it muſt be either by Nature or Art.

Places are ſtrong by Nature when they are difficult of Acceſs, either for being ſeated in a Moraſs, or for being encloſs'd with Rivers, or Waters, as Lakes or Parts of the Sea, which Waters cannot be waded through; and if they do not Freeze over in Winter, that is ſtill a great Advantage to ſuch Places. They are alſo very ſtrong when ſeated high with Steep and Rocky Avenues, eſpecially if thoſe Rocks are hard to be undermin'd, or where there is no Water and Forrage near, and ſo great Armies cannot ſtay long about them, which Advantages make Places almoſt impregnable. Yet here are others, which tho' not ſo conſiderable, yet make Places very ſtrong, as the difficulty the Army that Attacks will find in bringing their Convoys, if the Ground about the Place is ſo ſtony that there will be much difficulty in carrying on the Trenches, or is ſo low that there is no digging without meeting the Water, or is all a looſe Sand; and if ſeveral great Rivers meet near the Place, and ſo the Quarters of the Beſiegers muſt be at a diſtance from one another, and their Communication difficult, eſpecially if the Land is marſhy among their Camp; and when the Place is encompaſs'd with high Mountains, which are full Cannon-ſhot from it, and therefore the Circumvallation muſt

be carry'd a great way about; or ſo ſeated that the Lines cannot be carry'd up to the higheſt Part of them; and thoſe that ſhall come to relieve the Place will always command the Beſiegers Lines. Such Places muſt never be beſieg'd unleſs they be found altogether unprovied, and there he hopes of taking them in a few Days or without the Beſiegers are ſo ſtrong in the Country round about that they are ſure no Succours can come in Six Months.

The Situation of Places is alſo reckned Advantageous, when there is nothing within Cannon-ſhot of them that can Favour the Approaches, as deep Valleys, hollow Ways, Riges, Hillocks, Trees, Hedges, or Houſes.

The Strength Places may receive from Art conſiſts in the manner of the Fortification, *viz.* that it be well contriv'd according to the Ground it ſtands on, that all Poſts which may be attack'd be well flank'd; that the Wall be ſo high as to be above ſcaling; that it be well knit, and of good Stuff.

The Strength of Places conſiſts alſo in the height, and thickneſs of the Ramparts; in the Cavaleers, or other Platforms for planting of Cannon; in the ſtructure of the Wall, *viz.* when it has convenient Cazemats; in the depth and wedth of the Ditch; in the difficulty of going down into it from abroad; in the Coffres at the bottom of the Ditch; in the detach'd Baſtions, Half-moons and Horn-works; in the contrivance of theſe Outworks, that is, the height and breadth of their Rampart, and the wedth and depth of their Ditches, their facing, and the defence they have from the Body of the Place; in the depth of Water there is, or can be, brought into the Ditches; in the cover'd Deſcents from the Place to come out to defend them, whether they be dry, or full of Water; in the eaſineſs of the Communication between the aforeſaid Outworks and the Body

Body of the Place; in being fraiz'd and paliſadoed; in having Traverſes in the Ditches to hinder the deſcent into them; in having large Covert Ways to lodge abundance of Men in, and where they may not be ſeen from any Places where the Enemies may lodge themſelves.

There are ſome Places ſo advantageouſly poſted by Nature, that tho' they are not fortified, they may in a ſhort Time, and with little Charge, be made ſo ſtrong, that it will require as much Art to beſiege them, as many others that are perfect Fortifications; ſuch as Iſlands, Peninſulas, and Places ſeated on Eminences of difficult Acceſs, or in Moraſſes.

Beſides the Fortifications of Places, their Strength conſiſts in the Ammunitions, Proviſions and Cannon they are ſtor'd with; in the eaſineſs of making Retrenchments; in the Number of Soldiers and their Valour; in the Capacity of the Governour, and other Officers, and in the Unity of the Garriſon either among themſelves, or with the Inhabitants.

When the General is thoroughly inform'd of the Condition of the Place, he muſt conſider whether his Army is in a Condition to beſiege it; whether he has, or can eaſily have, the Men, Proviſions, Ammunition and Money, that will be requiſite as long as the Siege ſhall hold; and whether whilſt he lyes about that, the Enemy may not attack another of greater Conſequence.

When he has reſolv'd to attack the Place, he muſt march with all the Expedition he can to ſurprize it, and to prevent as much as in him is the throwing of any Succours into it. If his march is ſomewhat long, and he fears the Enemy may get Intelligence of his Deſign by his marching directly towards it, and ſo have the Opportunity of

putting Men, Proviſions and Ammunition into the Place before he can reach it; then muſt he ſtrike out of the right Road, and endeavour to make the Enemy jealous of ſome other Place, detaching a Part of his Army to inveſt that he deſigns on; which he ſhall make haſte to join, as ſoon as he can judge it to be before the Place.

The Major General, or other Officer, who commands the Body that goes to inveſt it, at about a League's diſtance from the Place, or thereabouts, ſhall detach Two or Three Parties of Horſe, according to the bigneſs of the Place, the Strength of the Garriſon, and of his own Forces. Each of theſe Parties, as near as can be done, muſt be ſtronger than what can come out of the Garriſon; and are to ride up near to the Gates, to hinder any thing whatſoever from getting in.

When the Major General is come up, he is to Poſt himſelf between the Place and that Side whence it is moſt likely the Succour may come; and if any Priſoners are taken, he ſhall enquire what Men there are in the Place, as well Soldiers, as inhabitants, and Peaſants of the adjacent Parts, and what Proviſions and Ammunition they have. He muſt alſo enquire whether they had any Notice of the Siege, how long ſince, and what Succours they expect, and which Way they expect them to come. Then muſt he ſend out ſmall Parties every Way upon Diſcovery, and towards his General to inform him of all he has learnt, and ſhall either divide his Forces, or keep them together, according to the Intelligence he receives on all Hands. As for inſtance, if he underſtands the Enemy is marching towards him with Equal Strength to his, or little Inferior, he ſhall keep in a Body, and if he can be ſure which Way the E-

nemies

nemies design to put in the Succours, he may go a little Way to meet them, for fear they ſlip into the Place ſome other Way than that he Guards.

The Advantage in fighting a ſtrong Party comes to throw it ſelf into the Place at ſome diſtance from it is, that tho' you ſhould defeat them near the Place, it would be a difficult Matter to hinder moſt of them getting in; whereas if you fight them at a diſtance, when they are broken it is eaſier to prevent thoſe that can run away from making their eſcape that way. And if the Major General does not think he ſhall ſtand in need of all his Force, he may leave a Squadron near the Place, to prevent any, eſpecially Men in Command from throwing themſelves into the Place, in the Confuſion which is uſual even among Victorious Troops.

If the Major General is ſo uncertain which Way the Enemy will march, that he thinks it beſt to keep near the Place, he muſt always have Parties abroad to diſcover their march, and at Night ſhall be within Muſket-ſhot of the Place, in one or Two Bodies, according to the Intelligence he has receiv'd, as was ſaid before.

He muſt continue under Arms all Night, and not give his Troops any reſt but by Day, till the coming of the General, and even then only half ſhall reſt at a Time. He ſhall go quite round the Place as ſoon as he can, and view both the Avenues that may bring Succours, and the Fortifications, and which Way it is eaſieſt attacking it; as alſo where the propereſt Places are to take up the Quarters, and to draw the Circumvallation, that he may adviſe the General and acquaint him with all he has learnt.

When the General, is juſt at Hand, he muſt ſend a Party to advertiſe the Major General that has in-

veſted the Place, and a Perſon of Capacity to bring him back an Account of all that has happen'd; and when he hears that all things are well, he ſhall advance at the Head of his Army, and go himſelf to View where he is to ſettle his Quarters. The Major General ſhall go a little Way to meet him, to give him an Account of all he knows. As the Forces come up, the General muſt ſend them Orders where they are to Incamp that Day.

It is not eaſie the firſt Day to fix the Quarters for the whole Siege, and what Number of Troops is to be in each of them; therefore the next Day the General ſhall go round the Place, or Part of it, to view it, attended by the General Officers and Ingeneers; and letting every Man give his Opinion, he may thereupon reſolve what to do; or rather call a Council of War, where it ſhall be reſolv'd what Quarters to take, what Number of Troops each Officer that commands in them is to have, where the Attacks are to be made, and the Bridges laid, if there be any River.

The Conſiderations to be had in the Choice of the principal Quarters are to obſerve what Ways the Enemy may beſt come to the Relief of the Place, and where the Attacks are to be made, to the end that the main Quarters being at Hand, may relieve them in caſe of Need, and the more eaſily ſend out the Guards of the Trenches, and carry the Ammunition and other Things neceſſary for the Attacks; and that General Officers may with the more eaſe go into the Trenches and back to the Quarters. The conveniency of covert, of Forrage and of Water, both for Men and Horſes, are alſo to be conſider'd.

After diſtributing the main Quarters, there are ſome ſmall ones poſted betwixt them, according to the Circumference of the Place, and the Number of Avenues

Avenues there are to it. But if it ſhall be thought that ſome conſiderable Succour may arrive before the Lines are finiſh'd, then the Army ſhall be divided only into Two or Three Parts, for fear the leſſer Quarters might be cut off; yet as ſoon as the Lines are compleat, there ſhall be ſeveral of them poſted about, ſo that if they are attack'd on a ſudden where they are remote from the main Quarters, they may have ſpeedy Succour.

Chap XI *The manner of Beſieging Maritime or Inland Towns.*

TO avoid confounding the Methods to be obſerv'd in Sieges, it is requiſite to diſtinguiſh the ſeveral ſorts of them, which are either by Famine, by open Force, without a Circumvallation, or with one.

Places are attack'd by Famine, or Starving them, when it is thought that Method will ſooner ſucceed than open Force, or elſe to ſpare Men.

Theſe Places are either Inland or Maritime. The Maritime cannot be block'd up without an Army and a Fleet, and the Army may perhaps be oblig'd to draw Lines of Circumvallation and of Contravallation. Sometimes the Army may be of no uſe, as when the Country about it is at your Devotion, and the Place ſo remote from the Enemies Country, that it can get no Relief from thence; but tho' there be no need of a great Army, yet it will requite a ſmall Camp, both to hinder the Garriſon from making Excurſions, and to prevent any Country People carrying them Proviſions underhand; as alſo for fear any Succours might be brought by Sea, and landed at a di-

ſtance to be Convey'd in by land. If the Place ſtretches far along the Sea, and there is no Point of Land running out, it muſt be block'd up by a great Number of Veſſels; but if it only touches upon the Sea, and has no Port, then according to the Condition the Garriſon is in, and the Army which attacks it, the Beſiegers may lodge themſelves very cloſe to it and raiſe great Batteries to hinder Ships or Boats from putting in any relief.

If there are any Points of Land that run out, there may be alſo Batteries erected upon them, both to ſink any Veſſels that ſhall attempt to throw themſelves into the Place, and to aſſiſt the Fleet in caſe it be attack'd.

If the Points of Land run far out into the Sea and there be any Means of choaking up the paſſage between them, that will be a Work of great importance, as was done formerly at *Rochel*.

There is much more Precaution to be us'd in attacking a Maritime than an Inland Town, becauſe there cannot be that Security againſt Succours by Sea as by Land, Fleets coming from afar, and ſo unexpected, that they are often ſeen from the Place Beſieg'd, before it was known that they were put to Sea; and beſides, tho' the Fleet of the Beſiegers had never ſuch timely Notice to prepare to engage the Succours, yet it can do nothing to prevent being forc'd to raiſe the Siege if the Enemies Fleet be ſtronger. An Army has this Advantage, that making a good Circumvallation, it ſecures it ſelf againſt the greateſt Forces that can come to relieve the Place; and beſides, Fleets may be deſtroy'd by Storms.

If it is fear'd that an Army will come to relieve the Place, you muſt Incamp without Cannon-ſhot, and draw ſuch a Line of Circumvallation as ſhall be

be thought requiſite; or if you believe the Succours that come are very weak, and have a great Way to march, or any bad Ways to paſs, you may take up your Quarters on their Way to harass the Army the leſs. But in this, as in all other Warlike Expeditions you muſt as near as may be play the ſureſt Game.

If the General is not certain as to the Condition of the Place he is to attack, nor very ſure he ſhall have time enough to take it before the Enemy can put a Fleet to Sea to relieve it, he had better not attempt it, becauſe he will at the ſame time hazard the Fleet, and the Reputation of his Maſter's Arms, beſides the great Expence of Sieges.

Tho' he expects never ſo great an Army by Land, if he is ſure to be always Maſter at Sea, and has Time to intrench himſelf, he may undertake any thing; but if he fears a powerful Succour by Land, and that the Enemy may in a ſhort time be more powerfull at Sea than himſelf, he muſt not beſiege the Place, tho' he could take it before it were poſſible for them to raiſe the Siege. All things that may happen are to be maturely conſider'd, as whether the Enemies by venturing ſome Veſſels, may put ſo much Succour into the Place as may prolong the Siege for ſome Days, and by that Means gain Time for their Fleet to come.

For the better Security of the Sea, beſides the Number and Strength of Ships, it is requiſite to draw them up well, that is, in a Semicircle a Cannon-ſhot from the Place; and the better to ſhut out ſmall Succours, to extend Cables or chains from one Ship to the other, or elſe to place them as cloſe as the Number will allow, with Boats and Barks betwixt them, when the Weather will permit.

If

If the Fleet that comes to the Succour be almoſt as ſtrong as yours, and the Place beſieg'd of ſuch Conſequence to the Enemy that it is to be believ'd they will venture Part of their Fleet to ſave it, then it is beſt to weigh Anchor, and meet them, for fear they ſhould come in cloſe Order, and fall upon Part of your Half-Moon, which they would be ſo well able to deal with, that whilſt one part was ingag'd, the reſt would break through to the Town.

The ſame Inconveniency may happen if you weigh Anchor to meet them; which is, that whilſt a few fight, the greater Number may ſlip in. It is therefore very difficult for a Fleet ſo ſecurely to Inveſt a Place, but that ſome Succour may get in; yet I am of Opinion 'tis the beſt Way to go out to meet the Fleet that comes to Succour, provided it is any thing conſiderable, rather than to lye ſtill; becauſe tho' there happen to be the Mortification of ſeeing the Place reliev'd, yet there is the Satisfaction of deſtroying part of the Enemy's Fleet.

Circumvallations are us'd againſt Maritime as well as Inland Towns, when it is expected the Siege will laſt ſo long as to give an Army leiſure to come to its Relief, or elſe to be the Securer againſt ſmall Succours that may be daily ſtole in. The Line of Circumvallation muſt be without Cannon-ſhot of the Place beſieg'd, unleſs there be any deep Valleys, or great Ridges betwixt the Place and the Line of Circumvallation where Troops may be drawn up without being ſeen from thoſe Places where the Succouring Army can come, or from the Place. If there be any Hills, or ſmall Heights a little above Cannon-ſhot from the Place, the Line muſt be carry'd along them; but if they are ſo off that they would give the Line too great an

an extent if it were carry'd to them, and yet the Enemy might make an Advantage of them againſt you, if you were not Maſter of them, as being convenient for them to plant their Cannon, then you ought to raiſe Forts on them, wherein, as well as in the Lines, the Proportions are to be obſerv'd, as was ſaid in the Directions for Incamping.

You muſt not make many Redoubts, unleſs it be in thoſe Parts of the Line which are ſo far from the Quarters that you have cauſe to fear the Guard in them might be cut off by the Beſiegers. The leaſt Redoubts muſt be Twelve Foot wide, the Ditch at leaſt 15 or 16 Foot wide, and 8 or 10 Foot deep, and Palliſadoed as far as may be. If the Line of Circumvallation runs athwart a hollow, it is dangerous carrying of it on in a ſtrait Line, becauſe the Enemies getting upon the higher Grounds would ſee all the Troops within the Line, and might attack it in the Bottom, under the Shelter of their Cannon planted above, and therefore the Line ought to be crooked.

The Advantage of ſuch a Line is, that being farther from the Places where the Enemies can plant their Cannon, the Troops that defend it are leſs expos'd to fight; and that being very much flank'd, it is the harder to be attack'd. The Guard is poſted about the Cirumvallation, according to the Strength of the Enemy, and their Nearneſs or Diſtance. When there are Forts and Redouts there the ſtrongeſt Guards are poſted, becauſe of the Danger of theſe Places being ſurpriz'd. The Guards and the Quarters are ſtrengthened or weakned according as the Enemy appears on one ſide or other of the Circumvallation.

When

When a General undertakes to ſtarve out a Place, the main Thing he is to conſider and provide againſt is, that he be not beſieg'd himſelf; and not to ingage in ſuch a Siege, unleſs he is ſure he can lay up Proviſions and Forrage for the whole time the Siege may laſt, or is ſure of having them brought ſafe from ſome other Place without being cut off.

When the Garriſon is ſtrong in the Place beſieg'd, it is neceſſary to make Redoubts betwixt it and the Circumvallation, to hinder their Sallys, or at leaſt to ſerve for a Place of Retreat for Forragers, or thoſe that go from one Quarter to another, who might elſe be taken by the Beſieged. But if the Garriſon ſhould be ſo ſtrong as to be able to cut off any Quarter, or ſecure any Part of the Circumvallation, and bring in Succours that Way, then muſt there be a Contravallation, which is without Falconet-ſhot. The Ditch of it is made wider and deeper, or narrower and ſhallower, according as there is more or leſs Danger from the Beſiegers. Sometimes there is only a Line of Contravallation caſt up, which is when the Garriſon is ſtrong, and there is nothing to fear from abroad.

When a General is reſolv'd to attack a Place, and has taken all the Precautions afore-mention'd, for Proviſions, Ammunition, and Money for the Works; has conſider'd the Conveniency there is for getting all Neceſſaries for the Trenches, as Tools, Faſcines, Gabions, Baſkets, Barrels, Earth-ſacks, Timber for Platforms, Mantelets, Chandeliers, Blinds, and Galeries; then muſt he gather Store of all theſe Things whilſt the Circumvallation is carrying on, if he is obliged to make one; if not, as ſoon as he has the Neceſſaries for preſent

Uſe

Uſe he may begin to open the Trenches. Generally there are Two Attacks carry'd on, and ſometimes Three, if the Place is large, and the Beſieging Army is Numerous enough to furniſh the neceſſary Guards and Workmen. Formerly the Circumvallation, and even the Trenches, were carry'd on by Pioneers, but now the Soldiers do both.

The General, before he opens the Trenches, muſt View all the Place round without Muſket-ſhot, and all General Officers, as Major and Lieutenant Generals, ſhall do ſo to, as alſo the Engineers, who are to view as near as ever they can both by Day and Night, to the End, that conferring what they all ſay, the better Judgment may be made of what Parts are eaſieſt to be Attack'd.

CHAP. XI. *How to View and Judge of the Side where the Attacks are to be made.*

THE Eaſineſs of the Attack depends either on the Weakneſs of the Place, or in the Facility of making the Approaches. The Weakneſs of the Place conſiſts in the Parts being leaſt flank'd, ill fac'd, not well terras'd, leaſt capable of retrenching within, not ſo well ditch'd, and leſs cover'd without with detach'd Works, or Covert Ways.

The Eaſineſs of Approaching conſiſts in hollow Ways, Bottoms, deep Valleys, Ditches, Ridges, and Hedges, where Men can be under Covert; or in the Facility of throwing up the Earth, or in having Hillocks and ſmall Eminencies, which ſerve to plant the Cannon advantageouſly, or in higher Grounds, which

which overlook and command the Place, either with Cannon, or ſmall Fire Arms, and in the Nature of theſe Commanding Places; that is, whether they are directly Fronting, or, which is leaſt Dangerous, Reverſe; that is, Playing on the Back of a Poſt, or Enfilading, which ſweep quite along it.

If thoſe Parts of the Place where the Approaches are eaſieſt are beſt Fortify'd, and the weakeſt are the moſt difficult of Acceſs, the Advantages and Diſadvantages muſt both be weigh'd on both Sides in chuſing the Attack; but generally in a great Siege, the Faults in the Fortification of the Place turn to better Advantage than the Eaſineſs of making the Approaches, eſpecially when the Garriſon is Strong.

When the General has reſolv'd upon the Places for carrying on the Attacks, the Ingeneers muſt go again to take a more ſtrict View of them, both as to the Ground they are to be carry'd through to make the beſt Advantage of it, and to ſee whether there are Ridges, Hedges, or Ditches, to run the Trench along them; if there be any Dales or Hollows, to make uſe of them for Places of Arms, to place the Redoubts ſo that they may defend the Trenches, and look down into the ſaid Deeps and Hollows; and tho' the Way be longer by thoſe Places than if the Trenches were carry'd along the Plain, yet it is generally ſooner ended, and ſafer for taking the Advantages that lye in the Way.

Chap. XII. *The Manner of opening the Trenches.*

THE Trenches are to be open'd without Muſket-ſhot, and even of Falconet, if the Place attack'd be ſtrong in Cannon. The General muſt not fail to be the Firſt Night at the opening of the Trenches, and thoſe who command other Attacks muſt be at the opening of theirs.

If the Trenches be open'd in a Place that is very plain and open, ſo that there is no Place to poſt the Horſe to ſuſtain them, they muſt be open'd at a very great Diſtance, and the Firſt Night muſt be ſpent in making a Place of Arms for the Horſe, out of the Random Shot of a Musket from the Place, with Three or Four Hundred Paces of Trench behind it. All the next Day ſhall be ſpent in enlarging the Trench made at Night to Six or Eight Foot, if it may be, and to raiſe the Covert of the Horſes Place of Arms. The Guard of the Trenches at firſt is to be weak in Foot and ſtrong in Horſe, eſpecially in the Day-time, and in a plain Country. The Firſt Day I would not leave above 40 or 50 Musketeers, with a Captain and a Lieutenant, at the Head of the Workmen, and would make the Guard ſo ſtrong in Horſe that there ſhould be nothing to fear.

The Advantage there is in making it rather ſtrong in Horſe than Foot, is that the Horſe may keep at a great Diſtance from the Place, and always come up time enough to relieve the Trenches, if the Enemy Sallys; whereas the Foot, who cannot March ſo faſt, would be oblig'd to ſtand within Falconet-ſhot of the Place: But it is very rare to find

find a Plain ſo open, that there is no Place to poſt the Foot under Covert, at leaſt if they lye flat; yet whatſoever Covert there is, the Foot being always much more fatigu'd in a Siege of any Continuance than the Horſe, I would ſpare 'em as much as poſſible the Firſt Days, and put a ſmall Number upon Guard.

On the Second Night a ſmall Redoubt muſt be made, a ſmall Musket-ſhot from the Place, and a Trench drawn from the Place of Arms of the Horſe to the Redoubt, and in the midſt of it a Place of Arms for the Foot, which will ſerve only for the Firſt Days of the Siege, as is uſual in all diſtant Works, becauſe the Guard of the Trenches is continually carrying on nearer, and beſides that it is uſeful ſome Days for the Soldiers, it ſerves afterwards to lodge the Sutlers, ſome of whom muſt always be lodg'd in the Trenches, that the Soldiers at the Work may not be forc'd to go for Proviſions to their Quarters. This 2d Day a ſmall Body of Foot may be left in the Firſt Night's Work, and a ſmall Body of Horſe in the Place of Arms till it is finiſh'd, which generally is the Third Day.

The Third Night, if the Garriſon in the Place is ſtrong, the Trenches are not to be much advanc'd, but the Redoubt muſt be made tenable, the Place of Arms for the Horſe and Foot rais'd, and advance a Line of about 100 or 50 Paces. The Intrench'd Way muſt never go into the Place of Arms, but there muſt be Binkets ſupported by Stakes and Faſcines, for the Musketeers to fire over the Parapet; and they muſt be quite open behind, that your Battalions may go out into the Plain, and your Horſe beat out the Enemy, if they ſhould break in to them.

At

At every Attack there muſt be Places enough in Number and Largeneſs to contain all the Guard of Foot, which muſt only be there, or in the Redoubts, and never in the Trenches, unleſs when near the Place, at which Time it is neceſſary to lodge Muſketeers there to fire upon the Enemy.

If the Trench can be advanc'd the Third Night to the Ground where the General ſhall think fit to place the Firſt Battery, it muſt be begun the ſaid Night. Batteries cannot take much Effect, if they are above 150 Fathom from the Place in a plain Ground; and this is generally the Work of the Fourth Night. This Battery is to be enclos'd betwixt a Redout and the Trenches. The Intent of this Battery is to beat down the Parapets, and to diſmount the Guns that command the Trenches. Generally all the Cannon for Battery are planted there, both to incommode the Enemy, and to maſter their Cannon; and tho' a Place is never ſo ill provided with Artillery, it will hinder this Battery doing any Service, unleſs it has Abundance of Pieces. The Batteries that are neareſt the Place are leaſt expos'd, becauſe ſeen from feweſt Parts; and the Cannon of the Places being generally planted high, either on Cavaliers, or on high Ramparts, they cannot do Execution near the Place, by Reaſon they cannot point down.

The Fifth Night a Redout muſt be made on the Wing of the Battery, and a Line carry'd forward as far as may be; and if the Parapets of the Redouts and Places of Arms are to be rais'd, ſome Workmen muſt be ſent thither.

Whatever Diligence is us'd in Working at Batteries, it commonly takes up Three Nights and Two Days to put them into a Condition, and the Third Night the Guns are brought and planted.

Bitte-

Batterres of Two or Three Guns may be finish'd in Two Nights and a Day, if Care be taken.

The Sixth Night the Trenches shall be carry'd on, and a Place of Arms made.

The Seventh Night a Redoubt shall be made, and all that is behind put into a good Posture.

The Eighth Night the Trenches shall be carry'd on, and a great Place of Arms made within 100 Paces of the Glacis.

For the better understanding of this Manner of Advancing the Trenches, you must see the Figure of the Attack, where the First Night's Work is mark'd A, which is the Place of Arms for the Horse, and the Trench behind; the Second Night's Work is from A to B, the Third from B to C, the Fourth from C to D, which is advancing the Fifth Night; the Fifth Night's Work is the Redoubt E, and the Line of the Battery from D to E; the Sixth Night from E to F, the Seventh the Redoubt G. If there be Cause to fear Sallys, and the Works are not yet well finish'd, no Advance shall be made the Eighth Night, and it shall suffice to make the Redoubt tenable, and to work upon what is most necessary behind it. The Eighth or Ninth Night the Place of Arms H, and the Line G H shall be made. This Place of Arms is both to lodge a Body of Foot, and to lay up Store of Barrels, Fascines, Blinds, Chandeliers, and other Things necessary for carrying on the Trenches, and making of Lodgments on the Counterscarp.

There being no positive Rule to be prescrib'd for advancing the Trenches, what has been said is only to give some Light of what may be done, as near as can be; and the Work may be advanc'd or retarded, according to the Strength or Weakness of the Place besieg'd, according to the Defence it makes

makes by Salleys, or firing from the Ramparts and Out-works, and according to the Easiness or Difficulty in Digging the Trenches, according to the Number of Men that can be appointed for the Works, and according to their Work as they are well directed and paid.

There must be more or less Redoubts and Places of Arms made, according to the Danger there is of Salleys out of the Place. For the better carrying on of the Work in advancing the Trenches, till it is within 200 Paces of the Place, there shall be a Sergeant posted at Night with Fifteen Men at the Head of the Workmen, he to be supported by a Lieutenant and 30 Men, and on the Right of them a Battalion, and another on their Left, all lying flat on the Ground.

When the Works are near the Place, if there be no Rideau, or Ridge of Ground, or a Hollow capable of covering Men, there shall be only a Serjeant with Fifteen Men posted at the Head of the Work, and Battalions in the nearest Places of Arms, and behind the Redoubts which are next the Place, to sustain the Workmen, in case of a Salley. Great Care must be taken that they do not lay themselves open upon false Alarms, which the Enemies frequently give to make great Volleys of Cannon and small Shot, when they believe the Battalions are expos'd.

When the Place of Arms H is made, which must be opposite to the Angle Rentrant, or pointing inwards, of the Covert Way, betwixt the Half-moon and the Bastion design'd to be Attack'd, a Line shall be drawn from each End of the Place of Arms, to come as near the Foot of the Glacis as may be so as not to be Enfiladed; and it being difficult to open these Lines without some Covert, because of the Nearness

Nearneſs of the Enemies Covert Ways, therefore they muſt be made with Abundance of Faſcines, or with Barrels and ſmall Gabions, to cover next the Place; and as they are cover'd or fill'd with Earth they may be carried on ſtill before the Workmen; and if in the Night-time, whilſt it rains, or is very dark, ſome Workmen can be ſent out to make a Part of the Lines out of Covert, it will gain much Time; and when you are near the Place, there muſt be no Opportunity loſt for Advancing the Works, the leaſt Advance being conſiderable.

If the Garriſon is Strong and Bold, inſtead of the Place of Arms H, another Redoubt is to be made, and the Two Lines drawn from it to the Two Angles Saillant of the Covert Way to be enlarg'd to Twelve Foot, that they may ſerve for Places of Arms, both to lodge great Bodies there, when you would make Lodgments on the Covert Way, and lay up Store of all Things neceſſary for advancing of the Works. There muſt be a Banket made in it with Clayes, Stakes, or Faſcines, and the Parapet be ſet with Earth-bags or Baskets, ſupported within as well as the Banket.

When Two Attacks are carry'd on againſt the ſame Tenaille of a Place, that is, when they are carry'd on againſt Two Faces of oppoſite Baſtions, as is ſhown in the Figure, and the Ditch is full of Water, very often the Half-moon betwixt them is not attack'd, in hopes the Enemy will quit it when the Beſiegers are lodg'd on the Angles of the Covert Way, which are before the flank'd Angles of the Baſtions. But this is a very ill Practice, becauſe the ſaid Half-moon and the Covert Way before it, do enfilade, or ſweep along almoſt all the Lodgments that can be made on the Covert Ways before the Baſtions; and thus, beſides the Men loſt in

in making thoſe Lodgments, and the Delay occaſion'd by the Loſs of Men, you may be often forc'd to return to the Attack of the Half-moon, there being no Poſſibility of entring the Ditch without being Maſter of it.

If the Lines drawn from the Place of Arms, or Redoubt H, cannot come within Four or Five Paces of the Foot of the Glacis, One, or rather Two Sapps ſhall be made towards the Angle, till you are within the ſaid Diſtance, and thence you muſt attempt to lodge yourſelf on the Top of the Covert Way.

Chap. XIII. *The Manner of making Lodgments on the Covert Way.*

OPinions vary about the Manner of making Lodgments on the Covert Way, which is generally the moſt difficult, and the bloodieſt Action in a Siege. Some will have it that when the Trench is within Twelve or Fifteen Foot of the Glacis, you muſt March bare-fac'd to diſlodge the Enemies in the Covert Way by open Force, and at the ſame time make your Lodgment on the Angle. Others, to ſave Men, are for going on by Little and Little, and by way of Sap, to the Glacis, and then making Fourneaux, or ſmall Mines, lodge your ſelf on their Ruins. Some are for making the Lodgments by Day, and others by Night. My Opinion is, That the beſt Way to make them is by open Force, without ſtaying for Saps or Fourneaux, and to attempt them by Night; and tho' more Men are loſt this Way than the other, yet much Time is ſav'd, and the Danger is over in a few Hours; whereas if you proceed the other Way, there are very often more

more Men loſt in the Salleys the Enemies make, by their firing from the Place into the Trenches, and by the continual Fatigues the Soldiers endure in Sieges, than if you lodg'd yourſelf by open Force.

For the better making of them, it is convenient that the Line drawn from H, oppoſite to the Angle Saillant of the Covert VVay B, do run Ten or Twelve Fathom beyond the ſaid Angle, and be very wide, to contain a Body of Foot, that may ſuſtain the Lodgment.

In the Line H I ſhall be all the neceſſary Proviſion of Faſcines, Clays, Baskets, Earth-ſacks, Barrels, Mantelets, Blinds, Chandeliers, Pickaxes and Shovels; and there ſhall be ſuch a Number of Fighting Men and Workmen as ſhall be thought needful, which ſhall be diſpos'd after this Manner.

For Inſtance, ſuppoſing the Guard of the Trenches to conſiſt of 200 Foot, and with them 400 Workmen, they ſhall leave the Place of Arms betwixt E and F, the Redoubt E, the Battery D, and all that is behind, to be guarded by thoſe that are detach'd from all the Army, to ſuſtain the Regiment that mounts the Trenches that Day, as is always to be practic'd upon the like Occaſions. They ſhall put 60 Men into the Redoubt G, 200 into the Place of Arms H, 100 Musketeers into the Line H L, to fire there continually, and 140 into the Line H I, being in all 500 Men, 700 more ſhall be appointed to make the Lodgment, and thus order'd; A Sergeant with 15 Men in Armour that is Musket Proof, and Two or Three Granadeers, ſhall firſt March to the Angle Saillant of the Covert Way, whence he ſhall make a Diſcharge on the Defendants within, and drive them off, if their Number be ſmall: A Lieutenant with 30 Men ſhall ſuſtain him, and a Captain

Captain, with a Lieutenant, or Enſign, and 50 Men, ſhall ſuſtain him. The other 600 Men ſhall be in Two Bodies of 300 Men each, or one ſtronger than the other, as there ſhall be Occaſion to fear the the Enemies moſt, either on the Right, or on the Left.

Each of theſe Bodies ſhall again be ſubdivided into Two, that is, One Third ſupported by the other Two Thirds, One of them in the Line H I, and the other in the Line H L, and ſhall draw up towards the open Country, leaving the Banket to the Musketeers, who are lodg'd there to Fire.

If the Sergeant who falls on at the Angle of the Covert Way perceives that the Enemies are very ſtrong there, the Two Bodies of 300 Men ſhall come out of the Trenches, and attack the Covert Way on the Right and Left of the Angle Saillant, as near as they can to the Angle Rentrant, and as ſoon as they have fir'd ſhall run upon the Enemy with Sword in Hand, that ſo the Fire of the Place, of the Covert Ways, and of the Half-moons on the Right and Left, may do them the leſs Harm.

Things muſt not be undertaken unleſs they are carry'd on furiouſly; for if the Enemies line their Parapets well, their Muſketeers in a ſhort Time wound Abundance of the Aſſailants.

During this Attack all poſſible Diligence muſt be us'd in Working at the Lodgment, which is to be made after this Manner.

When the Men commanded to fall upon the Angle Saillant of the Covert Way have beat off the Enemy, the Lieutenant ſhall poſt himſelf on the Glacis, about 15 or 16 Paces from the Angle, on that Side where there is moſt Danger of Sallies,

where he ſhall cover himſelf with Two or Three Mantelets in Front, and One or Two by Way of Epaulment, to be brought thither after him by the Workmen. The Sergeant ſhall do the ſame on the other ſide of the Angle, and the Captain ſhall enter the Trench that he may be under Covert, being always in readineſs to ſuſtain the Lodgment, if the Enemy ſhould offer to come to diſpute it at Handiſtrokes.

As ſoon as ever the Soldiers that have fallen on at the Angle are cover'd, the Ingenier ſhall come to make his Lodgment, which generally begins by a Range, or Row of Barrels, to be plac'd along the Covert Way on the Top of the Glacis, within Four or Five Foot of the Edge of the Parapet, and makes his Lodgment Four or Five Fathom long on each ſide the Angle, which he cauſes to be done at the ſame time by Two Conductors of the Works, who make the Workmen fill the Barrels with Earth as faſt as poſſible, every one bringing a Bag of Earth, which he throws into the Barrels. Thirty-two Men ſhall follow the Lieutenant who Commands the Forlorn, carring Eight Mantelets, Three of them to cover the Sergeant, and Five for the Lieutenant, over which ſome of them ſhall Fire, and the others ſhall keep themſelves under Covert from the Shot of the Place. When the ſaid Workmen have plac'd the Mantelets, they ſhall go fetch Bags of Earth to put into the Barrels, carry'd by Thirty Workmen, follow'd by 200 more, all of them carrying Bags of Earth, that the Barrels may be ſoon fill'd. The reſt of the Workmen ſhall take Chandeliers and Faſcines to make Epaulments on the Right and on the Left of the Lodgment, from the Edge of the Glacis to the Foot of it, and when they have plac'd what Faſcines they brought

brought the firſt turn on the Chandeliers, they muſt continually go for more till they have fill'd them. Thoſe who have carry'd on the Mantelets and Barrels, ſhall each of them take a Tool and Work behind the Barrels to ſink and enlarge the Lodgment. Thoſe that brought the Sacks of Earth ſhall alſo go for the Faſcines, and lay them on the Barrels, and behind them, that the Lodgment may be ſoon in a Poſture of Defence. As ſoon as the Chandeliers are fill'd, part of thoſe that brought Faſcines ſhall take Pickaxes and Shovels, and Work behind to cover them with Earth, and to ſink and enlarge the Lodgment, and behind the Barrels. The reſt of the Workmen ſhall be imploy'd to make a Way or Two from the Head of the Trench to the Lodgment. They muſt indeavour to make a Banket before the Day appears, and to ſet the Parapet of the ſaid Lodgment with Earth-Bags, or Baskets, to lodge the Musketiers there.

The Lodgments made on the Angles of the Covert Way, before the Point of the Baſtion, are generally batter'd with Cannon from the oppoſite Flanks; and therefore if the Place has Store of Artillery, there ſhall be as much ſpace left betwixt the Edge of the Covert Way and the Barrels as will make the Parapet of the Lodgment Cannon-proof.

If there is a Half-moon fronting the Place you attack, with a Covert Way before it, you muſt lodge your ſelf there before you do on the Angle Sailiant before the Baſtion, or rather at the ſame time, if you have Men and other Neceſſaries enough to undertake both the Lodgments.

If you carry on Two or Three attacks against the Place, it will be convenient to make a Lodgment from every one at the same time, to devide the Enemies Forces.

Those who are for making this Sort of Lodgment in open Day, will have the Trenches carry'd to the Foot of the Glacis, and then all the Trenches that can Fire upon the Town being well lin'd with Musketeers, and all the use that may be made of the Cannon, then to send out Men in Armour that is Musket-proof, and Grenadeers, to drive the Enemy out of the Angle Saillant, and at the same time to make a Lodgment with Barrels and Earth Bags to extend about 2 Fathom on each side of the Angle. But this being done in open Day, and near the Place, it is almost impossible but that most of those that Work at the said Lodgment must be either kill'd or wounded, either by by those that are in the Covert Way, or that Man the Parapet of the Half-moons, or of the Place; and tho' the Lodgment should take effect at first by surprizing the Enemies, if they have the least Courage they will come and throw it down, which they may do with little loss, being expos'd only to those few Men that can be contain'd in an imperfect Lodgment, and encumber'd with Workmen.

The greateſt Advantage of attempting to make Lodgments in the Night, is that when the Enemy has strong Bodies in the Covert Way, there are Battallions sent on the Right and Left to mix with them, which cannot be undertaken in the Day-time, by reason of the Fire of the Place; and besides the Lodgments may be made much larger by Night than by Day, and therefore the more tenable.

In

In order to make the Lodgments by gaining Ground without open Force; after carrying on the Trenches the neareſt the Place that may be without expoſing them to Enfilade, there muſt be Three or Four Saps carry'd on by Steps deſcending directly towards the Angle Saillant of the Covert Way. They are made driving a Mantelet ſet on Two Wheels before them, or elſe rouling along a Sauciſs, and placing Faſcines or Barrels on the Right and Left, as they draw near the Place, and Blinds at certain Diſtances, as ſhall be thought neceſſary to hinder the Enemies ſight into the Trenches. This Work muſt be continu'd Day and Night, relieving the Men from time to time, that being always freſh they may do the more Work. But the beſt Way is to ſet it out to the Soldiers by the Whole, for that Way they will do Twice as much as by Day Work.

When the Sap is carry'd on 8 or 10 Fathom, there muſt be Lines drawn on the Right and Left parallel to the Place, and Four or Five Fathom long, which are made little Places of Arms to contain ſome Soldiers, both to ſuſtain the Head of the Work, and make the neceſſary Proviſion there for advancing of it.

When you are within a Stone's throw of the Covert Way, the Saps muſt be cover'd with Clayes and ſome Earth thrown at Top of them, to defend them againſt Stones and Hand Granadoes.

When you are at the Foot of the Glacis you muſt begin the Fourneaux, which are ſtill to be carry'd on deſcending, to avoid the Countermines, and to the end that having more Earth on them they may take the more effect; and they muſt be

carry'd ſo far till you think they will blow up the Parapet of the Angle.

Whilſt the Fourneaux are carrying on from the middle Lines, the other Saps muſt be puſh'd on as far as may be on the Glacis; and if it be expected that the Enemies will make other Fourneaux, there muſt be Mines carry'd on to diſappoint them.

As ſoon as the Fourneaux are ready they muſt be ſprung, either by Day or by Night, for fear they ſhould be diſappointed, if there were any delay in ſpringing them. At the ſame time there ſhall be arm'd Workmen ſent, ſuſtain'd by ſome good Soldiers, to Place ſome Barrels on the Parts demoliſh'd by the Fourneaux, and to fill them with Earth, which will be eaſily done, becauſe the blowing up will have looſen'd it all.

To favour this Sort of Lodgment I would make another Lodgment half way up the Glacis, raiſing its Parapet as high as that of the Covert Way, to the end that the latter being overthrown by the Fourneaux, the other might ſee into the Covert Way; and having thus made one on each ſide the Angle, you would by that Means be Maſter of the Covert Way without loſs of Men.

The inconveniency of working after this manner to make Lodgments on the Counterſcarp is, that Saps being of neceſſity to be made by very few Men, the Enemy may ſend as many to oppoſe you, either above or under Ground, which is ſafeſt for them, and ſo diſappoint your Fourneaux, or blow up the Head of your Saps.

If the Covert Way is Palliſado'd, there muſt be Guns planted to break the Palliſades, and make ſeveral Breaches, before any thing is attempted.

As ſoon as the Lodgment is finiſh'd, there muſt be Saps carry'd on mark'd O, both to go down into the Covert Way, and to continue the Lodgments along the Top of the Glacis. The deſcent into the Covert Way muſt be very deep, that it may not be ſeen by the oppoſite Flank, and not be open'd till Night fall, at which time a Traverſe is made on each ſide mark'd P, and the Head of the Lodgment on the Edge of the Ditch mark'd Q.

Whilſt one Part of the Workmen is employ'd about the Lodgment, the other are ſet to carry on the Trench R S, along the Edge of the Glacis, which is to be carry'd on by Sap if the Enemy makes a good Defence; but if they make a bad one, this Lodgment, is made like that of the Angle, that is with Barrels fill'd with Earth Bags, and the Epaulments T with Chandeliers full of Faggots.

If you would attack the Left Face of the Baſtion, the Lodgment R ſhall be made a Battery to diſmount the Guns on the oppoſite Flank, and to ruin it as much as may be. Whilſt the Battery R is fitting, the Lodgment V is to be made to cover it, whence the Traverſe X ſhall be drawn, and made Cannon-proof. The Battery ſhall be enclos'd behind by the Line Y; and if the Enemies are ſtrong and daring, the Redoubt Z ſhall be made, to ſecure the Battery againſt Sallies, and all the Head of the Trench. And as ſoon as the Battery R is finiſh'd, and ſecur'd by Works, or elſe whilſt it is carrying on, if there be Men enough to carry on all the Works, the Line S ſhall be puſh'd on towards the Gorge of the half-moon, and there ſhall be Deſcents and Traverſes made into the Covert Way at 3 and 4, as alſo the Line 2.

If the Enemies have Traverſes in the Covert Way which incommode you, they muſt be attack'd in the Rear by Night, and when they are diſlodg'd, you may lodge your ſelf there, if the Head of the Work be not far off, and they can be ſerviceable, or elſe you muſt raze them that they may be of no uſe.

The Lodgments on the Covert Ways of Half-moons, which are of the ſame nature as thoſe that are made on the Angle that covers the Point of the Baſtion, are to be firſt made, if you can only make one at once, or both together, if you have Men enough to carry on both.

There muſt be Trenches along the Edge of the Glacis, and in the Covert Way, to meet at the Gorge with thoſe made before the Face of the Baſtion.

Chap. XIV. *The Manner of Attacking the Half-moon.*

IF the Half-moon can be batter'd with Cannon, the Parapet beaten down, the deſcent into the Ditch eaſie, and very little or no Water in it, then may you go boldly and lodge your ſelf on it, without any other Formalities, being well provided with all things neceſſary for making a good Lodgment, and a Way to go to and come from it, under Covert.

If the Ditch of the Place is full of Water, and the Enemies can have no Communication with it but by Boat, the Hazard will be ſmall in attempting this ſort of Lodgment; but if the Ditch is dry,

dry, or if the Enemies have One ſide of the Covert Way free to ſuccour the Half-moon, and the Garriſon is ſtrong, it muſt be attempted with more Precaution.

When the Lodgments are made on the top of the Glacis, and the bottom of the Covert Way, if the Ditch is dry you muſt make Two or Three deſcents into it, which may be cover'd with Madriers that are Proof; then make a Gallery or a Sap at the bottom, throwing Earth on them; then having Sprung a Mine give the Aſſault at Night-fall, to lodge your ſelf there, as ſhall be thought convenient.

For the better underſtanding what Sort of Lodgment is to be made, you muſt firſt conſider whether the Half-moon is retrench'd or not; after what manner; whether the Ditch of the Place is dry, or full of Water; whether the Enemies have One of the Two Sides of the Covert Way free to ſuccour the Half-moon, or have no Way left to come at it.

If the Half moon is retrench'd, you muſt know what ſort of Retrenchment it is. There are ſcarce any more than Four Ways of doing it, as A, B, C, D. It is convenient, if poſſible, to know the manner of the Retrenchments before you fix the Miner to the Half-Moon, to the end that if it is at A, you may make the Mine at the Place mark'd E, to blow up the Face of the Half-Moon and the Retrenchment at the ſame time.

For the more ſurety, I would adviſe to make Two Mines againſt all Half-moons that ſhall be thought to be Retrench'd, the One as near the Gorge, as might be, to blow up the Traverſes or Retrenchments, and the other towards the Angle, to hinder the Enemy making a Retrenchment a reverſe, as in the Half-moon D; as alſo becauſe the Lodgments made on the Angle cannot be

ſeen from the Place, as thoſe are which you make on the Face, moſt of which are expos'd to view.

If after mounting on the Ruins of the Mine, you perceive that the Retrenchments are not well finiſh'd or tenable, you muſt endeavour to carry them at the ſame Time; and if the Ditch of the Place is full of Water, and the Enemies have no Communication left to come to it, then you may make a Lodgment as large, or as ſmall, and in what Part you pleaſe, provided you carry on a Trench to go to it under Covert.

If you attack the Right Flank, and the Enemies are ſtill Maſters of the Covert Way which joins to the Left, then muſt you make your Lodgment on the top of the Parapet, at the end of the Face next the Gorge, to ſweep the Covert Way through which the Enemy might return; and if you can you muſt at the ſame time make a ſmall Lodgment at the Foot of the Rampart on the edge of the Water.

If there be a Bridge of Communication betwixt the Place and the Half-moon, you muſt make a Lodgment at the Head of it. If you think you cannot ſufficiently ſecure the Lodgments, either at the Head of the Bridge, or at the Communication of the Covert Way of the Half-moon, then the firſt Night you ſhall only make a Lodgment on the Effect of the Mine; and if the Ditch of the Half-moon is full of Water, you muſt labour diligently to make the Paſſage eaſie.

For the paſſing the Ditches of Half-moons when they are full Water, after making the Deſcents to the edge of the Water, you throw Faſcines into the Ditch till they are above Water, and then caſt Earth or Stones over both to fix them, and prevent their being burnt, and make an

an Epaulment with Earth and Faſcines next the Place. The Work is favour'd by the Cannon, which muſt have beaten down all the Parapet of the Half-moon, and carry'd off the Baskets generally ſet there to cover the Musketiers; and by the Small-ſhot poſted all along the Covert Way, both above and below; and if the Enemy lodge any Cannon on the Face of the Baſtion to hinder paſſing of the Ditch, you muſt raiſe Counter Batteries on the Angle of the Covert Way to diſappoint their Guns.

If the Cannon and Small-ſhot cannot hinder the Enemies that are lodg'd in the Half-moons from firing on thoſe that Work at making the Paſſage of the Ditch, then beſides the Epaulment againſt the Place, you muſt ſet on the other Side a Row of Chandeliers full of Faſcines, or elſe a Row of very high Barrels, or elſe Two, one upon another, to hold up Clays cover'd with Earth, if the Half-moon is high, and if it is low it may ſuffice to do it with Blinds, that the Enemies may not fire on the Bridge, unleſs at the Head, where it is impoſſible to Work without danger.

Half-moons which are low give much more trouble in paſſing the Ditch than thoſe that are high; or if they have a Fauſſe Braye, for it is almoſt impoſſible to paſs the Ditch without being cover'd forwards, which is done by putting on Mantelets before the Men when the Ditches are dry, or laying a great heap of Faſcines at the Head of the Bridge if they are met. And whereas it is difficult caſting of Faſcines into the Water over the ſaid heap, therefore Two Men, with each of them a very long Fork or Prong, take up a Faſcine at the Two ends, and ſo throw it over the heap into the Water, ſo puſhing on the Work in Safety.

If

If the Ditches are dry, and the Retrenchments of the Half-moon be carry'd at firſt, you muſt lodge your ſelf on them, if you can, or raze them, leſt the Enemy ſhould return to the Half-moon, and make uſe of them.

That in the Half-moon D, mark'd A, is very advantageous for the Aſſailants, becauſe it covers them againſt the Town, and overthrowing the Parapet into the Ditch, it is in a few Hours put into a Poſture of Defence againſt thoſe that ſhall come to lodge themſelves in it. The Retrenchments B, C, cannot ſerve the Aſſailants, becauſe they are Enfiladed by the Place.

If the Enemies keep their Retrenchments, you muſt the firſt Night lodge your ſelf on the Effect of the Mine, and then Work at the deſcent of the Ditch of the Intrenchment to paſs it, and to fix the Miners there, or elſe to plant Cannon on the Effect of the Mine to ruin it.

If the Ditch of the Place is dry, and you can eaſily mount into the Half-moon by the Gorge, after forcing their Retrenchment you muſt make a Lodgment on it and its Communication with the firſt caſe, that you may be ſuccour'd by it in Caſe of an Attack; and thence you muſt by degrees puſh on Lodgments to the Gorge of the Half-moon, which you muſt quite encloſe with a Paraper, to prevent the Enemies returning. If the Gorge of the Half-moon ſhould be lin'd with Stone next the Place, and the Ground very high and ſteep, as ſoon as the Retrenchment is forc'd you may go make a Lodgment on the edge of it, becauſe the leaſt Work would put them by all thoughts of coming to lodge themſelves there again.

If the Enemies have any Traverſes in the Ditch of the Half-moon, or of the Retrenchments, you muſt

muſt as you paſs the Ditch Epaul your ſelf on that Side; and by reaſon in dry Ditches that is a great help to Sallies, therefore to ſecure the Miners and the Work in the Ditch, you muſt make an oppoſite Traverſe in the Ditch.

Chap XV. *The Manner of paſſing the Ditch.*

AS ſoon as ever you are Maſter of the Half-moon, you muſt contrive to paſs the Ditch of the Place, in order to fix the Miner to the Face of the Baſtion; but before you attempt to paſs the Ditch you muſt have made Lodgments all along the Covert Way, as was done before to the Half-moon, both on the top of the Glaces, and the edge of the Ditch.

If the Ditch is dry, and its *Talus*, properly call'd the Counterſcarp, is very ſteep, or fac'd with Wall, you will be oblig'd to begin the deſcent from the Foot of the Glacis of the Covert Way, or farther off, if the Ditch be very deep; for if it were but 8 or 10 Foot deep, it would ſuffice to begin the deſcent within the Covert Way.

If the Enemies are ſtrong and bold, you muſt make ſeveral deſcents, that you may with more eaſe Succour the Lodgments, and the Men in the Ditch.

Among the ſeveral deſcents made, that in the midſt is to ſerve to fix the Miner to the Baſtion, and the reſt to make Lodgments in the Ditch, which may be made with Chandeliers full of Faſcines; if it is ſo wide that the Enemies cannot throw Artificial Fireworks into it, or if they can, then they muſt be made of Barrels ſet one upon another, and cover'd with raw Hides, and part of the ſaid Lodgments ſhall be cover'd with Madriers,

or

or Clays loaded with Earth, both to cover the Men againſt Artificial Fireworks and Stones. Musket-ſhot cannot well reach but from the Flank, againſt which you muſt Epaul your ſelf, and the thickneſs and height of the Parapet of the Baſtion hinders the Enemy ſeeing into the Lodgment.

If the Counterſcarp has ſo great a Talus, or Slope, that it is eaſie going up and down it, there ſhall be Cuts made from top to bottom of the depth of a Man, cover'd with Madriers and Clays cover'd with Earth.

When the Ditch of the Place is full of Water, the Enemies not being able to make any Sallies upon the Works that are carry'd on, it ſeems ſufficient to make but one deſcent, in order to lay over a Bridge or a Gallery that Way to fix the Miner to the Baſtion; but the Gallery or Cover'd Bridge being generally ruin'd by the Effect of the Mine, it is requiſite to make a Second deſcent ſomewhat nearer the Angle, and there lay over a Bridge even with the Surface of the Water, loaden with Earth and Stones, that it may ſtand againſt the Ruins the Mine may throw upon it; and this muſt not be made till that which leads to the Mine is finiſh'd, that the Gallery, or Epaulment made on it, may cover thoſe that Work at the ſecond Bridge from the Musketiers of the Flank.

Formerly none ever paſs'd the Ditch but in a Gallery that was Musker, and ſometimes Cannon-proof, and that cover'd with raw Hides, for fear of Artificial Fireworks; but that being a toilſome Work, it is now left off, becauſe too tedious; and if the Ditch is dry, as ſoon as the Lodgments are made at the bottom of it the Miners are fixt to the Baſtion, and cover'd from above with Madriers, which they reſt againſt the Wall, and which are

cas'd

cas'd with Tin, that the Artificial Fireworks may not take hold of them, and that the Cannon or Small-ſhot of the Flank may not incommode the ſaid Lodgment. The Face of the Baſtion is batter'd ſomewhat more towards the Flank than the Place deſign'd to fix the Miner, that the Ruins of it which fall into the Ditch may ſerve the Miner inſtead of an Epaulment againſt the Flank.

When the Ditch is full of Water it is requiſite to make the ſame Ruin; and Miners may ſwim over to lodge themſelves on it; and ſometimes they may dig a great way into the Wall before the Enemy can diſcover it; and having carry'd a Rope with them, may draw over their Tools on a Ponton and Madriers to cover them from above, in caſe the Enemies ſhould diſcover their Work.

That the Miners may pierce the Wall with more eaſe, you muſt endeavour to plant ſome Pieces of Cannon on the Counterſcarp, which may ſee the Place the ſaid Miner is to be fixt to, to the end that the Wall being already ſhaken, he may find the leſs difficulty in boring it.

If the Enemies defend the Paſſage of their Ditch very vigorouſly, either playing their Cannon on the Flank in ſpight of your Batteries on the Counterſcarp, or burning the Blinds and Epaulments you have made on the Bridge, as was ſaid before in paſſing the Ditch of Half-moons, or by cutting off the Miners, if the Ditch is dry, in this Caſe you will be forc'd to make a Gallery.

There are ſo many Books which ſpeak fully of the Shape and Proportion of it, and of the Manner how it muſt be poſted, that it is needleſs to treat of it in this Place; nor of the Shape and Make of the Blinds, Chevalets, Chandeliers, Gabions, Sauciſſes, Mantelets, and other things neceſſary for attacking of Places.

Chap.

Chap. XVI. *The manner of Working at the Mines.*

AS ſoon as the paſſage of the Ditch is ſecur'd, all poſſible Care muſt be taken for advancing the Miners, in which Work Money can never be too laviſhly ſpent; and to oblige the Miners to Work more vigorouſly, they muſt be agreed with at ſo much a Foot, for fear if they were bargain'd with by the Whole they would not carry it far enough; and a Perſon muſt be ſent every now and then to meaſure the Work, and ſee whether it is well carry'd on towards the Place intended. It is alſo convenient to enhance their Price according to the time they ſhall finiſh the Mine in; as for inſtance, if they are to have 30 Piſtoles for making it as agreed on, to promiſe them double the Sum if they perform it in Two Days.

Opinions vary as to the Part of the Face of the Baſtion to which the Miner is to be fixt. Some will have him fixt towards the Angle, becauſe the Semicircle made in the Baſtion by the Effect of the Mine is not ſeen from the Baſtions of the Place, as appears by the Baſtion A. Others will have the Mine made nearer the Flank than the flank'd Angle, to blow up the Retrenchment, if there be any.

If the oppoſite Faces B and A are attack'd, the Mines will be better in the midſt of the Face, or rather nearer the Flank, both to ruin entirely the Face of the Baſtion, and the firſt Retrenchment, and to draw the nearer the Gorge of the Baſtion, where is generally a ſecond Retrenchment. But if only One Face of a Baſtion be attack'd on One Front of the Place,

Place, the Mine will be better at the Angle, to prevent the Effect of the Mines being laid in the View of the oppoſite Baſtion, moſt Men deſiring that the Effect of the Mine may be great, making a large Breach in the Wall, and overthrowing abundance of Earth, that there may be an eaſie aſcent to the Baſtion, and many Men mount abreaſt to make a Lodgmen. But as the Lodgments deſign'd on the top of a Baſtion ſeldom ſucceed; or if they do it is with very great loſs of Men, I am of Opinion it is better to make but an indifferent Breach, only to overthrow the Wall, to prevent Countermines, and to begin another Mine on the Ruins, which ſhall be carry'd on into the Body of the Baſtion to take the intended Effect.

Beſides the difficulty there is in making a Lodgment on a Baſtion, when the Enemy makes but never ſo indifferent a Defence, and the loſs of Men ſuſtain'd in ſuch Attacks, great Breaches have very great Inconveniencies if you miſs of lodging your ſelf on them. One is, the eaſie deſcent it gives the beſieg'd to come down upon the Lodgments you are to make, or have made, either at the bottom, or half Way up the Breach, in order to fix the Miner; and the other, that the Enemy raiſing a Parapet on the Edge of the Mine, the larger it is the more it overlooks all the Ruin of the ſaid Mine. Beſides, it is to be conſider'd, that to the end the Mine may have a great Effect, it muſt be carry'd far into the Earth, which often gives the Enemy an Opportunity of diſappointing them.

Therefore

Therefore I would only make the Mine in the Wall, and after the Effect, make a Lodgment at one third of the height, after this manner.

Two or Three Soldiers with Shovels ſhall go as privately as may be to level the Place where the Lodgment is to be made, ſo that 3 or 4 Barrels may ſtand on it in a Row; and then Four Ranks of Barrels at about 7 or 8 Foot diſtance from one another ſhall be puſh'd on, and cover'd with Planks, and then 2 or 3 Soldiers ſhall get on them to throw Earth on them, to ſecure their Lodgment againſt any thing that may be thrown from above. Thus the 4 Ranks of Barrels cover'd, as has been deſcrib'd, will make Three little Lodgments, the middlemoſt whereof ſhall ſerve for the Miners, who ſhall preſently fall to work to make a Mine in the Earth of the Baſtion, and the Lodgments on the Right and Left ſhall each of them contain Four or Five good Soldiers well armed, with Head-pieces and Breaſt-plates Musket-proof, and with Halbards and Piſtols.

For the more ſurety I would make Two Mines at the ſame Time; that is, one at the Angle, and the other towards the Orillon, that the ſecond Mines may ruin the Retrenchments made within, as thoſe in the Baſtions A, B, C, and D, which might be ruin'd by the Effect of the Mines, were it not for fear they ſhould be diſappointed, and the Enemies ſhould be in a Condition to hinder the Lodgment on the top of the Breach.

If the Retrenchment be made as in the Baſtion C, and its Ditch deep, it will be hard to make your ſelf Maſter of it, unleſs you lodge your ſelf on the top of the Baſtion, after the firſt or ſecond Mines have taken effect. There if you think you cannot eaſily begin a Mine at the Breach of the Rempart,

Rampart, you may carry it under the Ditch of the Retrenchment, ſpring it, and by that means plant Cannon on the top of the Baſtion, and batter the Retrenchment; or elſe make an Attack on it as was ſaid at the Half-moons and Baſtions, that is, making a Lodgment on the edge of its Ditch, then paſſing it, and fixing the Miner to the Retrenchment.

Whilſt the firſt Mines are carrying on, it is convenient to begin other Mines in ſuch Places where the Effect of the firſt may not ruin them, that you may make uſe of one if another is diſappointed, or elſe by that means to carry on Mines into the Body of the Baſtion, and under the Retrenchments, if it be found eaſier that Way than by the Breaches the firſt Mines have made.

If there be any Way of fixing the Miner to the Curtain it will be of great uſe, that being a Place behind which there are ſeldom any Retrenchments; but the Beſieg'd muſt make a very bad defence if they permit them to fix there.

If there be a Gallery in the thickneſs of the Wall, either of the Body of the Place, or of the detach'd Works, there ſhall be Three Fourneaux made at the ſame time upon one and the ſame Face, which ſhall only blow up the thickneſs of the Wall as far as the Gallery; that being ſo laid open in Three Places, the middle may ſerve to fix the Miner again to make a large Mine, and the Holes on the Right and Left will hinder the Enemies from going along the Gallery to obſtruct the Work of the Mine.

I do not ſpeak of Bombs, becauſe they do not contribute towards the taking of Places, nor of the Artillery, becauſe there have been ſeveral Treatiſes about that Subject already.

Chap-

Chap. XVII. *Of Surprizes.*

SUrprizes are practis'd upon Towns, Strong Places, Camps, Quarters of Horſe or Foot, Forts, Redoubts and Bridges that are upon Important Poſts.

Surprizes upon Towns or Strong Places are either manag'd by Intelligence within or without it. If by Intelligence, it muſt be either with the Inhabitants, or the Garriſon. If with the Inhabitants, it muſt be with ſome private Perſons, or with a greater Number. If it be with a great Number, they are either mov'd to it out of deſire of delivering themſelves from ſome Tyrannical Government, or to return to their own Prince, or to get rid of a troubleſome Garriſon. If it be with ſome private Perſons, it is either to be reveng'd for ſome diſtaſte they have taken to their Prince or Governour, or becauſe they are corrupted with Money.

If the Intelligence be with the Garriſon, it is either with the greateſt Part of them, or with One Nation, if there be Several in the Place; or elſe with Part of the Inhabitants, and Part of the Soldiers. You muſt take great Care to enquire into the Cauſes that move them to Side with you, for fear they ſhould play a Foul Game. You muſt alſo weigh the Expedients they Propoſe for bringing you into the Place. If they are Soldiers, or Inhabitants that keep Guards, that can be aſſiſting to you, by ſuffering you to fix a Petard, or to ſet up Scaling-Ladders where they are upon Guard; or elſe you agree upon a Gate, or other Poſt, to which upon your giving the Alarm they ſhall all run, and drive away ſuch as are not of their Party. If they are

unarm'd

unarm'd Burghers, you may ſend them Arms in Barrels, in Bales of Goods, or in Carts loaded with Wood, or the like, and they muſt make themſelves Maſters of ſome Poſt as ſoon as you appear before the Place, as was ſaid above; or if they are powerful enough they may Maſſacre the Garriſon.

If the Intelligence is but with a few of the Burghers, they may, if their Houſes join to the Wall, or any Part of it, give admittance through a Window, or by ſuch other Conveniency; and if they are but at a ſmall diſtance they may make a Paſſage under Ground through the Wall, or elſe ſpring a Mine. An Inhabitant may alſo facilitate the Enterprize, by admitting ſome of your Party one after another into his Houſe.

If the Intelligence be with an Officer, he may gain ſome Soldiers, and when he is upon Guard Poſt Sentinels of his Party at the Time agreed on, and help to ſet up Ladders, or apply a Petard. A private Soldier cannot well betray a Place, becauſe he knows not when or where he ſhall be upon Duty. Yet if he could by means of ſome Signal, ſwinging his Match, and coughing ſo many times, make the Place known where he was to one poſted by you on the edge of the Ditch, who ſhould give Notice to a Body lying near the Place, by that means ſuch an Attempt may meet with Succeſs. One Soldier, or Inhabitant, might alſo Favour your Deſign, by breaking down ſome Salley-Port that was wall'd up, or opening an Embraſure, or ſome Iron Grate in a Place not obſerv'd.

For Surprizes which are carry'd on without Intelligence, the Scaling-Ladders or Petard are generally us'd, or rather both together, to give a Diver-

Diverſion. If the Enterprize be grounded upon Scaling-Ladders, it muſt be becauſe the Garriſon is very weak, or becauſe you have obſerv'd that ſome Part of the Place is not flank'd, or not in ſight of the Sentinels; either that it is too remote, or that it is cover'd from their Sight by ſome Tower, or jutting out of a Wall. The Ladders muſt be proportion'd to the Place, becauſe if too ſhort they would be uſeleſs, and if too long would be eaſily ſeen by the Sentinels or Rounds, and thrown down. They muſt be made of the lighteſt and ſtrongeſt Wood that can be found, wide enough for Two Men to go up a-breaſt; Firr is reckoned the beſt Wood to make them of. If it were requiſite they ſhould be very long, they could not be made wide, becauſe they muſt be ſtrong in Proportion, and would then be too heavy. They ought to be painted of a dark Grey, that they may not be ſo eaſily ſeen. They may be made to ſlide one above another; and if the height be too great for Wooden Ladders, they may be made of Ropes, which are faſtned to the Parapet with Hooks at the top of them, rear'd up with Pikes.

When the Enterprize depends on the Effect of a Petard, you muſt be ſure there are but few things that ſhut up the Place, or that they are ill guarded. You muſt be exactly informed of the diſtance betwixt them, how many Barriers, Gates, Draw-bridges, and Herſes, their Strength and Thickneſs. You muſt alſo know how they ſhut, and how they are defended both within and without, the Breadth of the Ditches, whether dry, or full of Water. You muſt carry a Number of Hatchets, Pincers, Hammers, Iron Crows, Sledges, and Treſſels, to hold up the Herſes, cut the Palliſades, throw

the

the Gates off their Hinges, tear off the Bolts and Locks, and in ſhort, to break through all Obſtacles that may Occur in the Execution of the Enterprize. The Petards muſt be proportion'd to the Effect they are to have, that is, to the Strength of the Gates, Bridges, and Barriers; and be ſure to have ſome more than ſhall be thought neceſſary to do the Buſineſs.

One of the Practices which has oftenest ſucceeded, is the ſending before of Soldiers diſguiz'd like Women, or Peaſants, to ſecure a Gate, and gain time for a Guard appointed to ſuſtain them to come up and ſecure the Town. This may be eaſily done in Towns of great reſort, and eſpecially upon Market-Days. To this effect they commonly take along with them ſome Carts, which they ſtop under the Herſes, and on the Draw-bridges, to hinder the former from falling, and the latter from being taken up. Places where there are Churches much frequented for Devotion are ſubject to be ſurpriz'd, it being eaſie to ſend in a Number of good Soldiers in the Habit of Pilgrims or Women.

Places ſeated on Lakes or Moraſſes are generally attempted when the Ice can bear, or a great Flood makes the Marſhes carry Boats.

If the Ice makes way for the Enterprize, you muſt carry abundance of Ladders to ſet up on all ſides, and Axes to cut the Fraiſes or Palliſades, and Hand Granadoes, of which there muſt be always good Store in ſuch ſort of Undertakings.

If the Flood favours your Deſign, you muſt carry abundance of very flat Boats, that they may draw little Water, and at the Head of every Boat ſhall be a Ladder to ſet up againſt the Wall.

You

You may attempt Maritime Towns if the Walls are low, if they are ill provided with Cannon, and the Sea beats upon them, bringing up Veſſels full of Men to Mount.

In all Sorts of Enterprizes you muſt know the Number of Inhabitants and Soldiers there are in the Place, the Number, Strength and Poſition of the *Corps de Garde*, where the Sentinels are poſted, and the Method of the Rounds and Patrouilles; whether the Ramparts are acceſſible on all ſides, or can be defended againſt the Town, the principal Streets and Squares, the good or bad Underſtanding there is between the Inhabitants and the Soldiers, to make your Advantage of all Opportunities, or to endeavour to get in ſome of your Party.

Theſe Enterprizes are generally put in Execution betwixt Midnight and Morning, as well becauſe then the Soldiers are weary, and faſteſt aſleep, as becauſe you muſt march by Night, to prevent being diſcover'd on your March; the ſame may be as well done in a thick Fog as by Night.

When the Project is form'd, the Number of Men neceſſary to put it in Execution muſt be drawn together with all Poſſible Secrecy; and to this effect they are for the moſt part brought from ſeveral Parts, and One or Two Places of Rendezvous appointed them near the Place, according to the Number of Attacks intended to be made, at which they muſt be exactly at the ſame time.

You muſt take Care to have good Guides, as well for the ſeveral Bodies of Men, as for the Carts and Mules that are to carry the Petards, Scaling-Ladders, and other Neceſſaries for the Undertaking.

The

The Horſes and Mules are to be left with the Cavalry at ſuch a diſtance that their neighing may not be heard from the Place. No Sutler ſhall be ſuffer'd to ſtraggle, or ſtay behind, leſt he be taken, and diſcover the Deſign, or leſt the Hopes of Reward ſhould prevail with him to go of himſelf to diſcover it.

If the Place you have a deſign upon is ſo far within the Enemies Country that you cannot reach it in a Day and part of a Night, the Enterprize can never ſucceed, unleſs you have ſome Perſon near the Place to make all the neceſſary Preparations for the Execution, and to conceal the Men you ſhall ſend by Degrees, and ſeveral Ways.

Chap. XVIII. *How to Surprize an Army, or Quarters.*

IN order to make an Attempt by Surprize on an Army, you muſt underſtand the Situation of the Camp, whether it is intrench'd or not, its Strength in Horſe, Foot, and Cannon, and how Poſted, the manner of the Incampment, what Guard is kept both within and without, where the Guards, Sentinels and Vedets are Poſted, and all poſſible Care muſt be taken either to avoid or ſurprize them, that you may not give the Alarm till you are in the midſt of the Camp; but as ſoon as ever the Enemy has taken it, you muſt fall on with the greateſt Fury imaginable, that they may not have time to form themſelves. If the Camp is intrench'd you muſt carry Faſcines to fill up the Ditches, Ponts Volants, Hand Granadoes, and

Hatchets. If it is Paliſadoed you may carry ſome Field-pieces, which however can do little Service in the Night.

If you would Attack any Fort or Redoubt, you may do it in the ſame manner as a Retrench'd Camp.

If you will Surprize any particular Quarters of Horſe or Foot, if they are in a Place that is enclos'd, you muſt uſe the ſame Methods before preſcrib'd for Garriſons; but if in an open Place, you muſt act according to their Strength, Guards, and the Situation and Nature of the Place.

In order to Break a Bridge which is of Conſequence to your Enemy, if it is not well fortify'd at both Ends, you muſt endeavour to make your ſelf Maſter of one or both of them. If you dare not attempt the Lodgments the Enemy has made, you may endeavour to Burn it with Fire-ſhips, if it is a Bridge of Boats, or ſend ſome good Swimmers to cut the Ropes, or elſe drive down ſome ſtrong Veſſel well loaded that may break them.

If it be a wooden Bridge upon Piles you may ſend Men under it in cover'd Boats to ſaw them, or elſe to daub them with Pitch, and other combuſtible Matter, and then ſet Fire to it.

You may alſo Build a ſmall Body of Stone-work upon Boats, in the midſt whereof there ſhall be a Mine, loaded at the Top with the largeſt Stones you can get, and over that a piece of Timber to bear under the upper Part of the Bridge, or upon the Piles, and ſo open a Trunk to give Fire to the Mine which ſhall ſpring whilſt the Boats are under the Bridge. If you cannot make ſure of the Trunk for Firing, a good Swimmer may carry the Boat, and tie or hook it to one of the main Pillars,

and

and having ſet Fire to a Sauciſs, Swim away as faſt as he can. The Boats that have the Mines may be alſo conducted by other Boats, and ſo the Men in them, after faſtning the Boats with the Mines, and giving Fire, may get off without Danger.

THE EXERCISE OF THE HORSE.

Words of Command.

LAy your Right Hands on your Swords.

Draw your Swords.

Put your Swords in your Bridle Hands.

Lay your Hands on your Pistols.

Cock your Pistols.

Hold up your Hands.

Give Fire.

Return

Return your Pistols.
Lay your Hands on your Carbines.
Advance your Carbines.
Cock your Carbines.
Fire.
Let fall your Carbines.
Take your Swords from your Bridle Hands.

To Close the Files.

The Right Wing File stand.
Close your Files to the Right.
To the Left, as you were.
The Left Wing File stand.
To the Left, close your Files.
To the Right, as you were.
The Right and Left Wing Files stand.
By Half Ranks close your Files to the Right and Left.

To Close the Ranks.

File-leaders stand.
By Ranks close the Squadron to the Front.
As you were.
Open the Ranks to the first Distances.

To Double the Ranks.

By Half Files to the Right double your Ranks to the Front.

File-leaders advance your Ranks, Half Files take your Ground.

In the same Manner Command to the Left.

The First Half Files stand. By Half File-leaders on the Left Wing double your Ranks to the Front.

Right Wing, Half Rank advance your Rank.

Half File-leaders take your Ground.

By Half File-leaders on the Right and Left Wings double your Ranks to the Front.

The last Half File stand, and the first Half File by Caracol to the Right and Left on the Wings double your Ranks to the Rear.

To Wheel by Conversion.

By Half Ranks and by Conversion divide the Squadron into Two Parts.

By Conversion the Squadron into One Troop.

The Right Wing to the Left by Caracol Face about to the Rear.

To Face.

Face about to the Right.

Face to the Right by Conversion.

Face about to the Right by Caracol.

Face

Face about to the Left by Half Files.
Face about to the Right and Left.

To Draw up in Hay.

By Half Ranks co the Right and Left draw up in Hay to the Front.

By Caracol to the Right and Left, as you were.

By Half Ranks and by Caracol to the Right and Left draw up in Hay to the Rear.

To the Front, as you were.

By Caracol to the Right draw up in Hay.

By Caracol to the Left, as you were.

To File off.

File off by Ranks on the Right Wing.

Form the Squadron on the Left.

File off by Ranks on the Left Wing.

Form the Squadron on the Right.

The Horse Granadeers Exercise.

GRanadeers have a Care.
Sling your Muskets.
Put on your Caps.
Right and Left Hand Men of each Rank keep Mounted.
Clear your Right Foot of the Stirrops.
Dismount.
Make ready your Links.
Link your Hozles to the Left.
March clear of your Hozles.
Halt.
Join your Right Hands to your Muskets.
Poise your Muskets, facing to the Right.
Rest your Muskets.
Cock and Guard.
Present.
Fire.
Recover your Muskets.
Cast about to the Left.
Handle your Daggers.
Draw your Daggers.

Fix them on your Barrels.
Recover your Muskets.
Charge to the Front.
To the Right, Charge.
To the Right, Charge.
To the Right, Charge.
To the Right, Charge.
To the Right about, Charge.
To the Left about as you were, Charge.
To the Left, Charge.
To the Left, Charge.
To the Left, Charge.
To the Left, Charge.
To the Left about, Charge.
To the Right about as you were, Charge.
Recover your Muskets.
Caſt about to the Left.
Withdraw your Daggers.
Return your Daggers.
Recover and Poiſe.
Cleanſe your Pans.
Open your Cartridge-Boxes.
Take forth your Primers.
Prime, levelling your Piece.
Return your Primers.
Shut your Pans.
Blow off your looſe Coyns.
Caſt about to the Left.
Take forth your Cartridges.

Uncap them with your Teeth.
Load with Powder and Ball.
Draw forth your Scowrers.
Shorten them to an Inch.
Place them in the Barrel.
Ram home your Charge.
Withdraw your Scowrers.
Shorten them to an Handful.
Return your Scowrers.
Recover and Poise.
Shoulder your Muskets.
Second and Third Ranks March.
Poise your Muskets, Hands on the Slings.
Sling your Muskets.
Handle your Pouches.
Open your Poushes.
Take forth your Granades.
Shut your Pouches.
Uncase your Fuzees.
Handle your Match.
First Rank blow your Matches.
Fire your Fuzees.
Deliver your Granades.
Second Rank March.
Blow your Matches.
Fire your Fuzees.
Deliver your Granades.
Third Rank March.
Blow your Matches.
Fire your Fuzees.
Deliver your Granades.

Second Rank March.
Preſent.
Fire. Recover your Muskets.
Rear Rank March.
Preſent.
Fire. Recover your Muskets.
Charge all.
Recover your Muskets.
Caſt about to the Left.
Withdraw your Daggers.
Return your Daggers.
Recover and Poiſe.
Shoulder your Muskets.
To the Right about, marching to your former Ground.
To the Left about, as you were.
Poiſe your Muskets.
Reſt upon your Muskets.
Ground your Muskets.
Quit your Arms.
To the Right about.
March clear of your Arms.
To your Arms.
Handle your Arms.
Recover and Poiſe.
Shoulder your Muskets.
Poiſe your Muskets.
Face to the Right about.
Sling your Muskets.
March to your Horſes.
Unlink your Horſes.

Faſten

Fasten your Links.
Put your Feet in the Stirrops.
Mount your Horses.
Handle your Swords.
Place your Swords.
Handle your Pistols.
Draw your Pistols.
Cock your Pistols.
Present.
Fire.
Return your Pistols.
Handle your Muskets.
Unsling your Muskets.
Mount your Muskets.
Cock your Muskets.
Present.
Give Fire.
Sling your Muskets.
Handle your Swords.
March.

The

The Exerciſe of Dragoons.

DRagoons have a Care.
Sling your Muskets.
Make ready your Links.
Clear your Right Feet of your Stirrops.
Diſmount.
Link your Horſes to the Left.
March clear of your Horſes, and Shoulder as you March.
Halt.
Have a Care of the Exerciſe.
Officers to the Right about.
Take your Poſts in the Rear of the Battalion.
March.
Dragoons have a Care.

Then

Then the Exerciſe of the Muskets is the the ſame as above in the Granadeers, and being return'd to their Arms, after quitting them, and diſperſing, they proceed thus.

Return your Swords.
Handle your Arms.
Reſt upon your Arms.
Poiſe your Muskets.
Sling your Muskets.
To the Right about.
March to your Horſes.
Unlink your Horſes.
Shorten your Bridles.
Put your Left Feet in your Stirrops.
Mount.
Faſten your Links.
Unſling and advance your Muskets.

The Dragoons Exerciſe on Horſeback.

JOin your Left Hand to your Muskets.
Cock and Guard.
Reſt your Musket on your Bridle Hand.
Preſent.

Present.
Fire.
Recover your Arms with the Cock half bent.

THE

EXERCISE

OF THE

FOOT.

THE

THE EXERCISE OF THE FOOT,

With the Evolutions, Orders, and Words of Command for the Exerciſe of the Musket, the Musket being Shoulder'd.

JOin your Right Hands to your Muſkets.

Poiſe your Muskets.

Join your Left Hand to your Muſkets.

Handle your Matches.

Blow your Matches.
Cock your Matches.
Try your Matches.
Guard your Pans.
Blow your Matches.
Present.
Give Fire.
Recover your Arms.
Return your Matches.
Blow your Pans.
Handle your Primers.
Prime.
Shut your Pans.
Blow your Pans.
Cast about to Charge.
Handle your Chargers.
Open them with your Teeth.
Charge with Powder.
Charge with Bullet.
The Wad from your Hats.
Draw forth your Rammers.
Hold them up.
Shorten them against your Breasts.
Put them in the Barrels.
Ram down your Charge.
Withdraw your Rammers.
Hold them up.
Shorten them against your Breasts,
Return your Rammers.
Your Right Hand under the Pan.
Poise your Muskets.
Shoulder your Muskets.
Rest your Muskets.

Order

Order your Muskets.
Lay down your Muskets.
Take up your Muskets.
Rest your Muskets.
Club your Muskets.
Rest your Muskets.
Shoulder your Muskets.
Make ready.
Present.
Give Fire.

The Exercise of Granadeers, beginning when they are under Arms, their Fire-locks Shoulder'd.

TAke heed Granadeers to Exercise your Fire-locks.

Join your Right Hand to your Fire-locks.

Poise your Fire-locks.

Join your Left Hand to your Fire-locks.

Cock your Fire-locks.

Present.

Present.
Give Fire.
Recover your Arms.
Handle your Slings.
Sling your Fire-locks on your Shoulders.
Handle your Matches.
Handle your Granades.
Open your Fuzee.
Guard the Fuzee with your Thumb.
Blow your Matches.
Fire, and throw your Granades.
Return your Matches.
Handle your Slings.
Poise your Fire-locks.
Cast about to Charge.
Draw your Bayonets.
Screw your Bayonets in the Muzzel.
Rest your Bayonets.
Charge your Bayonets Breast high.
Cast about your Bayonets to the Left Side.
Recover your Bayonets.
Put up your Bayonets.
Half Cock your Fire-locks.
Blow your Pans.
Handle your Primers.
Prime.
Shut your Pans.
Cast about to Charge.
Handle your Cartridges.
Open your Cartridges.
Charge with your Cartridges.

Draw

Draw forth your Rammers.
Hold them up.
Shorten them against your Breasts.
Put them in the Barrels.
Ram down your Charge.
Recover your Rammers.
Hold them up.
Shorten them against your Breasts.
Put them in their Places.
Your Right Hand under the Locks.
Poise your Fire-locks.
Shoulder your Fire-locks.
Rest your Fire-locks.
Order your Fire-locks.
Lay down your Fire-locks.
Take up your Fire-locks.
Rest your Fire-locks.
Club your Fire-locks.
Rest your Fire-locks.
Shoulder your Fire-locks.
Make ready.
Present.
Give Fire.
Make ready.
Blow your Matches.
Fire, and throw your Granades.
Make ready.
Charge your Bayonets Breast high.
Make ready your Fire-locks.

The Exerciſe of the Pike, beginning from the Advance.

PIkes take heed to your Exercise.
To the Front, Charge.
As you were.
To the Right, Charge.
To the Left, as you were.
To the Left, Charge.
To the Right, as you were.
To the Right about, Charge.
To the Left, as you were.
To the Left about, Charge.
To the Right, as you were.
Shoulder your Pikes.
To the Front, Charge.
Shoulder, as you were.
To the Right, Charge.
To the Left, as you were.
To the Left, Charge.
To the Right, as you were.
To the Right about, Charge.
To the Left as you were.
To the Left about, Charge.
To the Right, as you were.
Port your Pikes.
To the Front, Charge.

Trail

Trail your Pikes with the Spears behind.

Charge, as you were.

Push your Pikes.

Trail your Pikes the Spears before.

Present your Spears.

To the Front, Charge.

Advance your Pikes.

Order your Pikes.

Lay down your Pikes.

Take up your Pikes.

Plant your Pikes.

Order your Pikes.

Advance your Pikes.

General Words of Command for the Evolutions.

TAke heed to Exercise your Evolutions.

Take heed.

Carry well your Arms.

Straiten the Ranks and Files.

Take heed the whole Battalion to Present your Arms.

Present your Arms.

To the Right.

To the Right.
To the Right.
To the Right.
To the Right about.
To the Left, as you were.
To the Left.
To the Left.
To the Left.
To the Left.
To the Left about.
To the Right, as you were.
Poise your Muskets and Advance your Pikes.
Shoulder your Muskets.
Ranks take heed to double your Front.
Ranks to the Right double your Front.
March.
To the Left, as you were.
March.
Halt.
Ranks to the Left double your Front.
March.
To the Right, as you were.
March.
Halt.
Ranks take heed to double your Rear.
Ranks to the Right double your Rear.
March.
Halt.
As you were.
March.

Ranks

Ranks to the Left double your Rear.
March.
Halt.
As you were.
March.
Rear Half Files take heed to double your Front.
Rear Half Files to the Right double your Front.
March.
To the Left, as you were.
March.
Halt.
Rear Half Files to the Left double your Front.
March.
To the Right, as you were.
March.
Halt.
Front Half Files take heed to double your Rear.
Front Half Files to the Right double your Rear.
March.
Halt.
Front Half Files as you were.
March.
Front half Files to the Left double your Rear.
March.
Halt.
Front Half Files as you were.
March.

Files take heed to double.
Files to the Right double.
March.
Halt.
To the Left, as you were.
March.
Files to the Left double.
March.
Halt.
To the Right, as you were.
March.
Half Ranks take heed to double your Files.
Half Ranks to the Right double your Files.
March.
Halt.
To the Left, as you were.
March.
Halt.
Half Ranks to the Left double your Files.
March.
Halt.
To the Right, as you were.
March.
Halt.
Files take heed to Countermarch.
Files to the Right about Countermarch.
March.
Files to the Left about Countermarch.
March.

Ranks take heed to Countermarch.
Ranks to the Right about Countermarch.
March.
Halt.
Ranks to the Left Countermarch.
March.
Halt.
Take heed to close your Files.
To the Right and Left close your Files to the Centre.
March.
Halt.
Take heed to close your Ranks.
Ranks close to the Front.
March.
Take heed to wheel.
To the Right wheel.
March.
Halt.
To the Right wheel.
March.
Halt.
To the Left about wheel.
March.
Halt.
To the Left wheel.
March.
Halt.
To the Left wheel.
March.
Halt.
To the Left about wheel.
March.

Halt.

Files take heed to open to your former Distance.

Files to the Right and Left outwards to your former Distance.

March.

Halt.

Ranks take heed to open to your former Distance.

Ranks as you were.

March.

Halt.

Take heed to lay down your Arms.

Rest your Muskets.

Order your Arms.

Lay down your Arms.

Take heed to quit your Arms.

For Straw.

March.

To your Arms.

Put up your Swords.

Take up your Arms.

Rest your Muskets.

Poise your Muskets and advance your Pikes.

Shoulder your Muskets.

FINIS.

THE

CONTENTS.

The Duties of Officers of Horſe.

Chap. I. HOW *to Raiſe a Troop of Horſe* Page 1

Chap. II. *Of the Duty and Employment of a Lieutenant* 2

Chap. III. *Of the Cornet* 4

Cnap. IV. *Of the Quarter-maſter* 5

Chap. V. *Of the Corporals* 9

Chap. VI. *Of the Method for making of good Troopers, and for the well Mounting, Arming and Equipping of them* 10

Chap. VII. *The Manner of Training a Troop, and keeping it always well Diſciplin'd* 12

Chap. VIII. *What a Captain is to do when his Commiſſion is for a Troop already Rais'd, which only wanted a Captain* 16

Chap. IX. *The Qualities and Duties of a Captain, and ſome Advice concerning his Retinue and Family* 17

Chap. X. *Of the Captain's Equipage* 20

Chap. XI. *Of the Camp, or Quarter Guard* 22

Chap. XII. *Of going Out upon Parties to get Intelligence* 29

Chap. XIII. *Of Ambuſhes* 42

Chap. XIV. *Of Beating up of Quarters* 46

Chap. XV. *The Duty of a Captain of Horſe when in Garriſon in a Frontier Town* 52

Chap. XVI. *Of the Guard of Horſe in a Frontier Place* 54

Chap. XVII. *What a Commander is to do upon an Alarm during the Day in a Frontier Town* 55

Chap. XVIII. *What a Commander is to do when in Garriſon on the Frontiers during the Campaign* 59

Chap. XIX. *Of Spies; and how the Commander is to behave himſelf accord-*

ing

ing to the Advice and Intelligence they bring him 63
Chap. XX. *Of Remounting the Troop* 65

The Duties of all the Officers of Foot.

Chap. I. THE *Duty of a Sergeant* 68
Chap. II. *Instructions to a Sergeant of Foot how to behave himself* 70
Chap. III. *The Ensign's Duty* 73
Chap IV. *Instructions to an Ensign how to behave himself* 74
Chap. V. *The Duty of the Lieutenant of Foot* 77
Chap. VI. *Instructions to a Lieutenant how to behave himself* 78
Chap. VII. *The Duty of a Captain of Foot* 82
Chap. VIII. *Instructions to a Captain how to behave himself* 88
Chap. IX. *The Duty of a Major of Foot* 93
Chap. X. *Of the Lieutenant Colonel* 99
Chap. XI. *Of the Colonel* 100

Chap.

Chap. XII. *The Method of Inſtructing all the Officers of* Foot, *and of Examining them before they may be admitted* 102

The Duties of a Soldier.

Chap. I. *THat of all States and Conditions that of a Soldier is moſt Honourable to himſelf, and moſt Advantageous to his Country* 108

Chap. II. *That an Officer ought to profeſs Religion, both in Regard of the Effect it has upon others, and for the Advantage it is to himſelf towards making his* Fortune 111

Chap. III. *That Wiſdom is requiſite in a Soldier, and without it he cannot hope to make his* Fortune 115

Chap. IV. *That a Man muſt be ſatisfied he has Courage before he undertakes to go to the Wars* 116

Chap. V. *What a Man ought to know before he goes to the Wars* 120

Chap. VI. *The Duties of Subalterns towards*

wards their Captain, and of a Captain towards his Subalterns

Chap. VII. *Of the Abſolute Obedience due to Superiors* 138

Chap. VIII. *Of the Penalty they incur who refuſe to obey their Officers* 142

Chap. IX. *That great Reſpect is to be paid to the Quarters of Generals, or other Superior Officers, and much Care to be taken not to fall into Paſſion there* 145

Chap. X. *Of the Severity of Martial Law, and the Penalties inflicted on thoſe that trangreſs it* 145

Chap. XI. *What a Young Captain is to obſerve upon a March, whether he be going to the Army, or to Garriſon; and where Orders are to be receiv'd, either in paſſing through Frontier Towns, or when come into Garriſon* 159

Chap. XII. *What an Officer is to obſerve in an Enemy's Country* 165

Chap. XIII. *What a New Officer is to do when firſt he comes into the Army* 173

Chap. XIV. *What an Officer is to do when the Command that was his due is given*

given to another, or he is commanded out of Course 182
Chap. XV. *Of Parties, and the Neceſſary Precautions to be us'd upon them* 186
Chap. XVI. *How an Officer is to behave himſelf in Fight* 191
Chap. XVII. *That an Officer is to underſtand his Duty in Garriſon as well as in the Field* 196
Chap. XVIII. *Of the Power of Commiſſaries* 200

The Duties of Generals: Containing the Order of Marching, of Encamping, Fighting, and Attacking of Strong Places; alſo the Manner of Surprizing and Attempting upon Towns, Quarters, and Armies.

Chap. I. *THE Choice of a General* 304

Chap.

Chap. II. *Of the Qualities requisite in a General of an Army* 206
Chap. III. *Of Incamping* 211
Chap. III. *Of the Camp Guard* 222
Chap. IV. *Of Marching an Army* 226
Chap. V. *Of the Order of Battle, and how to bring up the Forces to Fight* 233
Chap. VI. *The Order of Battle for Forming a Siege* 240
Chap. VII. *The Order of Battle for Forcing of Lines* 246
Chap. VIII. *The Order of Battle for Forcing a Pass* 252
Chap. IX. *The Order of Battle Retreating* 262
Chap. X. *Of Sieges* 267
Chap. XI. *The Manner of Besieging Maritime or Inland Towns* 273
Chap. XII. *How to View and Judge of the Side where the Attacks are to be made* 279
Chap. XII. *The Manner of Opening the Trenches* 281
Chap. XIII. *The Manner of making Lodgments on the Covert Way* 287
Chap. XIV. *The Manner of Attacking the Half-moon* 296

The Contents.

Chap. XV. *The Manner of Passing the Ditch* 301
Chap. XVI. *The Manner of Working at the Mines* 304
Chap. XVII. *Of Surprizes.* 308

FH
MVSEVM
BRITANNICVM

THE